

Language: English

Book: 1 Samuel

1 Samuel

Chapter 1

¹ There was a certain man of Ramathaim of the Zuphites, of the hill country of Ephraim; his name was Elkanah son of Jeroham son of Elihu son of Tohu son of Zuph, an Ephraimite. ^[1]² He had two wives; the name of the first was Hannah, and the name of the second was Peninnah. Peninnah had children, but Hannah had none. ³ This man went from his city year after year to worship and to sacrifice to Yahweh of hosts in Shiloh. The two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, priests to Yahweh, were there. ⁴ When the day came for Elkanah to sacrifice each year, he always gave portions of the meat to Peninnah his wife, and to all her sons and her daughters. ⁵ But to Hannah he always gave a double portion, for he loved Hannah, although Yahweh had closed her womb. ⁶ Her rival provoked her severely in order to irritate her, because Yahweh had closed her womb. ⁷ So year after year, when she went up to the house of Yahweh with her family, her rival always provoked her. Therefore she used to weep and eat nothing. ⁸ Elkanah her husband always said to her, "Hannah, why do you weep? Why do you not eat? Why is your heart sad? Am I not better to you than ten sons?"

⁹ On one of these occasions, Hannah rose up after they had finished eating and drinking in Shiloh. Now Eli the priest was sitting upon his seat by the doorway to the temple of Yahweh. ¹⁰ She was deeply distressed; she prayed to Yahweh and wept bitterly. ¹¹ She made a vow and said, "Yahweh of hosts, if you will look on the affliction of your servant and call me to mind, and do not forget your servant, but give your servant a son, then I will give him to Yahweh all the days of his life, and no razor will ever touch his head."

¹² As she continued praying before Yahweh, Eli watched her mouth. ¹³ Hannah spoke in her heart. Her lips moved, but her voice was not heard. Therefore Eli thought she was drunk. ¹⁴ Eli said to her, "How long will you be drunk? Get rid of your wine." ¹⁵ Hannah answered, "No, my master, I am a woman of a sorrowful spirit. I have drunk neither wine nor strong drink, but I have been pouring out my soul before Yahweh. ¹⁶ Do not consider your servant to be a worthless woman; I have been speaking out of the abundance of my great concern and provocation." ¹⁷ Then Eli answered and said, "Go in peace; may the God of Israel grant the request that you have asked him for." ¹⁸ She said, "Let your servant find favor in your eyes." Then the woman went her way and ate; her face was no longer sad.

¹⁹ They rose early in the morning and worshiped before Yahweh, and then they returned again to their house in Ramah. Elkanah knew Hannah his wife, and Yahweh remembered her. ²⁰ When the time came, Hannah conceived and gave birth to a son. She called his name Samuel, saying, "Because I have asked for him from Yahweh."

²¹ Once again, Elkanah and all his house went up to offer to Yahweh the yearly sacrifice and pay his vow.

²² But Hannah did not go; she had said to her husband, "I will not go until the child is weaned; then I will bring him, so that he may appear before Yahweh and live there forever." ²³ Elkanah her husband said to her, "Do what seems good to you. Wait until you have weaned him; only, may Yahweh confirm his word." So the woman stayed and nursed her son until she weaned him. ²⁴ When she had weaned him, she took him with her, along with a three-year-old bull, ^[2] one ephah of meal, and a bottle of wine, and brought him to the house of Yahweh in Shiloh. Now the child was still young. ²⁵ They killed the bull, and they brought the child to Eli. ²⁶ She said, "Oh, my master! As you live, my master, I am the woman who stood here next to you praying to Yahweh. ²⁷ For this child I prayed and Yahweh has given me my petition which I asked of him. ²⁸ I have given him to Yahweh, as long as he lives he is lent to Yahweh." Then he worshiped Yahweh there. ^[3]

Footnotes

1:1 ^[1]Some modern translations have

1:24 ^[2]Some translations of the copies of the ancient Hebrew text have

1:28 ^[3]Some modern translations have

1 Samuel 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter introduces Samuel. It is the beginning of the section 1 Samuel 1-7 which tells about Samuel, the religious leader of Israel.

Special concepts in this chapter

Two wives

This was a common practice in the ancient Near East. It was against the law of Moses. The men of Israel would have sinned if they married more than one woman. This type of marriage always creates problems because of jealousy. (See: lawofmoses and sin and jealous)

"Pay his vow"

It was customary for Israelites to promise God to make a sacrifice to him if God answered special prayers. Making such a sacrifice was called paying one's vow. (See: vow)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idioms

When Hannah wanted to assure Eli she was telling the truth, she used the idiom "as you live." This is a type of oath formula meaning "I promise you I am telling the truth."

The author also uses the phrase "call to mind." This is a common idiom meaning "remember."

1 Samuel 1:1

Ramathaim

This is the name of a small village possibly located eight kilometers northwest of Jerusalem.

the Zuphites

This is the name of a people group that descended from Zuph.

Elkanah ... Jeroham ... Elihu ... Tohu ... Zuph

These are the names of men.

1 Samuel 1:2

Peninnah

This is the name of a woman.

1 Samuel 1:3

This man

"This man" refers to Elkanah.

Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the

translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

Eli, Hophni and Phinehas

These are the names of men.

1 Samuel 1:4

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 1:5

Hannah

This is a woman's name. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 1:2]

closed her womb

"made her barren" or "prevented her from becoming pregnant"

1 Samuel 1:6

Her rival provoked her severely

The other wife would often grieve and shame Hannah.

1 Samuel 1:7

her rival

This is Peninnah, the other wife of Elkanah. A rival is someone who competes against another person. In this case Peninnah was competing against Hannah to try to get Elkanah to love her best.

1 Samuel 1:8

Hannah, why do you weep? Why do you not eat? Why is your heart sad? Am I not better to you than ten sons?

These rhetorical questions can be translated as statements, if necessary. Alternate translation: "Hannah, you should not weep. You should eat, and your heart should be glad because I am better to you than ten sons!" or "You have little reason for sadness. I favor you and that should be enough."

than ten sons

Elkanah is exaggerating to emphasize how important Hannah is to him. Alternate translation: "than any son could be"

1 Samuel 1:9

General Information:

Hannah begins to pray to Yahweh, and Eli watches.

Hannah rose up after

Implicit information here can be made explicit. Either Hannah's tent was next to the tabernacle tent or she walked from her tent to the tabernacle to pray. Alternate translation: "Hannah rose up and went to the house of Yahweh to pray after"

Now Eli the priest

"Now" is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here the author tells about a new person in the story. This person is the priest Eli.

the temple of Yahweh

The "temple" was actually a tent, but it was where the people worshiped, so it is best to translate as "temple" here.

1 Samuel 1:10

She was deeply distressed

Hannah was deeply troubled or grieved because of not having any children and being ridiculed regularly by Peninnah, her husband's other wife.

1 Samuel 1:11

Connecting Statement:

Hannah's prayer to Yahweh continues.

the affliction of your servant

The abstract noun "affliction" can be translated as a verb phrase. This refers either to 1) Hannah being unable to become pregnant. Alternate translation:

"how I am suffering because I cannot become pregnant" or 2) the way Peninnah always insulted her. Alternate translation: "how that woman is afflicting me"

call me to mind

This is a special plea to God to take action on Hannah's behalf. God does know what is happening to Hannah; he has not forgotten.

do not forget your servant

This phrase says almost the same thing as "call me to mind."

1 Samuel 1:12

Eli watched her

Eli was the chief priest, so he was in the tabernacle of God and in charge of it.

1 Samuel 1:13

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 1:14

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 1:15

I am a woman of a sorrowful spirit

"I am a woman who is deeply sad"

pouring out my soul before Yahweh

This is an idiom that means "telling Yahweh my deepest emotions."

1 Samuel 1:16

Do not consider your servant to be

Hannah speaks of herself in the second person to show her humility. It can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: "Do not consider me, your servant, to be" or "Do not consider me"

I have been speaking out of the abundance of my great concern and provocation

This is another way of saying that she has a "sorrowful spirit," as in 1:15. The abstract nouns "abundance," "concern," and "provocation" can be translated as adjectives and verbs. Alternate translation: "I have been speaking because I am very sad, and my rival has greatly provoked me"

concern and provocation

These words both mean that Hannah is sad and annoyed because her rival has been provoking her.

concern

Peninnah irritates and annoys her.

provocation

Hannah is referring to the grief and shame she feels because Peninnah is being cruel to her.

1 Samuel 1:17

Then Eli answered

Eli was the head priest residing over the tabernacle.

1 Samuel 1:18

Let your servant find

Hannah speaks of herself in the second person to show respect for Eli, the head priest. This can be stated in the first person. Alternate translation: "Let me, your servant, find" or "Let me find"

find favor in your eyes

Here "find favor" is an idiom that means be approved of or that he is pleased with her. Here the eyes are a metonym for sight, and seeing represents judging or deciding the value of something. Alternate translation: "evaluated me and approve"

ate; her face was

Here "her face" represents Hannah herself. You can make this a separate sentence, if needed. Alternate translation: "ate. She was" or "ate. People could see that she was"

1 Samuel 1:19

Elkanah knew Hannah

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "Elkanah had sexual relations with Hannah"

remembered her

God knew what was happening to Hannah; he had not forgotten her. See how you translated similar words in 1 Samuel 1:11.

1 Samuel 1:20

Hannah conceived

"Hannah became pregnant"

1 Samuel 1:21

his house

The word "house" is a metonym for the people who lived in the house. Alternate translation: "his family"

1 Samuel 1:22

is weaned

stops drinking milk and starts eating only solid food

he may appear before Yahweh and live there forever

Hannah had promised God that she would allow Samuel to live and work with Eli the priest in the temple (1 Samuel 1:11).

1 Samuel 1:23

nursed her son

"gave her son milk"

1 Samuel 1:24

ephah

An ephah is about 22 liters of dry material.

bottle

Wine was kept in animal skins, not glass bottles.

1 Samuel 1:25

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 1:26

Oh, my master! As you live, my master

Here the idiom "As you live" shows that Hannah is being sincere and truthful. Alternate translation: "Sir, what I am going to tell you is certainly true"

1 Samuel 1:27

has given me my petition which I asked of him

The noun "petition" refers to a formal request for another person to do something. It can be translated with a verb. The idiom "to give a petition" means to do what the person requests. Alternate translation: "has agreed to do what I solemnly requested that he do"

1 Samuel 1:28

he is lent to Yahweh

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "I am loaning him to Yahweh"

he worshiped Yahweh

Possible meanings: 1) "He" refers to Elkanah or 2) "he" is a synecdoche referring to both Elkanah and his family. Alternate translation: "Elkanah and his family"

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 1:1

Who were the two wives of Elkanah?

The wives of Elkanah were Hannah and Peninnah.

1 Samuel 1:2

Who were the two wives of Elkanah?

The wives of Elkanah were Hannah and Peninnah.

How many children did Hannah have?

Hannah had no children.

1 Samuel 1:5

Why did Elkanah give a double portion to Hannah?

He gave a double portion to Hannah because he loved her.

1 Samuel 1:6

Why did Hannah's rival provoke her?

She provoked Hannah in order to irritate her, because Yahweh had closed her womb.

1 Samuel 1:9

What did Hannah do because she was so deeply distressed about not having children?

She went to the house of Yahweh and prayed and wept bitterly.

1 Samuel 1:10

What did Hannah do because she was so deeply distressed about not having children?

She went to the house of Yahweh and prayed and wept bitterly.

1 Samuel 1:11

What did Hannah vow to Yahweh?

Hannah vowed that if Yahweh would give her a son, she would give him to Yahweh and no razor would touch his head.

1 Samuel 1:12

Because Hannah was speaking to Yahweh from her heart, what did Eli, the priest, think about her actions?

Eli saw Hannah's lips moving but didn't hear her voice, so he thought she was drunk from wine.

1 Samuel 1:13

Because Hannah was speaking to Yahweh from her heart, what did Eli, the priest, think about her actions?

Eli saw Hannah's lips moving but didn't hear her voice, so he thought she was drunk from wine.

1 Samuel 1:14

Because Hannah was speaking to Yahweh from her heart, what did Eli, the priest, think about her actions?

Eli saw Hannah's lips moving but didn't hear her voice, so he thought she was drunk from wine.

1 Samuel 1:15

What did Hannah assure Eli she was doing?

Hannah assured Eli that she was not drunk but was speaking to Yahweh from her heart.

1 Samuel 1:16

What did Hannah assure Eli she was doing?

Hannah assured Eli that she was not drunk but was speaking to Yahweh from her heart.

1 Samuel 1:17

What did Eli say to Hannah that caused her to go on her way, eat and no longer feel sad?

Eli told her to go in peace and asked the God of Israel to grant her the request she was asking him.

1 Samuel 1:18

What did Eli say to Hannah that caused her to go on her way, eat and no longer feel sad?

Eli told her to go in peace and asked the God of Israel to grant her the request she was asking him.

1 Samuel 1:20

When Hannah conceived and gave birth to a son, what did she name him?

Hannah named her son Samuel because she asked for him from Yahweh.

1 Samuel 1:21

Why did Hannah not go with her husband to the temple for the yearly sacrifice?

Because she was still nursing her son.

1 Samuel 1:22

Why did Hannah not go with her husband to the temple for the yearly sacrifice?

Because she was still nursing her son.

1 Samuel 1:23

Why did Hannah not go with her husband to the temple for the yearly sacrifice?

Because she was still nursing her son.

1 Samuel 1:24

What did Hannah take with her, along with her son, to the house of Yahweh to give to Eli the priest?

Hannah took a sacrifice of a three year old bull, one ephah of meal, and a bottle of wine to give to the priest.

1 Samuel 1:25

What did Hannah take with her, along with her son, to the house of Yahweh to give to Eli the priest?

Hannah took a sacrifice of a three year old bull, one ephah of meal, and a bottle of wine to give to the priest.

1 Samuel 1:26

What did Hannah give Yahweh?

Hannah gave her son to Yahweh for as long as he would live.

1 Samuel 1:27

What did Hannah give Yahweh?

Hannah gave her son to Yahweh for as long as he would live.

1 Samuel 1:28

What did Hannah give Yahweh?

Hannah gave her son to Yahweh for as long as he would live.

Chapter 2

¹ Hannah prayed and said,

"My heart rejoices in Yahweh.
My horn is exalted in Yahweh.
My mouth boasts over my enemies,
because I rejoice in your salvation.

² There is no one holy like Yahweh,
for there is none besides you;
there is no rock like our God.

³ Boast no more so very proudly;
let no arrogance come out of your mouth.
For Yahweh is a God of knowledge;
by him acts are weighed.

⁴ The bows of the mighty men are broken,
but those who stumble are girded with strength.

⁵ Those who were full have hired themselves out for bread;
those who were hungry have stopped being hungry.
Even the barren one gives birth to seven,
but the woman who has many children becomes weak.

⁶ Yahweh kills and brings to life.
He brings down to Sheol and raises up.

⁷ Yahweh makes some people poor and some rich.
He humbles, but he also lifts up.

⁸ He raises up the poor out of the dust.
He lifts the needy from the ash heap
to make them sit with princes
and inherit the seat of honor.
For the pillars of the earth are Yahweh's
and he has set the world upon them.

⁹ He will guard the feet of his faithful people,
but the wicked will be put to silence in darkness,
for no one will prevail by strength.

¹⁰ Those who oppose Yahweh will be broken to pieces;
he will thunder against them from heaven.
Yahweh will judge the ends of the earth;
he will give strength to his king
and exalt the horn of his anointed."

¹¹ Then Elkanah went to Ramah, to his house. The child served Yahweh in the presence of Eli the priest.

¹² Now the sons of Eli were worthless men. They did not know Yahweh. ¹³ The custom of the priests with the people was that when any man offered a sacrifice, the priest's servant would come with a three-pronged fork in his hand, while the meat was boiling. ¹⁴ He would stick it into the pan, or kettle, or cauldron, or pot. All that the fork brought up the priest would take for himself. They did this in Shiloh with all of Israel that came there. ¹⁵ Worse, before they burned the fat, the priest's servant came, and said to the man who was sacrificing, "Give meat to roast for the priest; for he will not accept boiled meat from you, but only raw." ¹⁶ If the man said to him, "They must burn the fat first, and then take as much as you want." Then he would say, "No, you will give it me now; if not, I will take it by force." ¹⁷ The sin of these young men was very great before Yahweh, for they despised Yahweh's offering.

¹⁸ But Samuel served Yahweh as a child clothed with a linen ephod. ¹⁹ His mother would make him a little robe and bring it to him from year to year, when she came up with her husband to offer the yearly sacrifice. ²⁰ Eli would bless Elkanah and his wife and say, "May Yahweh give you more children by this woman because of the request she made of Yahweh." Then they would return to their own home. ²¹ Yahweh again helped Hannah, and again she conceived. She bore three sons and two daughters. Meanwhile, the child Samuel grew before Yahweh.

²² Now Eli was very old; he heard all that his sons were doing to all Israel, and how they were lying with the women who were serving at the entrance to the tent of meeting. ²³ He said to them, "Why do you do such things? For I hear of your evil actions from all these people. ²⁴ No, my sons; for it is not a good report that I hear. You make Yahweh's people disobey. ²⁵ If one man sins against another, God will judge him; but if a man sins against Yahweh, who will speak for him?" But they would not listen to the voice of their father, because Yahweh intended to kill them. ²⁶ The child Samuel grew up, and increased in favor with Yahweh and also with men.

²⁷ Now a man of God came to Eli and said to him, "Yahweh says, 'Did I not reveal myself to the house of your father when they were in Egypt in bondage to the house of Pharaoh? ²⁸ I chose him out of all the tribes of Israel to be my priest, to go up to my altar, and to burn incense, to wear an ephod before me. I gave to the house of your father all the offerings of the people of Israel made with fire. ²⁹ Why, then, do you scorn my sacrifices and offerings, which I commanded in the place where I live? Why do you honor your sons above me by making yourselves fat with the best of every offering of my people Israel?' ³⁰ Therefore, Yahweh, the God of Israel, declares, 'I promised that your house and the house of your father should walk before me forever.' But now Yahweh declares, 'Far be it from me to do this, for I will honor those who honor me, but those who despise me will be lightly esteemed. ³¹ See, the days are coming when I will cut off your strength and the strength of your father's house, so that there will no longer be any old man in your house. ³² You will see distress in the place where I live. Although good will be given to Israel, there will no longer be any old man in your house. ³³ Any one of you that I do not cut off from my altar, I will cause your eyes to fail, and I will cause grief in your heart, then all the increase of your house will die while men. ³⁴ This will be the sign for you that will come on your two sons, on Hophni and Phinehas: They will both die on the same day. ³⁵ I will raise up for myself a faithful priest who will do what is in my heart and in my soul. I will build him a sure house; and he will walk before my anointed king forever. ³⁶ Everyone who is left in your house will come and bow down to him, asking for a piece of silver and a loaf of bread, and will say, "Please assign me to one of the priests' positions so I can eat a piece of bread.'"

1 Samuel 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with Hannah's poetic prayer in 2:1-10 .

Special concepts in this chapter

Hannah's song of praise to God

This song is about how God protects the weak and strengthens them. He humbles the rich, provides for the poor, and defeats his enemies.

Eli's Sons

Eli, the chief priest, had two sons. They were ungodly priests who continually sinned and did not honor God. Eli corrected them but they did not listen. A prophet warned Eli that God would stop his family from being priests and his sons would both die on the same day. At the same time, Samuel was growing up and serving God. (See: sin and godly and prophet)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

This chapter has many figures of speech because the first part of the chapter is a song and the last part of the chapter is a prophecy. Songs and prophecy tend to have many figures of speech.

Synecdoches

"My heart" and "my mouth" are synecdoches referencing the speaker.

Metonymies

Body parts are often used to stand for activities involving that part of the body. "The feet of his faithful people" is a metonym meaning what they are doing or where they are going. Place names are often used for people in that place such as "the ends of the earth" meaning the people living in the ends of the earth.

Metaphors

Hannah used many military metaphors: "rock," representing protection; "the bows of the mighty men are broken," representing military defeat; "the horn of his anointed," representing the power of the one that God has chosen to be king.

Rhetorical questions

God used three rhetorical questions to correct and condemn Eli. "Did I not reveal myself to the house of your ancestor, when they were in Egypt in bondage to Pharaoh's house?" "Why then do you scorn my offerings that I required in the place where I live?" "Why do you honor your sons above me by making yourselves fat with the best of every offering of my people Israel?"

1 Samuel 2:1

General Information:

Hannah recites a song to Yahweh.

My heart rejoices

The word "heart" here is a metonym for the whole person. Alternate translation: "I rejoice"

in Yahweh

"because of who Yahweh is" or "because Yahweh is so great"

My horn is exalted

A horn is a symbol of strength. Alternate translation: "I am now strong"

1 Samuel 2:2

Connecting Statement:

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh.

there is no rock like our God

This is another way of saying that God is strong and faithful.

rock

This is a rock large enough to hide behind or to stand on and so be high above one's enemies.

1 Samuel 2:3

Connecting Statement:

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh. She speaks as if other people were listening to her.

no arrogance

"no arrogant words"

by him acts are weighed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he weighs people's acts" or "he understands why people act as they do"

1 Samuel 2:4

Connecting Statement:

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh.

The bows of the mighty men are broken

Possible meanings are 1) the bows themselves are broken or 2) the men who carry the bows are prevented from acting. Alternate translation: "Mighty bowmen are kept from acting"

The bows of the mighty men are broken

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh breaks the bows of the mighty men" or "Yahweh can make even the strongest of people weak"

those who stumble are girded with strength

"those who stumble put on strength like a belt." This metaphor means they will no longer stumble, but their strength will remain with them as tightly as a belt. Alternate translation: "he will make those who stumble strong"

are girded

This means that they have put something around their waist to prepare for work.

1 Samuel 2:5

Connecting Statement:

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh.

gives birth to seven

"gives birth to seven children"

1 Samuel 2:6

Connecting Statement:

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh.

Yahweh kills ... brings to life ... brings down ... raises up
Yahweh is in control of everything.

1 Samuel 2:7

Connecting Statement:

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh.

makes some people poor ... some rich ... humbles ... lifts up

Yahweh is in control of everything.

1 Samuel 2:8

Connecting Statement:

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh.

out of the dust ... from the ash heap

These are metaphors for the lowest position in society.

the needy

people who do not have the things that they need

1 Samuel 2:9

Connecting Statement:

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh.

guard the feet of his faithful people

Here "feet" is a metonym for the way a person walks, which in turn is a metaphor for the way a person decides how to live his life. Alternate translation: "keep his faithful people from making foolish decisions" or "enable his faithful people to make wise decisions"

the wicked will be put to silence in darkness

This polite way of saying that Yahweh will kill the wicked can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will put the wicked to silence in darkness" or "Yahweh will put the wicked in the dark and silent world of the dead"

the wicked will be put to silence

The words "be put to silence" are an idiom for "be made silent." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will make them silent"

by strength

"because he is strong"

1 Samuel 2:10

Connecting Statement:

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh.

Those who oppose Yahweh will be broken

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will break those who oppose him"

broken to pieces

This idiom means "defeated."

the ends of the earth

This is an idiom that means everywhere. Alternate translation: "the whole earth"

exalt the horn of his anointed

A horn is a symbol of strength. See how you translated similar words in [1 Samuel 2:1]

his anointed

This speaks of the person that Yahweh chose and empowered for his purposes as if Yahweh had anointed the person with oil. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the one he has anointed" or "the one he has chosen"

1 Samuel 2:11

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 2:12

General Information:

When people would offer animals as sacrifices, they would first burn the animal's fat and then boil the meat and eat it.

did not know Yahweh

"did not listen to Yahweh" or "did not obey Yahweh"

1 Samuel 2:13

custom

A custom is an action that people regularly do.

1 Samuel 2:14

into the pan, or kettle, or cauldron, or pot

These are containers in which food could be cooked. If your language does not have separate words for these items it can be stated more generally. Alternate translation: "into whatever the people were cooking the meat in"

pan

a small metal container for boiling and cooking

kettle

a large, heavy metal container for boiling and cooking

cauldron

a large, heavy metal container for boiling and cooking

pot

a clay container for cooking

1 Samuel 2:15

General Information:

When people would offer animals as sacrifices, they would first burn the animal's fat and then boil the meat, give some to the priest, and eat the rest.

Worse, before

"They even did something worse than that. Before"

they burned

The person who actually did the burning can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "the man who was sacrificing took his sacrifice to the priests and the priests burned"

Give meat to roast for the priest

"Give me some meat so I can give it to the priest so he can roast it"

roast

cook over a fire

boiled

cooked in water

raw

not cooked

1 Samuel 2:16

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 2:17

despised Yahweh's offering

The young men did not like and paid no attention to Yahweh's instructions regarding what people would offer to him.

1 Samuel 2:18

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 2:19

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 2:20

because of the request she made of Yahweh

Hannah had asked Yahweh for a baby and promised him that she would give the baby to serve in the temple.

1 Samuel 2:21

before Yahweh

This means where Yahweh could see him and Samuel could learn about Yahweh.

1 Samuel 2:22

they were lying with the women

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "they were having sexual relations with the women"

1 Samuel 2:23

Why do you do such things?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is terrible that you do such things!"

1 Samuel 2:24

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 2:25

who will speak for him?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "there is certainly no one who can speak for him."

speak for him

"ask Yahweh to have mercy on him"

the voice of their father

Here the father's "voice" represents the father. Alternate translation: "their father" or "what their father said"

1 Samuel 2:26

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 2:27

man of God

This phrase usually means a prophet of Yahweh. Alternate translation: "a man who hears and tells words from God"

Did I not reveal myself ... house of Pharaoh?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should know that I revealed myself ... house of Pharaoh."

the house of your father

The word "house" is a metonym for the people who lived in the house, and "father" refers to a distant ancestor. Alternate translation: "the family of your ancestor"

your father

Aaron

1 Samuel 2:28

to go up to my altar, and to burn incense

This refers to making an offering to Yahweh.

to wear an ephod before me

The words "wear an ephod" are a metonym for the work of the priests who wear the ephod. Alternate

translation: "to do what I had commanded the priests to do"

1 Samuel 2:29

Connecting Statement:

The man of God continues to speak to Eli.

Why, then, do you scorn my sacrifices ... live?

This rhetorical question is a rebuke. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not scorn my sacrifices ... where I live."

the place where I live

"the place where my people bring offerings to me"

making yourselves fat with the best of every offering

The best part of the offering was to be burned up as an offering to Yahweh, but the priests were eating it.

1 Samuel 2:30

the house of your father

The word "house" is a metonym for the people who lived in the house, and "father" in this case refers to a distant ancestor. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 2:27]

should walk before me

This is an idiom that means "live in obedience to me."

Far be it from me to do this

"I will certainly not allow your family to serve me forever"

those who despise me will be lightly esteemed

The words "lightly esteemed" is an ironic euphemism for "greatly despised." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will lightly esteem those who despise me" or "I will greatly despise those who despise me"

1 Samuel 2:31

See

"Listen carefully to what I am about to say" or "What I am about to say is very important"

I will cut off your strength and the strength of your father's house

The words "cut off ... strength" are probably a euphemism for the death of strong, young men; the words "your father's house" are a metonym for "your family." Alternate translation: "I will kill you

and all strong, young male descendants in your family"

be any old man

"be any old men" or "be any men who grow old"

1 Samuel 2:32

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 2:33

cause your eyes to fail

"cause you to lose your eyesight" or "cause you to go blind"

all the increase of your house

This metaphor speaks of children born into the "house," the family, as if they were the "increase" of fruit or grain growing in a field. Alternate translation: "all the children born into your family"

while men

while they are the strongest they can be

1 Samuel 2:34

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 2:35

I will raise up ... a faithful priest

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "I will cause a man to become priest"

for myself

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "to serve me"

what is in my heart and in my soul

"what I want him to do and what I tell him to do"

I will build him a sure house

Here "house" is an idiom used for "descendants." Alternate translation: "I will ensure that he always has a descendant who serves as high priest"

1 Samuel 2:36

him

the faithful priest whom God will raise up

so I can eat a piece of bread

Here "piece of bread" is used for "food." Alternate translation: "so I can have something to eat"

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 2:1

Why did Hannah speak boldly over her enemies?
Hannah spoke boldly because she rejoices in Yahweh's salvation.

1 Samuel 2:3

Why does Hannah say that we should not boast or speak arrogantly?
We should not boast or speak arrogantly because Yahweh is a God of knowledge and by him all actions are weighed.

1 Samuel 2:5

In Hannah's song, who is the one who is filled with sorrow?
The woman who has many children is filled with sorrow.

1 Samuel 2:6

Who decides death and life, if one goes down to Sheol or is raised up?
Yahweh is the one who decides death and life, and Sheol or raised up.

1 Samuel 2:7

Who makes the poor and the rich?
Yahweh makes the poor, and he makes the rich.

1 Samuel 2:8

Who raises up the poor and lifts the needy to sit in the seat of honor?
Yahweh raises them up to sit at the seat of honor.

1 Samuel 2:9

Who does Hannah say will guard the feet of his faithful people and silence the wicked in darkness?
Yahweh will guard their feet and silence the wicked.

1 Samuel 2:10

Who judges the ends of the earth and gives strength to his king?
Yahweh judges the ends of the earth and gives strength to his king.

1 Samuel 2:11

What child served Yahweh in the presence of Eli the priest?
Samuel served Yahweh in the presence of Eli the priest.

1 Samuel 2:12

Whose sons were evil men?
Eli the priest's sons were evil men.

1 Samuel 2:13

What was the custom of the priests with the people at the time of sacrifice?
Their custom was for the priests' servant come with a three pronged fork to get the meat for the priest to take for himself.

1 Samuel 2:14

What was the custom of the priests with the people at the time of sacrifice?
Their custom was for the priests' servant come with a three pronged fork to get the meat for the priest to take for himself.

1 Samuel 2:15

What evil thing did the priest's sons instruct their servants?
Instead of eating the boiled meat, Eli's sons instructed their servants tell the people they only ate raw meat.

1 Samuel 2:16

What evil thing did the priest's sons instruct their servants?
Instead of eating the boiled meat, Eli's sons instructed their servants tell the people they only ate raw meat.

1 Samuel 2:17

Why was the sin of Eli's sons so great?
Their sin was great before Yahweh because they despised Yahweh's offering.

1 Samuel 2:18

What would Samuel's mother make for him form year to year to cloth him?
She would make him a linen ephod robe.

1 Samuel 2:19

What would Samuel's mother make for him form year to year to cloth him?
She would make him a linen ephod robe.

1 Samuel 2:20

How would Eli bless Elkanah and his wife?
Eli blessed Elkanah and his wife by praying for them to have more children by Hannah.

1 Samuel 2:21

What was Yahweh's response to Eli's prayer for Samuel's parents to have more children?

Yahweh once more helped Hannah and she bore three more sons and two daughters.

1 Samuel 2:23

What did Eli say to his sons as he was getting very old?

Eli told his sons that they were doing evil things and they caused Yahweh's people to disobey.

1 Samuel 2:24

What did Eli say to his sons as he was getting very old?

Eli told his sons that they were doing evil things and they caused Yahweh's people to disobey.

1 Samuel 2:25

Why did Eli's sons not listen to his voice?

Eli's sons did not listen to his voice because Yahweh intended to kill them.

1 Samuel 2:26

Who grew up and increased in favor with Yahweh and also with men?

Samuel grew up and increased in favor with Yahweh and with men.

1 Samuel 2:27

Who told Eli that Yahweh chose Eli's ancestors out of all the tribes of Israel to be Yahweh's priest?

A man of God told Eli that Yahweh chose Eli's ancestors.

1 Samuel 2:28

Who told Eli that Yahweh chose Eli's ancestors out of all the tribes of Israel to be Yahweh's priest?

A man of God told Eli that Yahweh chose Eli's ancestors.

1 Samuel 2:29

How had Eli scorned Yahweh's sacrifices and offerings?

He scorned the sacrifices and offerings by honoring his sons above Yahweh.

1 Samuel 2:33

What did Yahweh tell Eli would happen to the men in his family?

Yahweh told Eli that all the men born in Eli's family would die.

1 Samuel 2:34

What did Yahweh say would be a sign that all the men in Eli's family would die?

Both of Eli's sons would die on the same day.

1 Samuel 2:35

Who will walk before Yahweh's anointed king forever?

A faithful priest who Yahweh raises up will walk before Yahweh's anointed king forever.

Why will everyone in Eli's family come and bow down to the faithful priest?

They will ask him for a position as a priest so that they can have food to eat.

Chapter 3

¹ The child Samuel served Yahweh under Eli. Yahweh's word was rare in those days; there was no frequent prophetic vision. ² At that time, Eli, whose eyesight had begun to grow dim so that he could not see well, was lying down in his own bed. ³ The lamp of God had not yet gone out, and Samuel was lying down in the temple of Yahweh, where the ark of God was. ⁴ Yahweh called to Samuel, who said, "Here I am." ⁵ Samuel ran to Eli and said, "Here I am, for you called me." Eli said, "I did not call you; lie down again." So Samuel went and lay down. ⁶ Yahweh called again, "Samuel." Again Samuel rose and went to Eli and said, "Here I am, for you called me." Eli answered, "I did not call you, my son; lie down again." ⁷ Now Samuel did not yet have any experience of Yahweh, nor had any message from Yahweh ever been revealed to him. ⁸ Yahweh called Samuel again the third time. Again Samuel got up and went to Eli and said, "Here I am, for you called me." Then Eli realized that Yahweh had called the boy. ⁹ Then Eli said to Samuel, "Go and lie down again; if he calls you again, you must say, 'Speak, Yahweh, for your servant is listening.'" So Samuel went and lay down in his own place once more.

¹⁰ Yahweh came and stood; he called as at the other times, "Samuel, Samuel." Then Samuel said, "Speak, for your servant is listening." ¹¹ Yahweh said to Samuel, "See, I am about to do something in Israel at which the ears of everyone who hears it will tingle. ¹² On that day I will carry out against Eli everything I have said about his house, from beginning to end. ¹³ I have told him that I am about to judge his house once for all for the iniquity that he knew about, because his sons brought a curse upon themselves and he did not stop them. ¹⁴ Because of this I have sworn to the house of Eli that the iniquity of his house will never be atoned for by sacrifice or offering."

¹⁵ Samuel lay down until morning; then he opened the doors of the house of Yahweh. But Samuel was afraid to tell Eli about the vision. ¹⁶ Then Eli called Samuel and said, "Samuel, my son." Samuel said, "Here I am." ¹⁷ He said, "What was the word he spoke to you? Please do not hide it from me. May God do so to you, and even more, if you hide anything from me of all the words that he spoke to you." ¹⁸ Samuel told him everything; he hid nothing from him. Eli said, "It is Yahweh. Let him do what seems good to him."

¹⁹ Samuel grew up, and Yahweh was with him, and he let none of his prophetic words fall to the ground. ²⁰ All Israel from Dan to Beersheba knew that Samuel was appointed to be a prophet of Yahweh. ²¹ Yahweh appeared again in Shiloh, for he revealed himself to Samuel in Shiloh by his word.

1 Samuel 3 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

God speaks to Samuel

God spoke at night to Samuel when he was a small boy, telling him that he would punish Eli's family. As Samuel grew up, God gave him many messages. People came from all over Israel to find out what God had to say.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metonymy

In order to show respect when talking to God, Samuel calls himself "your servant" when referring to himself.

Idioms

One characteristic of prophecy is the use of figures of speech. In this passage there are two idioms: "ears will shake," meaning "will shock everyone who hears" and "carry out," meaning "do."

In order to be sure Samuel would tell him the whole truth, Eli used the standard formula for a curse: "may God do to you, and even more, if," meaning "God will punish severely if the person does what the curse says he will do." (See: curse)

1 Samuel 3:1

Yahweh's word was rare

"Yahweh did not often speak to people"

1 Samuel 3:2

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 3:3

The lamp of God

This is the seven-candle lampstand in the holy place of the tabernacle that burned every day and through the night until it was empty.

the temple of Yahweh

The "temple" was actually a tent, but it was where the people worshiped, so it is best to translate the word as "temple" here. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 1:9.

1 Samuel 3:4

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 3:5

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 3:6

my son

Eli was not Samuel's true father. Eli speaks as if he were Samuel's father to show Samuel that he is not angry but that Samuel needs to listen to him.

1 Samuel 3:7

nor had any message from Yahweh ever been revealed to him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "nor had Yahweh ever revealed any message to him" or "and Yahweh had never revealed any message to him"

1 Samuel 3:8

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 3:9

your servant is

Eli tells Samuel to speak to Yahweh as if Samuel were another person so that Samuel would show respect to Yahweh. Alternate translation: "I am"

1 Samuel 3:10

Yahweh came and stood

Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh actually appeared and stood before Samuel or 2) Yahweh made his presence known to Samuel.

your servant is

Samuel speaks to Yahweh as if Samuel were another person to show respect to Yahweh. Alternate translation: "I am"

1 Samuel 3:11

at which the ears of everyone who hears it will tingle

Here "ears ... will tingle" is an idiom that means everyone will be shocked by what they hear.

Alternate translation: "that will shock everyone who hears it"

tingle

This means to feel like someone is gently poking with small, sharp objects, usually because of the cold or because someone has slapped that body part with their hand.

1 Samuel 3:12

from beginning to end

This is a merism for completeness. Alternate translation: "absolutely everything"

1 Samuel 3:13

brought a curse upon themselves

"did those things which Yahweh had said he would punish those who did them"

1 Samuel 3:14

the iniquity of his house will never be atoned for by sacrifice or offering

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "there is no sacrifice or offering that anyone can offer that will atone for the iniquity of his house"

the iniquity of his house

Here the word "house" is a metonym for the family living in the house. "the iniquity that the people in his family have committed"

1 Samuel 3:15

the house of Yahweh

The "house" was actually a tent, but it would be best to translate "house" here.

1 Samuel 3:16

my son

Eli was not Samuel's true father. Eli speaks as if he were Samuel's father to show Samuel that he is not angry but that Samuel needs to answer him. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 1:6]

1 Samuel 3:17

the word he spoke

"the message Yahweh gave"

May God do so to you, and even more

This is an idiom to emphasize how serious Eli is. Alternate translation: "May God punish you the same way he said he will punish me, and even more"

1 Samuel 3:18

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 3:19

he let none of his prophetic words fall to the ground

Here messages that do not come true are spoken of as if they fell to the ground. This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: "he made all the things he prophesied happen"

1 Samuel 3:20

All Israel

"All the people in Israel"

from Dan to Beersheba

This is a merism for "in every part of the land." Alternate translation: "from one end of the land to the other" or "from Dan in the very north to Beersheba in the very south"

Samuel was appointed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh had appointed"

1 Samuel 3:21

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 3:2

What was Samuel's reply when he heard Yahweh call to him as he was lying down in his bed?

Samuel replied, "Here I am."

1 Samuel 3:3

What was Samuel's reply when he heard Yahweh call to him as he was lying down in his bed?

Samuel replied, "Here I am."

1 Samuel 3:4

What was Samuel's reply when he heard Yahweh call to him as he was lying down in his bed?

Samuel replied, "Here I am."

1 Samuel 3:5

What did Eli tell Samuel to do when Samuel ran to him?

Eli said that he did not call Samuel, and told him to go lie down again.

1 Samuel 3:7

What had never been revealed to Samuel?

A message from Yahweh had never been revealed to Samuel.

1 Samuel 3:8

What did Eli realize after the third time that Samuel came to him?

Eli realized that Yahweh had called the boy.

1 Samuel 3:9

What did Eli tell Samuel to say if Yahweh called him again?

Eli told Samuel to say, "Speak, for your servant is listening."

1 Samuel 3:11

What did Yahweh say would happen to the ears of everyone when they heard what Yahweh was going to do?

Yahweh said the ears of everyone that hears what he is about to do will shake.

1 Samuel 3:13

What did Eli's sons bring upon themselves?

Eli's sons brought a curse upon themselves..

1 Samuel 3:14

What would never be atoned for by sacrifice or offering?
The sins of Eli's house would never be atoned for by sacrifice or offering.

1 Samuel 3:15

What was Samuel afraid to do in the morning after he opened the doors of the house of Yahweh?
He was afraid to tell Eli about the vision from Yahweh.

1 Samuel 3:17

What did Samuel do after Eli told him that he must not hide from him the words that Yahweh had spoken?
Samuel told him everything and hid nothing from Eli.

1 Samuel 3:20

What did all Israel from Dan to Beersheba know about Samuel?
All Israel knew that Samuel was appointed to be a prophet of Yahweh.

Chapter 4

¹ The word of Samuel came to all of Israel.

Now Israel went out to battle against the Philistines. They set up camp at Ebenezer, and the Philistines set up camp at Aphek. ² The Philistines lined up for battle against Israel. When the battle spread, Israel was defeated by the Philistines, who killed about four thousand men on the field of battle. ³ When the people came into the camp, the elders of Israel said, "Why has Yahweh defeated us today before the Philistines? Let us bring the ark of the covenant of Yahweh here from Shiloh, that it may be here with us, that it might keep us safe from the hands of our enemies." ⁴ So the people sent men to Shiloh; from there they carried the ark of the covenant of Yahweh of hosts, who sits above the cherubim. The two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, were there with the ark of the covenant of God.

⁵ When the ark of the covenant of Yahweh came into the camp, all of the people of Israel gave a great shout of joy, and the earth resounded. ⁶ When the Philistines heard the noise of the joyful shouting, they said, "What does this loud joyful shouting in the camp of the Hebrews mean?" Then they realized that the ark of Yahweh had come into the camp. ⁷ The Philistines were afraid; they said, "A god has come into the camp." They said, "Woe to us! Nothing like this has happened before!" ⁸ Woe to us! Who will protect us from the strength of these mighty gods? These are the gods who attacked the Egyptians with many different kinds of plagues in the wilderness. ⁹ Take courage, and be men, you Philistines, or you will become slaves to the Hebrews, as they have been slaves to you. Be men, and fight." ¹⁰ The Philistines fought, and Israel was defeated. Every man fled to his tent, and the slaughter was very great; for thirty thousand footmen from Israel fell. ¹¹ The ark of God was taken, and the two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, died.

¹² A man of Benjamin ran from the battle line and came to Shiloh the same day, arriving with his clothes torn and earth on his head. ¹³ When he arrived, Eli was sitting on his seat by the road watching because his heart trembled with concern for the ark of God. When the man entered the city and told the news, the whole city cried out. ¹⁴ When Eli heard the noise of the outcry, he said, "What is the meaning of this uproar?" The man quickly came and told Eli. ¹⁵ Now Eli was ninety-eight years old; his eyes did not focus, and he could not see. ¹⁶ The man said to Eli, "I am the one who came from the battle line. I fled from the battle today." Eli said, "How did it go, my son?" ¹⁷ The man who brought the news answered and said, "Israel fled from the Philistines. Also, there has been a great slaughter among the people. Also, your two sons, Hophni and Phinehas, are dead, and the ark of God has been taken." ¹⁸ When he mentioned the ark of God, Eli fell over backward from his seat by the side of the gate. His neck was broken, and he died, because he was old and heavy. He had judged Israel for forty years.

¹⁹ Now his daughter-in-law, the wife of Phinehas, was pregnant and about to give birth. When she heard the news that the ark of God was captured and that her father-in-law and her husband were dead, she knelt down and gave birth, but her labor pains overwhelmed her. ²⁰ About the time of her death the women attending to her said, "Do not be afraid, for you have given birth to a son." But she did not answer or take what they said to heart. ²¹ She called the child Ichabod, saying, "The glory has gone away from Israel!" for the ark of God had been captured, and because of her father-in-law and her husband. ²² She said, "The glory has gone away from Israel, because the ark of God has been captured."

1 Samuel 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The Ark of the Covenant in Philistine country

This chapter begins a new section on the Ark and the Philistines. It recounts two battles between Israel and the Philistines. In both battles, Israel was badly defeated and, in the second, the Ark was captured.

Special concepts in this chapter

The Ark is captured

The Philistine army invaded Israel, and Israel's army went to fight them but was defeated. Israel decided that if they took the Ark into the next battle, God would cause them to win. When Eli's sons took the Ark

into the next battle and the Philistines won the battle, they killed Eli's two sons and captured the Ark. When Eli heard the Ark was captured, he fell over, broke his neck, and died. Hearing this news, his daughter-in-law named her baby "the glory has departed."

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical Question

The Philistines expressed their fear using a rhetorical question: "Who will protect us from the strength of this mighty God?"

1 Samuel 4:1

Ebenezer ... Aphek

These are the names of places.

1 Samuel 4:2

Israel was defeated by the Philistines, who killed

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Philistines defeated the Israelites and killed"

about four thousand men

Here the number four thousand is a round number. There may have been a few more than that or a few less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number. Alternate translation: "about 4,000 men"

1 Samuel 4:3

the people

the soldiers who had been fighting the battle

Why has Yahweh defeated us today before the Philistines? Let us bring ... enemies

The elders truly did not know why Yahweh had defeated them, but they wrongly thought they knew how to make sure it did not happen again, by bringing the ark to be with them.

1 Samuel 4:4

who sits above the cherubim

You may need to make explicit that the cherubim are those on the lid of the ark of the covenant. The biblical writers often spoke of the ark of the covenant as if it were Yahweh's footstool upon which he rested his feet as he sat on his throne in heaven above. Alternate translation: "who sits on his throne above the cherubim on the ark of the covenant"

Phinehas

This Phinehas is not the same as the grandson of Aaron in Exodus and Numbers.

were there

were in Shiloh

1 Samuel 4:5

When the ark of the covenant of Yahweh came into the camp

"When the people carried the ark of the covenant of Yahweh into the camp" Some languages may need to add understood information to make the meaning clear. Alternate translation: "The people, along with Hophni and Phinehas, picked up the ark of the covenant of Yahweh and carried it into the camp. When the people carried the ark into the camp"

1 Samuel 4:6

the ark of Yahweh had come into the camp

"the people had carried the ark of Yahweh into the camp"

1 Samuel 4:7

they said ... They said

"they said to themselves ... They said to each other" or "they said to each other ... They said to each other." The second clause clearly refers to what the Philistines said to each other. The first clause probably refers to what they thought, though it could also refer to what they said to each other. If possible, avoid stating who was spoken to.

A god has come

The Philistines worshiped many gods, so they probably believed that one of those gods, or one whom they did not worship, had come into the camp. Another possible meaning is that they were speaking the proper name of the God of Israel: "Yahweh has come." Because 4:8 speaks of "gods," some translations read, "Gods have come," that is, "It is gods who have come."

1 Samuel 4:8

Who will protect us from the strength of these mighty gods?

This rhetorical question is an expression of deep fear. It can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "There is no one who can protect us from these mighty gods."

these mighty gods ... the gods who attacked

Because the word "god"

1 Samuel 4:9

be men

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "be strong and fight"

1 Samuel 4:10

Israel was defeated

This can be stated in active form. Also, "Israel" refers to the army of Israel. Alternate translation: "they defeated the army of Israel"

his tent

"his home." The Israelites were living in houses in those days.

1 Samuel 4:11

The ark of God was taken

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Philistines also took the ark of God"

1 Samuel 4:12

clothes torn and earth on his head

This is a way to express deep mourning in Israelite culture.

1 Samuel 4:13

his heart trembled with concern

This is an idiom which means he was very fearful or terribly concerned about something.

the whole city

This is a metonym for "all the people in the city."

1 Samuel 4:14

The man

"The man of Benjamin"

1 Samuel 4:15

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 4:16

my son

Eli was not the other man's true father. Eli speaks as if he were the man's father to show the man that he is not angry but that the man needs to answer him.

1 Samuel 4:17

Israel fled from the Philistines

This is a general statement about what happened. The rest of the man's words give details.

Also, there has been ... people. Also, your two sons

"I will now tell you something worse ... I will now tell you something worse" or "Not only has there been ... people, but your two sons"

the ark of God has been taken

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Philistines have taken the ark of God"

1 Samuel 4:18

When he mentioned

"When the man of Benjamin mentioned"

mentioned

"spoke of"

His neck was broken

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "His neck broke because he fell" or "He broke his neck when he fell"

1 Samuel 4:19

his daughter-in-law

Eli's daughter-in-law

the ark of God was captured

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Philistines had captured the ark of God"

1 Samuel 4:20

take what they said to heart

"pay any attention to what they said" or "allow herself to feel better"

1 Samuel 4:21

She called

"she named"

Ichabod

The name is actually a phrase that means "no glory." The name of a person sometimes reveals information about the person, place, or thing it refers to.

for the ark of God had been captured

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for the Philistines had captured the ark of God"

1 Samuel 4:22

the ark of God has been captured

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because the Philistines have captured the ark of God"

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 4:1

What was the result of the battle between Israel and the Philistines?

Israel was defeated by the Philistines.

1 Samuel 4:2

What was the result of the battle between Israel and the Philistines?

Israel was defeated by the Philistines.

1 Samuel 4:3

What did the elders of Israel decide to do so that they could be kept safe from the power of their enemies?

The elders decided that they should bring the ark of the testimony of Yahweh to be with them.

1 Samuel 4:4

Who was with the ark of the testimony of Yahweh of hosts?

The two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas were there with the ark.

1 Samuel 4:5

What did the Philistines wonder when they heard the great shout of all the people of Israel?

The Philistines wondered what the loud shouting in the camp of the Hebrews meant.

1 Samuel 4:6

What did the Philistines wonder when they heard the great shout of all the people of Israel?

The Philistines wondered what the loud shouting in the camp of the Hebrews meant.

1 Samuel 4:7

Who did the Philistines say had come into the camp of the Hebrews?

The Philistines said that God had come into the camp of the Hebrews.

1 Samuel 4:8

With what did the Philistines say that God had attacked the Egyptians in the wilderness?

They said that God had attacked the Egyptians with many different kinds of plagues.

1 Samuel 4:10

What happened to the two sons of Eli when the Philistines fought and defeated Israel?

The two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, died.

1 Samuel 4:11

What happened to the two sons of Eli when the Philistines fought and defeated Israel?

The two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, died.

1 Samuel 4:12

What did the whole city do when the man from the battle line entered the city and told the news?

When the man told the news, the whole city cried out.

1 Samuel 4:13

What did the whole city do when the man from the battle line entered the city and told the news?

When the man told the news, the whole city cried out.

1 Samuel 4:14

What question did Eli ask when he heard the noise of the outcry of the city?

Eli asked what was the meaning of the uproar.

1 Samuel 4:16

What did the man tell Eli had happened to his sons and to the ark of God when Israel was defeated by the Philistines?

The man told Eli that this two sons were dead and the ark of God had been taken.

1 Samuel 4:17

What did the man tell Eli had happened to his sons and to the ark of God when Israel was defeated by the Philistines?

The man told Eli that this two sons were dead and the ark of God had been taken.

1 Samuel 4:18

What was the injury that took Eli's life when he fell over backward from his seat by the side of the gate?

Eli's neck was broken and he died.

1 Samuel 4:19

What happened when Phinehas' pregnant wife heard that the ark was captured and her father-in-law and husband were dead?

Phinehas' wife knelt down and gave birth, but her labor pains overwhelmed her.

1 Samuel 4:21

What name did Phinehas' wife give to the baby and why did she give him that name?
She named the baby Ichabod because the glory had gone away from Israel.

1 Samuel 4:22

What name did Phinehas' wife give to the baby and why did she give him that name?
She named the baby Ichabod because the glory had gone away from Israel.

Chapter 5

¹ Now the Philistines had captured the ark of God, and they brought it from Ebenezer to Ashdod. ² The Philistines took the ark of God, brought it into the house of Dagon, and set it up beside Dagon. ³ When the people of Ashdod got up early the next day, behold, Dagon had fallen facedown on the ground before the ark of Yahweh. So they took Dagon and set him up in his place again. ⁴ But when they got up early the next morning, behold, Dagon had fallen facedown on the ground before the ark of Yahweh. The head of Dagon and both of his hands were lying cut off on the threshold. Only the trunk of Dagon remained. ⁵ This is why, even today, the priests of Dagon and anyone who comes into Dagon's house does not step on the threshold of Dagon in Ashdod.

⁶ Yahweh's hand was heavy upon the people of Ashdod. He destroyed them and afflicted them with tumors, both Ashdod and its territories. ⁷ When the men of Ashdod realized what was happening, they said, "The ark of the God of Israel must not stay with us, because his hand is hard against us and against Dagon our god." ⁸ So they sent for and gathered together all of the rulers of the Philistines; they said to them, "What should we do with the ark of the God of Israel?" They answered, "Let the ark of the God of Israel be brought around to Gath." So they carried the ark of the God of Israel there. ⁹ But after they brought it around, Yahweh's hand was against the city, causing a very great tumult. He afflicted the men of the city, both small and great; and tumors broke out on them. ¹⁰ So they sent the ark of God to Ekron. But as soon as the ark of God came into Ekron, the Ekronites cried out, saying, "They have brought to us the ark of the God of Israel to kill us and our people." ¹¹ So they sent for and gathered together all of the rulers of the Philistines; they said to them, "Send away the ark of the God of Israel, and let it return to its own place, so that it does not kill us and our people." For there was a deathly tumult throughout the city; the hand of God was very heavy there. ¹² The men who did not die were afflicted with the tumors, and the cry of the city went up to the heavens.

1 Samuel 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of the Ark of the Covenant in Philistia continues.

Special concepts in this chapter

The Ark in the Philistine Cities

The Philistines took the Ark of God to Ashdod and put it in their idol temple, but their idol fell down in front of the Ark and the people got sick with bubonic plague. They took it to Gath next, and the people of Gath began dying of the plague. When they took the Ark to Ekron, the people of Ekron were afraid of it too and did not want it there. Finally they decided to send it back to Israel. (See: temple)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idioms

There are two slightly different idioms used in the same way: the "hand was heavy" and the "hand was hard." Both idioms mean "was severely punished."

1 Samuel 5:1

Now

This word marks the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a word or phrase that does the same, you could use it here.

ark of God

See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 3:3. This is the same as the "ark of the covenant of Yahweh" in 1 Samuel 4:3.

1 Samuel 5:2

house of Dagon

This refers to the temple of Dagon, the god of the Philistines.

1 Samuel 5:3

behold, Dagon

"they were very surprised to see that Dagon"

Dagon had fallen facedown on the ground

The reader should understand that Yahweh had caused the statue to fall on its face during the night.

1 Samuel 5:4

Dagon had fallen

The reader should understand that Yahweh had caused Dagon to fall.

The head of Dagon and both of his hands were lying cut off

It was as if Yahweh were a soldier who had defeated his enemy and cut off the enemy's head and hands.

on the threshold

You may need to make explicit that this was the threshold in the doorway of the entrance to the temple. Alternate translation: "on the threshold of the doorway of the entrance to the temple"

1 Samuel 5:5

This is why, even today

The writer is about to give some background information separate from the main story.

even today

Here "today" means up to the day when the author was writing this book.

the threshold of Dagon

You may need to make explicit the relationship between the threshold and Dagon. Alternate translation: "the threshold of the doorway of the temple of Dagon"

1 Samuel 5:6

Yahweh's hand was heavy upon

This is an idiom. "Yahweh severely judged"

tumors

Possible meanings are 1) painful swelling under the skin or 2) hemorrhoids.

both Ashdod and its territories

The name of the town is a metonym for the people living in the town. "both the people of Ashdod and the people in the land surrounding Ashdod"

1 Samuel 5:7

the men of Ashdod realized

"the men of Ashdod understood"

ark of the God of Israel

See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 3:3. This is the same as the "ark of the covenant of Yahweh" in 1 Samuel 4:3.

1 Samuel 5:8

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 5:9

Yahweh's hand was against

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "Yahweh punished"

both small and great

Possible meanings are 1) this is a merism that refers to age. Alternate translation: "men of all ages" or 2) this is a merism that refers social class. Alternate translation: "from the poorest and weakest men to the richest and most powerful men"

tumors

Possible meanings are 1) painful swelling under the skin or 2) hemorrhoids. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 5:6

1 Samuel 5:10

cried out

Why they cried out can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "cried out in fear"

1 Samuel 5:11

the ark of the God of Israel

See how you translated similar words in 1 Samuel 3:3. This is the same as the "ark of the covenant of Yahweh" in 1 Samuel 4:3.

the God of Israel

Possible meanings are 1) they were speaking the proper name of the God of Israel or 2) they believed that Israel worshiped one of many gods, "the god of Israel." See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 5:7.

there was a deathly tumult throughout the city

"people all over the city were afraid that they were going to die"

the hand of God was very heavy there

The hand is a metonym for God punishing the people. "Yahweh was punishing the people there very severely"

1 Samuel 5:12

The men who did not die

This implies that many men actually died.

tumors

Possible meanings are 1) painful swelling under the skin or 2) hemorrhoids. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 5:6.

the cry of the city went up to the heavens

The word "city" is a metonym for the people of the city. Possible meanings are 1) the words "went up

to the heavens" is an idiom for "was very great." Alternate translation: "the people of the city cried out very loudly" or 2) the words "the heavens" is a metonym for the people's gods. Alternate translation: "the people of the city cried out to their gods"

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 5:1

In what position did the people find the idol Dagon the next day after the Philistines brought the ark of God into the house of Dagon?

Dagon was found fallen face down on the ground before the ark of Yahweh.

1 Samuel 5:2

In what position did the people find the idol Dagon the next day after the Philistines brought the ark of God into the house of Dagon?

Dagon was found fallen face down on the ground before the ark of Yahweh.

1 Samuel 5:3

In what position did the people find the idol Dagon the next day after the Philistines brought the ark of God into the house of Dagon?

Dagon was found fallen face down on the ground before the ark of Yahweh.

1 Samuel 5:4

What remained of the idol Dagon the next morning after they had set him back in his place before the ark?

Only the trunk of Dagon remained and his head and hands were lying cut off in the doorway.

1 Samuel 5:6

Why did the men of Ashdod say that the ark should not stay with them?

The hand of the God of Israel was hard against them and against Dagon their god.

1 Samuel 5:7

Why did the men of Ashdod say that the ark should not stay with them?

The hand of the God of Israel was hard against them and against Dagon their god.

1 Samuel 5:8

To what place did the Philistines move the ark of the God of Israel?

The Philistines moved the ark to Gath.

1 Samuel 5:9

With what did Yahweh afflict the men of the city of Gath?
Yahweh afflicted them with tumors.

1 Samuel 5:10

What did the people of Ekron say that the God of Israel would do to them because the ark was sent to their city?
They said that the God of Israel would kill them and their people.

1 Samuel 5:11

To what place did the people of Ekron request the rulers to send the ark?

They requested that the ark be sent to its own place.

1 Samuel 5:12

To what place did the cry of the men of the city go?

The cry of the men of the city went up to the heavens.

Chapter 6

¹ Now the ark of Yahweh was in the country of the Philistines for seven months. ² Then the Philistines called for the priests and the diviners; they said to them, "What should we do with the ark of Yahweh? Tell us how we should send it back to its own country." ³ The priests and diviners said, "If you send back the ark of the God of Israel, do not send it without a gift; by all means send him a guilt offering. Then you will be healed, and you will know why his hand has not been lifted off of you until now." ⁴ Then they said, "What should the guilt offering be that we are returning to him?" They replied, "Five golden tumors and five golden mice, five being the number that is the same as the number of the rulers of the Philistines. For the same plague afflicted you and your rulers. ⁵ So you must make models of your tumors, and models of your mice that are ruining the land, and give glory to the God of Israel. Perhaps he will lift his hand from you, from your gods, and from your land. ⁶ Why should you harden your hearts, as the Egyptians and Pharaoh hardened their hearts? That was when the God of Israel dealt severely with them; did not the Egyptians send away the people, and they left? ⁷ Now then, prepare a new cart with two nursing cows that have never been yoked. Tie the cows to the cart, but take their calves home, away from them. ⁸ Take the ark of Yahweh and place it on the cart, and put the figures of gold, which you are returning to him as a guilt offering, in a box beside it. Send it off and let it go its way, ⁹ but watch. If it goes up the road to its own land toward Beth Shemesh, then it is Yahweh who has caused us this great harm. But if not, then we will know that it is not his hand that afflicted us; it happened to us by chance."

¹⁰ The men did as they were told; they took two nursing cows, tied them to the cart, and confined their calves at home. ¹¹ They put the ark of Yahweh on the cart, together with a box containing the golden mice and the castings of their tumors. ¹² The cows went straight in the direction of Beth Shemesh. They went along one highway, lowing as they went, and they did not turn aside either to the right or to the left. The rulers of the Philistines followed after them to the border of Beth Shemesh. ¹³ Now the people of Beth Shemesh were harvesting their wheat in the valley. When they lifted up their eyes and saw the ark, they rejoiced. ¹⁴ The cart came into the field of Joshua from the town of Beth Shemesh and stopped there. A great stone was there, and they split the wood from the cart, and offered the cows as a burnt offering to Yahweh. ¹⁵ The Levites took down the ark of Yahweh and the box that was with it, where the golden figures were, and put them on the great stone. The men of Beth Shemesh offered burnt offerings and made sacrifices the same day to Yahweh. ¹⁶ When the five rulers of the Philistines saw this, they returned that day to Ekron.

¹⁷ These are the golden tumors which the Philistines returned for a guilt offering to Yahweh—one for Ashdod, one for Gaza, one for Ashkelon, one for Gath, and one for Ekron. ¹⁸ The golden mice were the same in number as the number of all the cities of the Philistines belonging to the five rulers, both fortified cities and country villages. The great stone, beside which they set down the ark of Yahweh, remains a witness to this day in the field of Joshua the Bethshemite.

¹⁹ Yahweh attacked some of the men of Beth Shemesh because they had looked into the ark of Yahweh. He killed 50,070 men. The people mourned, because Yahweh had given the people a great blow. ^[1]²⁰ The men of Beth Shemesh said, "Who is able to stand before Yahweh, this holy God? To whom will the ark go up from us?" ²¹ They sent messengers to the inhabitants of Kiriath Jearim, saying, "The Philistines have brought back the ark of Yahweh; come down and take it back with you."

Footnotes

6:19 ^[1]Instead of

1 Samuel 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter ends the story of the Ark of the Covenant among the Philistines.

Special concepts in this chapter

The Philistines send the Ark back to Israel

The Philistine leaders asked their priests what they should do with the Ark. The priests said to send it off with an offering. The Philistines put the Ark on a cart drawn by cows and let them go wherever they wanted to go. The cows went straight toward Israel. When some people peeked into the Ark, God killed them. Because of this, the people sent the Ark to Kiriath Jearim.

1 Samuel 6:1

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 6:2

the priests and the diviners

These were pagan priests and diviners who worshiped Dagon.

Tell us how we should send it

The Philistines wanted to know how to get rid of the ark without angering Yahweh any further.

1 Samuel 6:3

the God of Israel

Possible meanings are 1) they were speaking the proper name of the God of Israel or 2) they believed that Israel worshiped one of many gods, "the god of Israel." See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 5:7.

by all means send him a guilt offering

The words "by all means" are a forceful way of saying something. Alternate translation: "you must send a guilt offering"

you will be healed

"you will no longer be ill"

you

The pronoun "you" is plural, referring to all of the Philistines.

why his hand has not been lifted off of you

Here "hand" is a metonym used to represent God's power to afflict or discipline. Alternate translation: "why he has not relieved your suffering"

1 Samuel 6:4

tumors

Possible meanings are 1) painful swelling under the skin or 2) hemorrhoids. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 5:6.

mice

more than one mouse

1 Samuel 6:5

models

A model is something that looks like a real thing.

tumors

Possible meanings are 1) painful swelling under the skin or 2) hemorrhoids. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 5:6.

the God of Israel

Possible meanings are 1) they were speaking the proper name of the God of Israel or 2) they believed that Israel worshiped one of many gods, "the god of Israel." See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 5:7.

lift his hand from you, from your gods, and from your land

Here "hand" is a metonym used to represent God's power to afflict or discipline. Alternate translation: "stop punishing you, your gods and your land"

1 Samuel 6:6

Why should you harden your hearts, as the Egyptians and Pharaoh hardened their hearts?

The priests and diviners use a rhetorical question to urge the Philistines to think very seriously about what will happen if they refuse to obey God. This can be translated as a warning. Alternate translation: "Do not be stubborn like the Egyptians and Pharaoh were!"

harden your hearts

This is an idiom that means to be stubborn or unwilling to obey God. Alternate translation: "refuse to obey God"

did not the Egyptians send away the people, and they left?

This is another rhetorical question used to remind the Philistines how the Egyptians finally sent the Israelites out of Egypt so that God would stop afflicting the Egyptians. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "remember that the Egyptians sent the Israelites out of Egypt."

1 Samuel 6:7

two nursing cows

"two cows that have calves that are still drinking milk"

1 Samuel 6:8

Send it off and let it go its way

Normally the two cows would head back home to their calves.

1 Samuel 6:9

If it goes ... toward Beth Shemesh, then it is Yahweh

It is unlikely that the cows would choose to wander to Beth Shemesh when their calves are back in the Philistine area.

1 Samuel 6:10

two nursing cows

"two cows that have calves that are still drinking milk" See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 6:7.

1 Samuel 6:11

mice

Translated this as in 1 Samuel 6:4.

castings of their tumors

"models of their tumors"

tumors

Possible meanings are 1) painful swelling under the skin or 2) hemorrhoids. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 5:6.

1 Samuel 6:12

The cows went straight in the direction of Beth Shemesh

Nursing cows would normally return to their calves, but these cows went to Beth Shemesh.

lowing as they went

Lowling is the noise cows make with their voices.

they did not turn aside either to the right or to the left

"they did not wander off of the highway." This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: "they stayed on the highway" or "they went straight ahead"

1 Samuel 6:13

Now

The writer is introducing a new part of the story. If your language has a way of marking the beginning of a new part of the story, you could use it here.

people of Beth Shemesh

These were Israelites.

lifted up their eyes

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "looked up"

1 Samuel 6:14

A great stone was there

The people used this stone as an altar when they offered the cows as sacrifices.

1 Samuel 6:15

The Levites took down the ark of Yahweh

This actually happened before they chopped the cart into firewood to use in offering the cows to Yahweh.

The Levites took down the ark

According to the law of Moses, only the Levites were permitted to handle the ark.

the box that was with it, where the golden figures were

"the box containing the gold models of the rats and the tumors"

1 Samuel 6:16

the five rulers of the Philistines

"the five Philistine kings"

1 Samuel 6:17

tumors

Possible meanings are 1) painful swelling under the skin or 2) hemorrhoids. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 5:6.

1 Samuel 6:18

mice

Translated this as in 1 Samuel 6:4.

fortified cities

These are cities with high walls around them to protect the people inside from attack by their enemies.

The great stone ... remains a witness

The stone is referred to as if it is a person who can see. Alternate translation: "The great stone ... is still there, and people remember what happened on it"

Joshua

This is a man's name.

the Bethshemite

This is what a person from Beth Shemesh is called. Alternate translation: "from Beth Shemesh"

to this day

to the time at which the writer wrote the book

1 Samuel 6:19

they had looked into the ark

The ark was so holy that no one was permitted to look inside it. Only the priests were allowed to even see the ark.

50,070 men

"fifty thousand and seventy men"

1 Samuel 6:20

Who is able to stand before Yahweh, this holy God?

Possible meanings are 1) this is a rhetorical question that expresses the people's fear of Yahweh. Alternate translation: "There is no one who can resist Yahweh because he is so holy!" or 2) this

is a question asking for information. The phrase "stand before Yahweh" may refer to priests who serve Yahweh. It is implied that the people were looking for a priest whom Yahweh would permit to handle the ark. Alternate translation: "Is there a priest among us who serves this holy God, Yahweh, and is able to handle this ark?"

To whom will the ark go up from us?

This is a question asking for information. It is implied that the people want Yahweh and the ark to go somewhere else so he will not punish them again. Alternate translation: "Where can we send this ark so that Yahweh will not punish us again?"

1 Samuel 6:21

Kiriath Jearim

This was a town in Israel.

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 6:1

For what period of time was the ark of Yahweh in the Philistine's country?

The ark was in the country of the Philistines for seven months.

1 Samuel 6:2

Who did the Philistines call to ask advice on how the ark of Yahweh should be sent back to its own country?

They called for the priests and the diviners to tell them how to send the ark back to its own country.

1 Samuel 6:3

What did the priests and diviners tell the Philistine people to send as a gift to the God of Israel as a guilt offering?

They told the Philistines to send five golden tumors and five golden mice.

1 Samuel 6:4

What did the priests and diviners tell the Philistine people to send as a gift to the God of Israel as a guilt offering?

They told the Philistines to send five golden tumors and five golden mice.

1 Samuel 6:6

Why did the priests and diviners say God had dealt severely with the Egyptians and Pharaoh?

God had dealt severely with the Egyptians and Pharaoh because they had hardened their hearts.

1 Samuel 6:7

What animals did the priests and diviners tell the Philistines to tie to the cart on which they were to place the ark of Yahweh?

They told the Philistines to tie two nursing cows to the cart.

1 Samuel 6:9

How would the Philistines know that it was Yahweh who had executed the great disaster on them?

The Philistines would know it if the cows pulling the cart went on their own to Beth Shemesh.

1 Samuel 6:10

Where did the nursing cows go with the cart carrying the ark and the box containing the golden mice and castings of tumors?

The cows went straight in the direction of Beth Shemesh.

1 Samuel 6:11

Where did the nursing cows go with the cart carrying the ark and the box containing the golden mice and castings of tumors?

The cows went straight in the direction of Beth Shemesh.

1 Samuel 6:12

Where did the nursing cows go with the cart carrying the ark and the box containing the golden mice and castings of tumors?

The cows went straight in the direction of Beth Shemesh.

1 Samuel 6:13

What were the people of Beth Shemesh doing when they lifted up their eyes and saw the ark?

They were harvesting their wheat in the valley.

1 Samuel 6:14

What did the people of Beth Shemesh do with the cows that had pulled the cart?

They offered the cows as a burnt offering to Yahweh.

1 Samuel 6:15

Who took down the ark of Yahweh and the box that was with it?

The Levites took down the ark of Yahweh and the box that was with it.

1 Samuel 6:16

What did the five rulers of the Philistines do when they saw what the men of Beth Shemesh had done?

They returned that day to Ekron.

1 Samuel 6:17

What was the significance of the number of five golden tumors and the number of five golden mice?

The number of the golden tumors and the golden mice were the same as the number of all the cities of the Philistines belonging to the five rulers.

1 Samuel 6:18

What was the significance of the number of five golden tumors and the number of five golden mice?

The number of the golden tumors and the golden mice were the same as the number of all the cities of the Philistines belonging to the five rulers.

1 Samuel 6:19

Why did Yahweh kill seventy of the men of Beth Shemesh?

Yahweh killed them because they had looked into his ark.

1 Samuel 6:21

What did the messengers ask the inhabitants of Kiriath Jearim to do about the ark that the Philistines had brought back?

The messengers asked the inhabitants of Kiriath Jearim to come down and take the ark back with them.

Chapter 7

¹ The men of Kiriath Jearim came, took the ark of Yahweh, and brought it into the house of Abinadab on the hill. They set apart his son Eleazar to keep the ark of Yahweh. ² From the day the ark remained in Kiriath Jearim, a long time passed, twenty years. All the house of Israel lamented and wished to turn to Yahweh. ³ Samuel said to the entire house of Israel, "If you return to Yahweh with your whole heart, remove the foreign gods and the Ashtoreths from among you, turn your hearts to Yahweh, and worship him only, then he will rescue you from the hand of the Philistines." ⁴ Then the people of Israel removed the Baals and the Ashtoreths, and worshiped Yahweh only. ⁵ Then Samuel said, "Bring together all Israel to Mizpah, and I will pray to Yahweh for you." ⁶ They gathered at Mizpah, drew water and poured it out before Yahweh. They fasted that day and said, "We have sinned against Yahweh." It was there that Samuel decided disputes for the people of Israel and led the people. ⁷ Now when the Philistines heard the people of Israel had gathered at Mizpah, the rulers of the Philistines attacked Israel. When the people of Israel heard of it, they were afraid of the Philistines. ⁸ Then the people of Israel said to Samuel, "Do not stop calling out to Yahweh our God for us, so he will save us from the hand of the Philistines." ⁹ Samuel took a nursing lamb and offered it as a whole burnt offering to Yahweh. Then Samuel cried out to Yahweh for Israel, and Yahweh answered him. ¹⁰ As Samuel was offering up the burnt offering, the Philistines approached to attack Israel. But Yahweh thundered with a loud sound that day against the Philistines and threw them into confusion, and they were routed before Israel. ¹¹ The men of Israel went from Mizpah, and they pursued the Philistines and killed them as far as below Beth Kar.

¹² Then Samuel took a stone and set it between Mizpah and Shen. He named it Ebenezer, saying, "Thus far Yahweh has helped us." ¹³ So the Philistines were subdued and they did not enter the border of Israel. The hand of Yahweh was against the Philistines all the days of Samuel. ¹⁴ The towns that the Philistines had taken from Israel were restored to Israel, from Ekron to Gath; Israel brought back their territory from the Philistines. Then there was peace between Israel and the Amorites.

¹⁵ Samuel judged Israel all the days of his life. ¹⁶ Each year he went on a circuit to Bethel, to Gilgal, and to Mizpah. He decided disputes for Israel in all these places. ¹⁷ Then he would return to Ramah, because his house was there; and there also he decided disputes for Israel. He also built an altar there to Yahweh.

1 Samuel 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter completes the section on Samuel leading Israel.

Special concepts in this chapter

Israel begins to worship Yahweh again

Samuel told the people to get rid of all their idols and worship Yahweh alone. The people were obedient. When the Philistines heard the Israelites were all gathered together, the Philistines attacked, but God defeated them. There was a time of peace during which Samuel settled disputes between the people as the judges had done before.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idioms

Whenever Samuel spoke to a group of people, he used many idioms: "to turn to" means "to worship"; "with your whole heart" means "completely"; and "rescue from the hand" means "rescued from the power."

1 Samuel 7:1

Kiriath Jearim

This is the name of a place.

Abinadab ... Eleazar

These are the names of men.

1 Samuel 7:2

twenty years

"20 years"

1 Samuel 7:3

the entire house of Israel

The word "house" is a metonym for the people who live in the house and their descendants. Alternate translation: "all of the descendants of Israel" or "all of the Israelite people"

return to Yahweh with your whole heart

Here "with your whole heart" is an idiom that means to be completely devoted to something. Alternate translation: "become completely devoted to worshiping and obeying Yahweh only"

1 Samuel 7:4

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 7:5

all Israel

"all the people of Israel" or "all the Israelites"

1 Samuel 7:6

drew water and poured it out before Yahweh

Possible meanings are 1) the people denied themselves water as part of fasting or 2) they got water out of a stream or well and poured it on the ground as an outward sign of being sorry for their sin.

1 Samuel 7:7

the rulers of the Philistines attacked Israel

It can be stated plainly that it was the army and not the rulers by themselves who attacked Israel. Alternate translation: "the Philistine rulers led their army and attacked Israel"

1 Samuel 7:8

save us from the hand of the Philistines

The "hand" is a metonym for the power of the person. Alternate translation: "save us from the Philistine army" or "keep the Philistine army from harming us"

1 Samuel 7:9

nursing lamb

a lamb that is still drinking its mother's milk

cried out

"cried out for help"

Yahweh answered him

"Yahweh did what Samuel asked him to do"

1 Samuel 7:10

As Samuel ... they were routed before Israel

This begins to explain what the writer means by "Yahweh answered him" in (1 Samuel 7:9).

threw them into confusion

The word "confusion" here is used as a casual way of saying the Philistines were unable to think clearly. Alternate translation: "made them unable to think clearly"

they were routed before Israel

This can be translated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) "Yahweh routed them before Israel" or 2) "Israel routed them"

routed

To rout people is to defeat them before they can cause any harm.

1 Samuel 7:11

The men of Israel ... Beth Kar

This finishes explaining what the writer means by "Yahweh answered him" in (1 Samuel 7:9).

Beth Kar

This is the name of a place.

1 Samuel 7:12

took a stone and set it

The Israelites and other peoples in that land would place a large stone where important events had happened as a reminder of God's help.

Mizpah ... Shen

These are the names of places.

1 Samuel 7:13

So the Philistines were subdued

The writer has just finished telling how the Philistines were subdued. If your language has a way of marking the end of a description, you could use it here.

the Philistines were subdued

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh subdued the Philistines" or "Yahweh kept the Philistines from causing harm"

they did not enter the border of Israel

The Philistines did not enter Israel's border to attack them.

The hand of Yahweh was against the Philistines

The word "hand" is a metonym for power. Alternate translation: "Yahweh used his power against the Philistines"

1 Samuel 7:14

The towns ... from Israel were restored to Israel

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) Here "Israel" refers to the "land" of Israel. "Yahweh restored to the land of Israel the towns ... from Israel" or 2) "Israel" is a metonym for

the people who live there. Alternate translation: "the people of Israel were able to reclaim the towns ... from Israel"

1 Samuel 7:15

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 7:16

went on a circuit

traveled from place to place in a rough circle

He decided disputes

Disputes are arguments or disagreements between two or more people.

1 Samuel 7:17

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 7:1

What did the men of Kiriath Jearim do to Abinadab's son Eleazar so that he could keep the ark of Yahweh?

They consecrated him to keep the ark of Yahweh.

1 Samuel 7:2

What did all the house of Israel do during the twenty years that the ark remained in Kiriath Jearim?

They lamented during that time and wished to turn to Yahweh.

1 Samuel 7:3

What did the people of Israel need to remove from among them in order for Yahweh to rescue them from the hand of the Philistines?

They needed to remove the foreign gods and Ashtaroth from among them and worship Yahweh only.

1 Samuel 7:4

What did the people of Israel need to remove from among them in order for Yahweh to rescue them from the hand of the Philistines?

They needed to remove the foreign gods and Ashtaroth from among them and worship Yahweh only.

1 Samuel 7:5

What did the people of Israel admit that they had done when they gathered together at Mitzpah and poured water out before Yahweh?

They admitted that they had sinned against Yahweh.

1 Samuel 7:6

What did the people of Israel admit that they had done when they gathered together at Mitzpah and poured water out before Yahweh?

They admitted that they had sinned against Yahweh.

1 Samuel 7:7

What did the people of Israel hear about the Philistines that made them afraid and made them ask Samuel to call out to Yahweh for them?

They heard that the rulers of the Philistines attacked Israel.

1 Samuel 7:8

What did the people of Israel hear about the Philistines that made them afraid and made them ask Samuel to call out to Yahweh for them?

They heard that the rulers of the Philistines attacked Israel.

1 Samuel 7:9

What did Yahweh do when Samuel took a nursing lamb, offered it as a whole burnt offering to Yahweh and cried out to Yahweh?
He answered Samuel.

1 Samuel 7:10

What was it that Yahweh did that threw the Philistines into confusion as they drew near to attack Israel?
Yahweh thundered with a loud sound that day against the Philistines.

1 Samuel 7:12

What did Samuel set up between Mizpah and Shen as a remembrance that Yahweh had helped them?
Samuel took a stone and set it up.

1 Samuel 7:14

What happened to the towns that the Philistines had taken from Israel?
They were restored to Israel.

1 Samuel 7:15

What did Samuel do as he went on a circuit to Bethel, Gilgal, Mizpah and back to Raman?
Samuel decided disputes for Israel in all these places.

1 Samuel 7:16

What did Samuel do as he went on a circuit to Bethel, Gilgal, Mizpah and back to Raman?
Samuel decided disputes for Israel in all these places.

1 Samuel 7:17

What did Samuel do as he went on a circuit to Bethel, Gilgal, Mizpah and back to Raman?
Samuel decided disputes for Israel in all these places.

Chapter 8

¹ When Samuel was old, he made his sons judges over Israel. ² The name of his firstborn was Joel, and the name of his second son was Abijah. They were judges in Beersheba. ³ His sons did not walk in his ways, but chased after dishonest gain. They took bribes and perverted justice.

⁴ Then all the elders of Israel gathered together and came to Samuel at Ramah. ⁵ They said to him, "Look, you are old, and your sons do not walk in your ways. Appoint for us a king to judge us like all the nations."

⁶ But it displeased Samuel when they said, "Give us a king to judge us." So Samuel prayed to Yahweh. ⁷ Yahweh said to Samuel, "Obey the voice of the people in everything they say to you; for they have not rejected you, but they have rejected me from being king over them. ⁸ The same deeds they have done since the day I brought them out of Egypt—abandoning me and serving other gods—they are now doing also to you. ⁹ Now listen to them; but warn them solemnly and let them know by what ordinances the king will reign over them."

¹⁰ So Samuel told all the words of Yahweh to the people who were asking for a king. ¹¹ He said, "These will be the ordinances of the king who will reign over you. He will take your sons and appoint them to his chariots and to be his horsemen, and to run before his chariots. ¹² He will appoint for himself captains of thousands and captains of fifties. He will make some plow his ground, some reap his harvest, and some make his weapons of war and the equipment for his chariots. ¹³ He will also take your daughters to be perfumers, cooks, and bakers. ¹⁴ He will take the very best of your fields, your vineyards, and your olive orchards, and give them to his servants. ¹⁵ He will take a tenth of your grain and of your vineyards and give to his officers and his servants. ¹⁶ He will take your male servants and your female servants and the best of your cattle ^[1] and your donkeys; he will put them all to work for him. ¹⁷ He will take the tenth of your flocks, and you will be his slaves. ¹⁸ Then on that day you will cry out because of your king whom you have chosen for yourselves; but Yahweh will not answer you on that day."

¹⁹ But the people refused to listen to Samuel; they said, "No! There must be a king over us ²⁰ so that we might be like all the other nations, and so that our king may judge us and go out before us and fight our battles." ²¹ When Samuel heard all the words of the people he repeated them in the ears of Yahweh. ²² Yahweh said to Samuel, "Obey their voice and cause a king to reign over them." So Samuel said to the men of Israel, "Every man must go to his own city."

Footnotes

8:16 ^[1]The Hebrew text can be read as:

1 Samuel 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Saul and Samuel

The section including chapters 8-16 begins a new part of the story. The people wanted a king, and God chose Saul, the man the people wanted, to be their king. He was not the king Yahweh wanted.

Special concepts in this chapter

The people want a king

When Samuel was old, he appointed his sons to be judges. They were corrupt and took bribes, so the people came and asked Samuel to appoint a king for them. Samuel asked God, who gave them a king but warned them what a king would be like. Despite Samuel's warning that a king would oppress them, the people still wanted a king. This was sinful because they were rejecting God as their king. (See: appoint, oppress and and sin)

1 Samuel 8:1

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 8:2

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 8:3

chased after dishonest gain

The writer speaks of money that people would give Samuel's sons as if it were a person or animal running away from Samuel's sons, and he speaks of Samuel's sons as if they were physically chasing that person or animal. Alternate translation: "they worked hard to gain money by being dishonest"

pervverted justice

"judged in favor of those who did evil"

1 Samuel 8:4

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 8:5

do not walk in your ways

The way a person lives is spoken of as walking on a path. Alternate translation: "do not do the things you do" or "do not do what is just the way you do"

Appoint for us a king to judge us like all the nations

Possible meanings are 1) "Appoint for us a king like the kings of all the nations so that he can judge us" or 2) "Appoint for us a king who will judge us the way the kings of the nations judge them"

Appoint for us a king to judge us

The leaders wrongly believed that a king, and his sons after him, would rule justly.

1 Samuel 8:6

But it displeased Samuel ... Give us a king to judge us

Samuel was unhappy that the people did not just want him to remove his corrupt sons and to appoint honest judges, but they wanted a king to rule over them like other countries had.

1 Samuel 8:7

Obey the voice of the people

Here "the voice" is a metonym for the will or the desire of the people. Alternate translation: "Do what the people say"

but they have rejected me

Yahweh knew that the people were not just rejecting corrupt judges, but they were rejecting Yahweh as their king.

1 Samuel 8:8

I brought them out of Egypt

This refers to Yahweh freeing the Israelites from slavery in Egypt many years before.

1 Samuel 8:9

Now listen to them

"Now do what they are asking you to do"

warn them solemnly

"be very serious as you warn them"

by what ordinances the king will reign over them

"how the king who reigns over them will treat them" or "what the king who rules over them will require them to do"

1 Samuel 8:10

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 8:11

These will be the ordinances ... He will take

The practice of the king will be to take. This begins the list of things he will take.

These will be the ordinances of the king who will reign over you

The abstract noun "ordinances" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "This is how the king who will reign over you will act" or "This is what the king who will reign over you will do"

ordinances

See how you translated this word in 1 Samuel 8:9.

appoint them to his chariots

"have them drive chariots in battle"

be his horsemen

They will ride horses into battle.

1 Samuel 8:12

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 8:13

Connecting Statement:

Samuel continues to tell what things the king will take.

to be perfumers

"to make good-smelling oils to put on his body"

1 Samuel 8:14

olive orchards

"fields of olive trees"

1 Samuel 8:15

a tenth of your grain

They will have to divide their grain into ten equal parts and give one of those parts to the king's officers and servants.

a tenth ... of your vineyards

They will have to divide the wine that they produce in their vineyards into ten equal parts and give one of those parts to the king's officers and servants.

officers

These are the leaders of the king's army.

1 Samuel 8:16

Connecting Statement:

Samuel continues to tell what things the king will take.

1 Samuel 8:17

the tenth of your flocks

They will have to divide their flocks into ten equal parts and give one of those parts to the king's officers and servants. See how you translated "tenth" in [1 Samuel 8:15]

you will be his slaves

"you will feel as if you are his slaves"

1 Samuel 8:18

you will cry out

Possible meanings are 1) the people will ask Yahweh to rescue them from the king or 2) the people will ask the king to stop treating them so badly .

1 Samuel 8:19

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 8:20

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 8:21

he repeated them in the ears of Yahweh

Here "the ears of Yahweh" refers to Yahweh. Samuel prayed to Yahweh repeating all that the people said. Alternate translation: "he repeated them to Yahweh"

1 Samuel 8:22

Obey their voice

Here the metonym "their voice" refers to the will of the people. Alternate translation: "Obey the people"

cause a king to reign over them

"make someone king over them." Use the common term in your language for making someone king.

go to his own city

"go home"

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 8:1

In what ways did the two sons of Samuel, who were judges, not walk in the ways of their father?

They chased after dishonest gain, taking bribes and perverting justice.

1 Samuel 8:2

In what ways did the two sons of Samuel, who were judges, not walk in the ways of their father?

They chased after dishonest gain, taking bribes and perverting justice.

1 Samuel 8:3

In what ways did the two sons of Samuel, who were judges, not walk in the ways of their father?

They chased after dishonest gain, taking bribes and perverting justice.

1 Samuel 8:4

What the request did the elders of Israel make of Samuel?

They asked Samuel to appoint for them a king to judge them like all the nations, since he was old and his sons did not walk in his ways.

1 Samuel 8:5

What the request did the elders of Israel make of Samuel?

They asked Samuel to appoint for them a king to judge them like all the nations, since he was old and his sons did not walk in his ways.

1 Samuel 8:6

What did Samuel do when he was displeased by the request from the elders of Israel to give them a king?
Samuel prayed to Yahweh.

1 Samuel 8:7

Why did Yahweh tell Samuel to obey the voice of the people in everything they would say to him?
Yahweh told Samuel to obey their voice because they were not rejecting Samuel, but they were rejected Yahweh from being king over them.

1 Samuel 8:8

What was the warning which Yahweh told Samuel to give to the people of Israel?
Yahweh told Samuel to solemnly warn the people of Israel about the way in which the king would rule over them.

1 Samuel 8:9

What was the warning which Yahweh told Samuel to give to the people of Israel?
Yahweh told Samuel to solemnly warn the people of Israel about the way in which the king would rule over them.

1 Samuel 8:10

What was the warning which Samuel gave to the people of Israel about the way in which the king would take their sons from them?
Samuel warned the people that the king would take their sons to be horsemen and soldiers, make them plow the ground and reap the harvest, and use others to make weapons and implements of war.

1 Samuel 8:11

What was the warning which Samuel gave to the people of Israel about the way in which the king would take their sons from them?
Samuel warned the people that the king would take their sons to be horsemen and soldiers, make them plow the ground and reap the harvest, and use others to make weapons and implements of war.

1 Samuel 8:12

What was the warning which Samuel gave to the people of Israel about the way in which the king would take their sons from them?
Samuel warned the people that the king would take their sons to be horsemen and soldiers, make them plow the ground and reap the harvest, and use others to make weapons and implements of war.

1 Samuel 8:13

What was the warning which Samuel gave to the people of Israel about what the king would do with their daughters?
Samuel warned them that the king would take their daughters to be perfumers, cooks, and bakers.

1 Samuel 8:14

What was the warning which Samuel gave to the people of Israel about what the king would do with their daughters?
Samuel warned them that the king would take their daughters to be perfumers, cooks, and bakers.

1 Samuel 8:15

What was the warning which Samuel gave to the people of Israel about what the king would do with their daughters?
Samuel warned them that the king would take their daughters to be perfumers, cooks, and bakers.

1 Samuel 8:16

What was the warning which Samuel gave to the people of Israel about what the king would do with their servants, young men, and animals?
Samuel warned them that the king would take their servants, the best of their young men and donkeys, a tenth of their flocks, and make them slaves.

1 Samuel 8:17

What was the warning which Samuel gave to the people of Israel about what the king would do with their servants, young men, and animals?
Samuel warned them that the king would take their servants, the best of their young men and donkeys, a tenth of their flocks, and make them slaves.

1 Samuel 8:18

What did Samuel warn the people of Israel would happen when they would cry out because of the king which they had chosen for themselves?
Samuel said that when they would cry out to Yahweh, Yahweh would not answer them.

1 Samuel 8:19

How did the people of Israel respond to the warnings from Samuel?

The people insisted that they still wanted a king over them so they could be like the other nations and have a king to judge them and fight their battles.

1 Samuel 8:20

How did the people of Israel respond to the warnings from Samuel?

The people insisted that they still wanted a king over them so they could be like the other nations

and have a king to judge them and fight their battles.

1 Samuel 8:21

What was the response of Yahweh when Samuel repeated the words of the people into his ears?

Yahweh still told Samuel to obey the voice of the people and give them a king.

1 Samuel 8:22

What was the response of Yahweh when Samuel repeated the words of the people into his ears?

Yahweh still told Samuel to obey the voice of the people and give them a king.

Chapter 9

¹ There was a man from Benjamin, a man of great wealth. His name was Kish son of Abiel son of Zeror son of Bekorath son of Aphiah, the son of a Benjamite. ² He had a son named Saul, a handsome young man. There was no man among the people of Israel who was a more handsome person than he. From his shoulders upward he was taller than any of the people. ³ Now the donkeys of Kish, Saul's father, were lost. So Kish said to Saul his son, "Take one of the servants with you; arise and go search for the donkeys." ⁴ So Saul passed through the hill country of Ephraim and went through the land of Shalisha, but they did not find them. Then they passed through the land of Shaalim, but they were not there. Then he passed through the land of the Benjamites, but they did not find them.

⁵ When they came to the land of Zuph, Saul said to his servant who was with him, "Come, let us go back, or my father may stop caring for the donkeys and become anxious about us." ⁶ But the servant said to him, "See now, there is a man of God in this city. He is a man who is held in honor; everything that he says comes true. Let us go there; maybe he can tell us which way we should go on our journey." ⁷ Then Saul said to his servant, "But if we go, what can we bring the man? For the bread in our sack is gone, and there is no present to bring to the man of God. What do we have?" ⁸ The servant answered Saul and said, "Here, I have with me one-fourth of a shekel of silver that I will give to the man of God, to tell us which way we should go." ⁹ (Formerly in Israel, when a man went to seek the knowledge of God's will, he said, "Come, let us go to the seer." For today's prophet was formerly called a seer.) ¹⁰ Then Saul said to his servant, "Well said. Come, let us go." So they went to the city where the man of God was.

¹¹ As they went up the hill to the city, they found young women coming out to draw water; Saul and his servant said to them, "Is the seer here?" ¹² They answered, and said, "He is; see, he is just ahead of you. Hurry up, for he is coming to the city today, because the people are sacrificing today at the high place." ¹³ As soon as you enter the city you will find him, before he goes up to the high place to eat. The people will not eat until he comes, because he will bless the sacrifice; afterwards those who are invited will eat. Now go up, for you will find him immediately." ¹⁴ So they went up to the city. As they were entering the city, they saw Samuel coming out toward them, to go up to the high place.

¹⁵ Now the day before Saul came, Yahweh had revealed to Samuel: ¹⁶ "Tomorrow about this time I will send you a man from the land of Benjamin, and you will anoint him to be prince over my people Israel. He will save my people from the hand of the Philistines. For I have looked on my people with pity because their cry for help has come to me." ¹⁷ When Samuel saw Saul, Yahweh told him, "Here is the man I told you about! He is the one who will rule over my people." ¹⁸ Then Saul came close to Samuel in the gate and said, "Tell me where is the house of the seer?" ¹⁹ Samuel answered Saul and said, "I am the seer. Go up before me to the high place, for today you will eat with me. In the morning I will let you go, and I will tell you everything that is on your mind." ²⁰ As for your donkeys that were lost three days ago, do not worry about them, for they have been found. Then on whom are all the desires of Israel set? Is it not on you and all your father's house?" ²¹ Saul answered and said, "Am I not a Benjamite, from the smallest of the tribes of Israel? Is not my clan the least of all the clans of the tribe of Benjamin? Why then have you spoken to me in this manner?"

²² So Samuel took Saul and his servant, brought them into the hall, and seated them at the head place of those who had been invited, who were about thirty people. ²³ Samuel said to the cook, "Bring the portion which I gave to you, of which I said to you, 'Put it aside.'" ²⁴ So the cook took up the thigh and what was on it and set it before Saul. Then Samuel said, "See what has been kept is set before you. Eat it, because it has been kept for you until the appointed time, from the time when I said, 'I have invited the people.'" So Saul ate with Samuel that day.

²⁵ When they had come down from the high place into the city, Samuel spoke with Saul on the rooftop. ²⁶ Then at the break of dawn, Samuel called to Saul on the rooftop and said, "Get up, so I can send you on your way." So Saul got up, and both he and Samuel went out into the street. ²⁷ As they were going to the outskirts of the city, Samuel said to Saul, "Tell the servant to go ahead of us"—and he went ahead—"but you must stay here awhile, that I may announce the message of God to you."

1 Samuel 9 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Samuel chooses Saul to be their king

When the donkeys of Saul's father strayed away, Saul went looking for them. When he could not find them, he asked Samuel to ask God where they were. Samuel said the donkeys had been found. He invited Saul as the guest of honor to a feast and gave him a place to sleep for the night.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical questions

Saul uses two rhetorical questions to convince Samuel he is not important: "Am not I a Benjamite, from the smallest of the tribes of Israel? Is not my clan the least of all the clans of the tribe of Benjamin?"

1 Samuel 9:1

General Information:

If your language has a way of telling the reader that the writer is giving background information in these verses, you could use it here.

a man of great wealth

Possible other meanings are 1) he was a nobleman or 3) he was a mighty and brave man.

Kish ... Abiel ... Zeror ... Bekorath ... Aphiah

These are names of the men of Saul's family line.

Benjamite

A Benjamite is someone who belongs to the tribe of Benjamin.

1 Samuel 9:2

handsome

someone who looks good

From his shoulders upward he was taller than any of the people

The other tall people in Israel did not even come up to his shoulders.

1 Samuel 9:3

Now

The writer has ended the background information that began in (1 Samuel 9:1) and starts a new main part of the story.

arise and go

"stop what you are doing and go"

1 Samuel 9:4

the hill country of Ephraim ... the land of Shalisha ... the land of Shaalim ... the land of the Benjamites

These are all areas in Israel.

did not find them ... they were not there ... did not find them

The words "them" and "they" all refer to the donkeys.

1 Samuel 9:5

land of Zuph

This is an area in Israel just north of Jerusalem.

1 Samuel 9:6

See now, there

The phrase "See now" indicates that what follows is a polite request for the hearer to pay attention. "Please listen carefully: there"

man of God

This phrase usually means a prophet of Yahweh. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 2:27. Alternate translation: "a man who hears and tells words from God"

which way we should go on our journey

"which way we should go to find the donkeys"

1 Samuel 9:7

what can we bring the man?

Giving a gift is a sign of respect for the man of God.

man of God

This phrase usually means a prophet of Yahweh. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 2:27. Alternate translation: "a man who hears and tells words from God"

1 Samuel 9:8

one-fourth of a shekel

"1/4 of a shekel." A shekel is a type of money used in the Old Testament.

1 Samuel 9:9

Formerly in Israel ... seer

This is cultural information added by the Hebrew author. If it is not natural in your language to state this information here, it can be moved to the end of verse 11.

For today's prophet was formerly called a seer

"Seer is the old name for what we call a prophet today"

1 Samuel 9:10

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 9:11

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 9:12

the people are sacrificing today

These are likely the feast or first-fruit sacrifices, not the sin sacrifices, which must be held at the tabernacle.

1 Samuel 9:13

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 9:14

to go up to the high place

This is a place that the people had designated as holy to make sacrifices and offerings to Yahweh. The writer writes as though it were outside the wall that was around the city.

1 Samuel 9:15

General Information:

The writer stops telling the story and gives background information so the reader can understand what happens next.

1 Samuel 9:16

you will anoint him to be prince

The term prince is used here instead of king. This is the man whom God has chosen to be king of Israel.

the land of Benjamin

"the land where people from the tribe of Benjamin live"

from the hand of the Philistines

Here the word "hand" is a metonym for control. Alternate translation: "from the control of the

Philistines" or "so the Philistines will no longer control them"

For I have looked on my people with pity

"My people are suffering and I want to help them"

1 Samuel 9:17

Yahweh told him

"Yahweh told Samuel"

1 Samuel 9:18

the seer

"the prophet of Yahweh"

1 Samuel 9:19

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 9:20

Then on whom are all the desires of Israel set? Is it not on you and all your father's house?

These questions are an expression of deep conviction that Saul is the one whom Yahweh wants to be the king that the Israelites are looking for. The questions can be translated as statements. Alternate translation: "You should know that it is on you that all the desires of Israel are set. They are set on you and your father's family."

1 Samuel 9:21

Am I not a Benjaminite ... of Israel? Is not my clan ... Benjamin? Why then have you spoken to me in this manner?

Saul is expressing surprise because Benjamin was the smallest tribe in Israel, and other Israelites considered the tribe unimportant. Also, Benjamites considered the clan of which Saul was a member as unimportant. These questions can be translated as statements. Alternate translation: "I am from the tribe of Benjamin, the least important of all tribes. And my clan is the least important clan in our tribe. I do not understand why you are saying that the Israelite people want me and my family to do something important."

1 Samuel 9:22

the hall

The writer assumes that the reader knows that near the place where they would offer sacrifices there was a large building in which people would eat together.

head place

This is the seat of honor.

thirty people

"30 people"

1 Samuel 9:23

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 9:24

what was on it

Possible meanings are 1) the other food that Saul was to eat along with the meat or 2) other parts of the bull.

Then Samuel said

In the original language it is not clear who is speaking. It is possible that the cook is speaking to Saul. Alternate translation: "Then the cook said"

1 Samuel 9:25

on the rooftop

This is a normal place for family and guests to eat, visit, and sleep. It tends to be cooler in the evening and at night than the inside of the house.

1 Samuel 9:26

Samuel called to Saul on the rooftop and said

What Saul was doing on the rooftop can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "while Saul was sleeping on the rooftop, Samuel called to him and said"

1 Samuel 9:27

ahead of us"—and he went ahead—"but you must stay

It is possible that Samuel speaks all of these words. Alternate translation: "ahead of us, and when he has gone ahead, you must stay"

that I may announce the message of God to you

"so that I can tell you God's message for you"

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 9:1

What were the outstanding physical features of Saul, the son of Kish?

Saul was a handsome young man who was taller from his shoulders upward than any of the other people.

1 Samuel 9:2

What were the outstanding physical features of Saul, the son of Kish?

Saul was a handsome young man who was taller from his shoulders upward than any of the other people.

1 Samuel 9:3

What was the outcome when Kish asked his son Saul to go and look for their lost donkeys?

Saul took one of the servants and passed through many places without finding the lost donkeys.

1 Samuel 9:4

What was the outcome when Kish asked his son Saul to go and look for their lost donkeys?

Saul took one of the servants and passed through many places without finding the lost donkeys.

1 Samuel 9:5

What did Saul tell his servant the should do when they came to the land of Zuph?

Saul told his servant that they should go back or his father would worry more about them than the donkeys.

1 Samuel 9:6

What different idea did the servant present to Saul?

The servant told Saul that they should seek after a man of God in the city who might be able to tell them where they should go on their journey.

1 Samuel 9:7

What did the servant have in his possession to give to the man of God so he would tell them which way to go?

The servant had with him a fourth of a shekel of silver to give to the man of God.

1 Samuel 9:8

What did the servant have in his possession to give to the man of God so he would tell them which way to go?

The servant had with him a fourth of a shekel of silver to give to the man of God.

1 Samuel 9:9

What did Saul and his servant inquire of the young women who were coming out to draw water?
Saul and his servant asked if the seer was in the city so they could seek the knowledge of God's will.

1 Samuel 9:10

What did Saul and his servant inquire of the young women who were coming out to draw water?
Saul and his servant asked if the seer was in the city so they could seek the knowledge of God's will.

1 Samuel 9:11

What did Saul and his servant inquire of the young women who were coming out to draw water?
Saul and his servant asked if the seer was in the city so they could seek the knowledge of God's will.

1 Samuel 9:12

Why was the seer coming to the city on that day?
The seer was coming to the city on that day because the people were sacrificing at the high place and the seer would bless the sacrifice.

1 Samuel 9:13

Why was the seer coming to the city on that day?
The seer was coming to the city on that day because the people were sacrificing at the high place and the seer would bless the sacrifice.

1 Samuel 9:15

What did Yahweh reveal to Samuel about Saul's role in Israel?
Yahweh told Samuel that he would be anointed prince over Israel and he would save Yahweh's people from the hand of the Philistines.

1 Samuel 9:16

What did Yahweh reveal to Samuel about Saul's role in Israel?
Yahweh told Samuel that he would be anointed prince over Israel and he would save Yahweh's people from the hand of the Philistines.

1 Samuel 9:17

What invitation did Samuel give to Saul after he revealed that he was the seer Saul was seeking?
Samuel invited Saul to go up and eat with him at the high place.

1 Samuel 9:18

What invitation did Samuel give to Saul after he revealed that he was the seer Saul was seeking?
Samuel invited Saul to go up and eat with him at the high place.

1 Samuel 9:19

What invitation did Samuel give to Saul after he revealed that he was the seer Saul was seeking?
Samuel invited Saul to go up and eat with him at the high place.

1 Samuel 9:20

How did Samuel surprise Saul by what he told him?
Even though Saul was from a clan which was the least of the tribe of Benjamin, all the desires of Israel were on him and his father's house.

1 Samuel 9:21

How did Samuel surprise Saul by what he told him?
Even though Saul was from a clan which was the least of the tribe of Benjamin, all the desires of Israel were on him and his father's house.

1 Samuel 9:23

What did Samuel tell Saul about the thigh that had been raised in sacrifice?
He told Saul that it had been kept until the appointed time for him.

1 Samuel 9:24

What did Samuel tell Saul about the thigh that had been raised in sacrifice?
He told Saul that it had been kept until the appointed time for him.

1 Samuel 9:25

What did Samuel say to Saul after they had come down from the high place into the city?
Samuel told Saul to get up so he could send him on his way.

1 Samuel 9:26

What did Samuel say to Saul after they had come down from the high place into the city?
Samuel told Saul to get up so he could send him on his way.

1 Samuel 9:27

Why did Samuel tell Saul he must stay on the outskirts of the city for awhile?
Samuel told Saul to stay so Samuel could announce the message of God to him.

Chapter 10

¹ Then Samuel took a flask of oil, poured it on Saul's head, and kissed him. He said, "Has not Yahweh anointed you to be a ruler over his inheritance?" ² When you leave me today, you will find two men near Rachel's tomb, in the territory of Benjamin at Zelzah. They will say to you, "The donkeys that you were looking for have been found. Now your father has stopped caring about the donkeys and is anxious about you, saying, "What should I do about my son?"'" ³ Then you will go on further from there, and you will come to the oak of Tabor. Three men going to God at Bethel will meet you there, one carrying three young goats, another carrying three loaves of bread, and another carrying a skin of wine. ⁴ They will greet you and give you two loaves of bread, which you will take from their hands. ⁵ After that, you will come to the hill of God, where the garrison of the Philistines is. When you arrive at the city, you will meet a group of prophets coming down from the high place with a lute, a tambourine, a flute, and a harp before them; they will be prophesying. ⁶ The Spirit of Yahweh will rush upon you, and you will prophesy with them, and you will be changed into a different man. ⁷ Now, when these signs come to you, do whatever your hand finds to do, for God is with you. ⁸ Go down before me to Gilgal. Then I will come down to you to offer burnt offerings and to sacrifice peace offerings. Wait seven days until I come to you and show you what you must do."

⁹ When Saul turned his back to leave Samuel, God gave him another heart. Then all these signs came to pass that day. ¹⁰ When they came to the hill, a group of prophets met him, and the Spirit of God rushed upon him so that he prophesied with them. ¹¹ When everyone who knew him before saw him prophesying with the prophets, the people said to each other, "What has happened to the son of Kish? Is Saul one of the prophets now?" ¹² A man who was from that same place answered, "Then who is their father?" Because of this, it became a saying, "Is Saul also one of the prophets?" ¹³ When he finished prophesying, he came to the high place.

¹⁴ Then Saul's uncle said to him and his servant, "Where did you go?" He replied, "To search for the donkeys. When we saw that we could not find them, we went to Samuel." ¹⁵ Saul's uncle said, "Please tell me what Samuel said to you." ¹⁶ Saul replied to his uncle, "He told us plainly that the donkeys had been found." But he did not tell him about the matter of the kingdom, of which Samuel had spoken.

¹⁷ Now Samuel called the people together before Yahweh at Mizpah. ¹⁸ He said to the people of Israel, "This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel says: 'I brought up Israel out of Egypt, and I rescued you from the hand of the Egyptians, and from the hand of all the kingdoms that oppressed you.' ¹⁹ But today you have rejected your God, who saves you from all of your calamities and your distresses; and you have said to him, 'Set a king over us.' Now present yourselves before Yahweh by your tribes and by your clans." ²⁰ So Samuel brought all the tribes of Israel near, and the tribe of Benjamin was chosen. ²¹ Then he brought the tribe of Benjamin near by their clans; and the clan of the Matrites was chosen; and Saul son of Kish was chosen. But when they went looking for him, he could not be found. ²² Then the people wanted to ask God more questions, "Is there still another man to come?" Yahweh answered, "He has hidden himself among the baggage." ²³ Then they ran and retrieved Saul from there. When he stood among the people, he was taller than any of the people from his shoulders upward. ²⁴ Then Samuel said to the people, "Do you see the man whom Yahweh has chosen? There is no one like him among all the people!" All the people shouted, "Long live the king!"

²⁵ Then Samuel told the people the customs and rules of kingship, wrote them down in a book, and placed it before Yahweh. Samuel then sent all the people away, each man to his own house. ²⁶ Saul also went to his home at Gibeah, and with him went some strong men, whose hearts God had touched. ²⁷ But some worthless men said, "How can this man save us?" These people despised Saul and did not bring him any gifts. But Saul kept silent. ^[1]

Footnotes

10:27 ^[1] Some modern translations add to this verse the following paragraph:

1 Samuel 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the first chapter about King Saul.

Special concepts in this chapter

Saul as the New King

Samuel told Saul that God had chosen him to be king, and on the way home he would meet some prophets. Saul would then begin prophesying and God would give him the Holy Spirit to help him to know what to do. Samuel told everyone to come to Mizpah where he announced that God had chosen Saul to be their king. (See: prophet and holyspirit)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical questions

This chapter uses rhetorical questions to express different ideas: to state a fact

Idioms

Samuel frequently uses idioms when prophesying: "going to God" means "going to worship God"; "take it from their hands" means "accept their gift"; "rush upon you" means "control you"; "hand finds to do" means "what you think you should do"; "God is with you" means "God is directing you"; "another heart" means "a different way of thinking"; "came to pass" means "happened"; "before Yahweh" means "to do work for Yahweh"; and "hearts God had touched" means "God had made them want to help Saul."

1 Samuel 10:1

took a flask of oil, poured it on Saul's head

In Israelite culture, when a prophet poured oil on someone's head, that person received a blessing from Yahweh.

flask

a small container made from baked clay

Has not Yahweh anointed you to be a ruler over his inheritance?

Samuel knows the answer to his question. He is reminding Saul that Yahweh has chosen him to be king of Israel. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has certainly anointed you to be a ruler over his inheritance."

1 Samuel 10:2

Zelzah

This is the name of a place.

What should I do about my son?

Saul's father is now concerned about Saul and wants to find him.

1 Samuel 10:3

Tabor

This is the name of a place.

1 Samuel 10:4

take from their hands

The hands are a synecdoche for the person. "take from them" or "accept"

1 Samuel 10:5

tambourine

This is a musical instrument with a head like a drum that can be hit and with pieces of metal around the side that sound when the instrument is shaken.

1 Samuel 10:6

The Spirit of Yahweh will rush upon you

The phrase "rush upon" means that Yahweh's Spirit will influence Saul. In this case it means it means he will make Saul prophesy and act like a different person.

1 Samuel 10:7

do whatever your hand finds to do

Here Samuel speaks of Saul's hand as if it were a person trying to find things. Alternate translation: "do whatever you think is right to do"

1 Samuel 10:8

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 10:9

God gave him another heart

God enabled Samuel to think differently from the way he had thought before.

1 Samuel 10:10

the Spirit of God rushed upon him

Samuel speaks as if the Spirit of Yahweh were a person running up to Saul and taking complete control of him. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 10:6]

1 Samuel 10:11

What has happened to the son of Kish?

Possible meanings are 1) the people are asking for information or 2) this is a rhetorical question that means Saul is not important. Alternate translation: "Kish is not an important person, so it cannot be true that his son has become a prophet!"

the son of Kish

"Saul, the son of Kish"

1 Samuel 10:12

Then who is their father?

This man uses a rhetorical question to remind people that being a prophet has nothing to do with who one's parents are. The question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "It does not matter who the parents of these other prophets are. What matters is that, amazingly, Saul is speaking messages from God."

Because of this, it became a saying, "Is Saul also one of the prophets?"

This became a proverb among the Israelites. Apparently people said this to express surprise when a person unexpectedly did something that he had not done before. The implied meaning of the question can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "And that is why, when people cannot believe some report, they think about what happened to Saul and say, 'Is Saul really one of the prophets?'"

1 Samuel 10:13

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 10:14

Then Saul's uncle said to him

"Then the brother of Saul's father said to Saul"

1 Samuel 10:15

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 10:16

he did not tell him about the matter of the kingdom

"Saul did not tell his uncle that God had appointed him to be the king of Israel"

1 Samuel 10:17

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 10:18

I brought up Israel out of Egypt

The name "Israel" is a metonym for the people of Israel. "I brought the people of Israel out of Egypt"

the hand of the Egyptians ... the hand of all the kingdoms

The word "hand" is a metonym for power. Alternate translation: "the power of the Egyptians ... the power of all the kingdoms"

1 Samuel 10:19

today

Samuel is speaking of the time since Israel had begun to reject God, not only the time since the sun had last set.

Set a king over us

"Give us a king to rule us"

present yourselves before Yahweh by your tribes and by your clans

"gather together by tribes and clans and come to stand before Yahweh"

1 Samuel 10:20

the tribe of Benjamin was chosen

This can be translated in active form. It is probably best not to say how the people knew whom Yahweh had chosen. Alternate translation: "Yahweh chose the tribe of Benjamin"

1 Samuel 10:21

the clan of the Matrites was chosen ... Saul son of Kish was chosen

This can be translated in active form. It is probably best not to say how the people knew whom Yahweh had chosen. Alternate translation: "Yahweh chose the clan of the Matrites ... Yahweh chose Saul son of Kish"

1 Samuel 10:22

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 10:23

he was taller than any of the people from his shoulders upward

The other tall people in Israel did not even come up to his shoulders. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 9:2.

1 Samuel 10:24

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 10:25

the customs and rules of kingship

The abstract noun "kingship" can be translated with a noun clause. Alternate translation: "the customs and rules that a king would be required to follow"

1 Samuel 10:26

whose hearts God had touched

God touching a person's heart is an idiom that means God put something in their mind or moved them to do something. Alternate translation: "who wanted to go with Saul because God had changed their thinking"

1 Samuel 10:27

How can this man save us?

This is a rhetorical question that is used to express sarcasm. Alternate translation: "This man has no power to save us!"

despised

strongly disliked or hated

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 10:1

Why did Samuel pour a flask of oil on Saul's head and kiss him?

He poured oil on Saul's head because Yahweh had anointed him to be a ruler over his inheritance.

1 Samuel 10:2

What future event did Samuel share with Saul?

Samuel told Saul that he would find two men near Rachel's tomb who would tell him that the donkeys had been found.

1 Samuel 10:3

What did Samuel tell Saul would happen when he would come to the oak of Tabor?

Three men would meet him carrying three young goats, three loaves of bread, and a skin of wine and they would give him two loaves of bread, which he should take.

1 Samuel 10:4

What did Samuel tell Saul would happen when he would come to the oak of Tabor?

Three men would meet him carrying three young goats, three loaves of bread, and a skin of wine and they would give him two loaves of bread, which he should take.

1 Samuel 10:5

What did Samuel tell Saul would happen when he came to the garrison of the Philistines?

The spirit of Yahweh would rush upon him so that he would be changed into a different man and he would prophesy with a group of prophets from the city.

1 Samuel 10:6

What did Samuel tell Saul would happen when he came to the garrison of the Philistines?

The spirit of Yahweh would rush upon him so that he would be changed into a different man and he would prophesy with a group of prophets from the city.

1 Samuel 10:7

What instructions did Samuel give to Saul?

Samuel told Saul to go down to Gilgal and Samuel would come to sacrifice burnt offerings and peace offerings.

1 Samuel 10:8

What instructions did Samuel give to Saul?

Samuel told Saul to go down to Gilgal and Samuel would come to sacrifice burnt offerings and peace offerings.

1 Samuel 10:9

What happened when Saul turned his back to leave Samuel?

When Saul turned to leave, God gave him another heart.

1 Samuel 10:11

Why did people wonder if Saul was one of the prophets?

The people wondered if he was now one of the prophets because they saw him prophesying with one of the prophets.

1 Samuel 10:12

Why did people wonder if Saul was one of the prophets?

The people wondered if he was now one of the prophets because they saw him prophesying with one of the prophets.

1 Samuel 10:13

Why did people wonder if Saul was one of the prophets?

The people wondered if he was now one of the prophets because they saw him prophesying with one of the prophets.

1 Samuel 10:14

What did Saul tell his uncle when he was asked where he had gone?

Saul told his uncle that when he and his servant could not find the donkeys, they went to see Samuel.

1 Samuel 10:15

What did Saul not tell his uncle about what Samuel said to him?

Samuel did not tell his uncle about the matter of the kingdom.

1 Samuel 10:16

What did Saul not tell his uncle about what Samuel said to him?

Samuel did not tell his uncle about the matter of the kingdom.

1 Samuel 10:17

Why did Yahweh say that Israel had rejected him?

Israel had rejected Yahweh because they had demanded that he set a king over them.

1 Samuel 10:18

Why did Yahweh say that Israel had rejected him?

Israel had rejected Yahweh because they had demanded that he set a king over them.

1 Samuel 10:19

Why did Yahweh say that Israel had rejected him?

Israel had rejected Yahweh because they had demanded that he set a king over them.

1 Samuel 10:20

What happened when Saul was chosen as the next king?

They looked for Saul, but he could not be found.

1 Samuel 10:21

What happened when Saul was chosen as the next king?

They looked for Saul, but he could not be found.

1 Samuel 10:22

Why couldn't they find Saul when he was chosen as the next king?

Saul had hidden himself among the baggage.

1 Samuel 10:24

How did Samuel feel about the man whom Yahweh had chosen?

Samuel said that there was no one like Saul among all the people.

1 Samuel 10:25

How were the customs and rules of kingship established and preserved?

Samuel told the people the customs and rules of kingship, wrote them down in a book, and placed it before Yahweh.

1 Samuel 10:27

How did some worthless men show their dislike for Saul?

Some worthless men despised Saul by not bringing him any gifts and questioning how he could save them.

Chapter 11

¹ Then Nahash the Ammonite went and besieged Jabesh Gilead. All the men of Jabesh said to Nahash, "Make a covenant with us, and we will serve you." ² Nahash the Ammonite replied, "On this condition will I make a treaty with you, that I gouge out all of your right eyes, and in this way bring disgrace on all Israel." ³ Then the elders of Jabesh replied to him, "Leave us alone for seven days, so that we may send messengers to all the territory of Israel. Then, if there is no one to save us, we will surrender to you." ⁴ The messengers came to Gibeah, where Saul lived, and told the people what had happened. All the people wept loudly. ⁵ Now Saul was following the oxen out of the field. Saul said, "What is wrong with the people that they are weeping?" They told Saul what the men of Jabesh had said.

⁶ When Saul heard what they said, the Spirit of God rushed upon him, and he was very angry. ⁷ He took a yoke of oxen, cut them into pieces, and sent them throughout all the territory of Israel with the messengers. He said, "Whoever does not come out after Saul and after Samuel, this is what will be done to his oxen." Then the terror of Yahweh fell on the people, and they came out together as one man. ⁸ When he mustered them at Bezek, the people of Israel were three hundred thousand, and the men of Judah thirty thousand. ⁹ They said to the messengers that came, "You will tell the men of Jabesh Gilead, 'Tomorrow, by the time the sun is hot, deliverance will be yours.'" So the messengers went and told the men of Jabesh, and they were glad. ¹⁰ Then the men of Jabesh said to Nahash, "Tomorrow we will surrender to you, and you can do to us whatever seems good to you." ¹¹ The next day Saul put the people in three groups. They came into the middle of the camp during the morning watch, and they attacked and defeated the Ammonites until the heat of the day. Those who survived were scattered, so that no two of them were left together.

¹² Then the people said to Samuel, "Who was it who said, 'Will Saul reign over us?' Bring the men, so we can put them to death." ¹³ But Saul said, "No one must be put to death this day, because today Yahweh has brought about deliverance in Israel."

¹⁴ Then Samuel said to the people, "Come, let us go to Gilgal and renew the kingship there." ¹⁵ So all the people went to Gilgal and made Saul king before Yahweh in Gilgal. There they sacrificed peace offerings before Yahweh, and Saul and all the men of Israel rejoiced greatly.

1 Samuel 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues the story of King Saul by telling of his first victory in war.

Special concepts in this chapter

Saul rescues the people of Jabesh Gilead

Nahash, king of the Ammonites, and his army surrounded the Israeli town of Jabesh Gilead. When the city's leaders asked for peace terms, Nahash demanded the right to poke out one eye of every man in order to show Israel their weakness. When Saul heard this, he called for all of Israel to help save this city. Many people came to help Saul's army. Israel was victorious and everyone wanted Saul as their king. At this time, Israel was not a truly unified country, even though it is often spoken of as one country.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idioms

The idioms in this chapter explain the effect God has on his people: "rushed upon him" means "empowered him"; "terror ... fell" means "they became afraid"; "as one man" means "they all agreed"; and "put to death" means "kill."

1 Samuel 11:1

Nahash

This is a man from Ammon, a descendent of Lot, Abraham's nephew.

Jabesh Gilead

This is the name of a place.

1 Samuel 11:2

I gouge out

"I cut out" or "I pluck out"

bring disgrace on

"bring shame on" or "bring a bad reputation to"

1 Samuel 11:3

seven days

"7 days"

1 Samuel 11:4

Gibeah

This is the name of a place.

1 Samuel 11:5

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 11:6

the Spirit of God rushed upon him

The phrase "rushed upon" means Yahweh's Spirit influenced Saul. In this case he enabled Saul to cause the people to fearfully respect him as their king and to join his army. See how you translated a similar phrase in 1 Samuel 10:6.

1 Samuel 11:7

does not come out after

Saul was calling all the men of Israel to come fight against Nahash and the Ammonites.

Then the terror of Yahweh fell on the people

Yahweh enabled people to fearfully respect Saul as their king. The result was that the men rallied together with Saul at Bezek.

1 Samuel 11:8

Bezek

This is the name of a town near Jabesh Gilead.

the people of Israel were three hundred thousand, and the men of Judah thirty thousand

"the people of Israel were 300,000, and the men of Judah were 30,000"

1 Samuel 11:9

They said to the messengers

"They" refers to Samuel and Saul.

by the time the sun is hot

"before the hottest part of the day" or "before noon"

Jabesh Gilead ... Jabesh

These are the names of places. See how you translated them in 1 Samuel 11:1.

1 Samuel 11:10

Nahash

This is the name of a king. See how you translated this name in 1 Samuel 11:1.

1 Samuel 11:11

the morning watch

This was before dawn when most people in the camp were still asleep.

1 Samuel 11:12

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 11:13

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 11:14

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 11:15

made Saul king before Yahweh

"made Saul king while Yahweh watched"

There they sacrificed peace offerings before Yahweh

Part of Samuel's service to Yahweh is to offer sacrifices even though he is not from the line of Aaron or Levi.

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 11:1

What was the response of Nahash the Ammonite to the request for a treaty from the men of Jabesh?
He said he would make a treaty with them if he could bring disgrace on all Israel by gouging out all their right eyes.

1 Samuel 11:2

What was the response of Nahash the Ammonite to the request for a treaty from the men of Jabesh?
He said he would make a treaty with them if he could bring disgrace on all Israel by gouging out all their right eyes.

1 Samuel 11:3

How did the elders of Jabesh respond to Nahash's proposal?
They asked to be left alone for seven days to see if there was anyone in all the territory of Israel who would save them.

1 Samuel 11:4

Why did Saul wonder what was wrong with the people in his town of Gibeah?
Saul heard them crying after they had heard what might happen to the town of Jabesh.

1 Samuel 11:5

Why did Saul wonder what was wrong with the people in his town of Gibeah?
Saul heard them crying after they had heard what might happen to the town of Jabesh.

1 Samuel 11:6

How did Saul respond to the threat against Jabesh?
He became very angry and rallied all the men of Israel to follow him and fight against the enemies of Jabesh.

1 Samuel 11:7

How did Saul respond to the threat against Jabesh?
He became very angry and rallied all the men of Israel to follow him and fight against the enemies of Jabesh.

1 Samuel 11:8

How did Saul respond to the threat against Jabesh?
He became very angry and rallied all the men of Israel to follow him and fight against the enemies of Jabesh.

1 Samuel 11:9

What did the messengers tell the men of Jabesh?
They told the men of Jabesh that they would be rescued on the next day by the time the sun was hot.

1 Samuel 11:10

What did the men of Jabesh say to deceive Nahash?
They told Nahash that they would surrender to him the next day and he could do to them whatever he wanted.

1 Samuel 11:11

What was the outcome of the battle between the people of Israel and Nahash the Ammonite?
The people of Israel attacked and defeated the Ammonites and those who survived were scattered.

1 Samuel 11:12

Why did Saul say that none of his opposition would be put to death?
Saul said no one would be put to death because Yahweh had rescued Israel.

1 Samuel 11:13

Why did Saul say that none of his opposition would be put to death?
Saul said no one would be put to death because Yahweh had rescued Israel.

1 Samuel 11:14

Why did Samuel, Saul and all the people of Israel go to Gilgal?
They went to Gilgal to sacrifice peace offerings and to renew the monarchy by making Saul king before Yahweh.

1 Samuel 11:15

Why did Samuel, Saul and all the people of Israel go to Gilgal?
They went to Gilgal to sacrifice peace offerings and to renew the monarchy by making Saul king before Yahweh.

Chapter 12

¹ Samuel said to all Israel, "I have listened to everything you said to me, and I have set a king to reign over you. ² Now, here is the king walking before you; and I am old and gray; and, my sons are with you. I have walked before you from my youth until today. ³ Here I am; testify against me before Yahweh and before his anointed one. Whose ox have I taken? Whose donkey have I taken? Whom have I defrauded? Whom have I oppressed? From whose hand have I taken a bribe to blind my eyes with? Testify against me, and I will restore it to you." ⁴ They said, "You have not defrauded us, oppressed us, or stolen anything from any man's hand." ⁵ He said to them, "Yahweh is witness against you, and his anointed one is witness today, that you have found nothing in my hand." They replied, "Yahweh is witness."

⁶ Samuel said to the people, "It is Yahweh who appointed Moses and Aaron, and who brought your fathers up from the land of Egypt. ⁷ Now then, present yourself, so that I may plead with you before Yahweh about all of the righteous deeds of Yahweh, which he did for you and your fathers. ⁸ When Jacob came to Egypt, and your ancestors cried out to Yahweh, then Yahweh sent Moses and Aaron, who led your ancestors out of Egypt and they settled in this place. ⁹ But they forgot Yahweh their God; he sold them into the hand of Sisera, captain of the armies of Hazor, into the hand of the Philistines, and into the hand of the king of Moab; these all fought against your ancestors. ¹⁰ They cried out to Yahweh and said, 'We have sinned, because we have abandoned Yahweh and have served the Baals and the Ashtoreths. But now rescue us from the hand of our enemies, and we will serve you.' ¹¹ So Yahweh sent Jerub-Baal, Bedan, Jephthah, and Samuel, and gave you victory over your enemies all around you, so that you lived in security. ¹² When you saw that Nahash the king of the people of Ammon came against you, you said to me, 'No, a king must rule over us'—even though Yahweh your God was your king. ¹³ Now here is the king whom you have chosen, whom you have asked for and whom Yahweh has now appointed as king over you. ¹⁴ If you fear Yahweh, serve him, obey his voice, and not rebel against the command of Yahweh, then both you and the king who reigns over you will be followers of Yahweh your God. ¹⁵ If you do not obey the voice of Yahweh, but rebel against the commands of Yahweh, then Yahweh's hand will be against you, as it was against your ancestors. ¹⁶ Even now present yourself and see this great thing which Yahweh will do before your eyes. ¹⁷ Is it not the wheat harvest today? I will call upon Yahweh, that he may send thunder and rain. Then you will know and see that your wickedness is great, which you have done in the sight of Yahweh, in asking for yourselves a king." ¹⁸ So Samuel called to Yahweh; and that same day Yahweh sent thunder and rain. Then all the people greatly feared Yahweh and Samuel.

¹⁹ Then all the people said to Samuel, "Pray for your servants to Yahweh your God, so that we do not die. For we have added to all our sins this evil in asking for a king for ourselves." ²⁰ Samuel replied, "Do not be afraid. You have done all this evil, but do not turn away from Yahweh, but serve Yahweh with all your heart. ²¹ Do not turn away after empty things that cannot profit or rescue you, because they are useless. ²² For the sake of his great name, Yahweh will not reject his people, because it has pleased Yahweh to make you a people for himself. ²³ As for me, far be it from me that I should sin against Yahweh by ceasing to pray for you. I will teach you the way that is good and right. ²⁴ Only fear Yahweh and serve him in truth with all your heart. Consider the great things he has done for you. ²⁵ But if you persist in doing evil, both you and your king will be destroyed."

1 Samuel 12 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Samuel's farewell address

This chapter serves as a type of farewell address. This is a way for leaders to give instructions to their followers before they leave or die. Samuel first established his holiness before calling on the people to repent of their desire to have a king. (See: holy and repent)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

It is common in Scripture to use Israel's history to show how faithful God has been. This gives the readers evidence to trust in Yahweh in their current situation. (See: faithful and trust)

1 Samuel 12:1

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 12:2

the king walking before you ... I have walked before you
These expressions mean that people can actually see the kind of lives Saul and Samuel are living.
Alternate translation: "the king's life was seen ... My life was seen"

1 Samuel 12:3

Here I am; testify against me before Yahweh and before his anointed one

By this statement, Samuel is challenging the people to speak up if he has done anything wrong to anyone. Alternate translation: "I stand in front of you now. I ask you to speak in front of Yahweh and his anointed king if I have done you any wrong"

Whose ox have I taken? Whose donkey have I taken?

Samuel uses rhetorical questions to remind the people that he has never stolen their animals.
Alternate translation: "I have never stolen a prized animal from anyone."

Whom have I defrauded?

Samuel uses another rhetorical question to say he has always been honest. Alternate translation: "I have never cheated or bribed any man."

Testify against me, and I will restore it to you

"If I have done any of these evil things, speak now, and I will pay back what I owe. I will make right any wrong"

1 Samuel 12:4

from any man's hand

This phrase means what a person possesses or what they have done to obtain favor from others. This is a polite way of saying he has not stolen, nor has he given or taken bribes.

1 Samuel 12:5

in my hand

This phrase means what a person possesses or what they have done to obtain favor from others. This is a polite way of saying he has not stolen, nor has he given or taken bribes.

1 Samuel 12:6

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 12:7

all of the righteous deeds of Yahweh

Samuel is calling their attention to the history of Yahweh's dealing with Israel, which has been filled with goodness and purpose.

1 Samuel 12:8

Jacob ... Moses ... Aaron

These are names of men.

1 Samuel 12:9

into the hand of Sisera ... Philistines ... king of Moab

"into the power of Sisera ... Philistines ... king of Moab"

Sisera

This is the name of a man.

Hazor

This is the name of a place.

he sold them

This is an expression for God giving them over to their enemies to be their slaves.

1 Samuel 12:10

They cried out to Yahweh

"They" refers to the nation of Israel.

have served the Baals and the Ashtoreths

Serving here is referring to acting worshipful towards the false gods. Alternate translation: "have worshiped false gods and goddesses"

the hand of our enemies

This statement is using "hand" to refer to power. Alternate translation: "the power or control of our enemies"

1 Samuel 12:11

Jerub-Baal

This is sometimes translated in other versions, as Jerubbaal. This is a name of godly honor and strength to fight the false god.

Yahweh sent ... and gave you victory

Samuel is telling the story of what God did after the people's confession of sin and plea for help.

Jerub-Baal, Bedan, Jephthah, and Samuel

These are the names of some judges that God raised up. Samuel included himself in this list.

1 Samuel 12:12

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 12:13

whom you have chosen, whom you have asked for

These two phrases have similar meanings and emphasize that this is the king whom the people wanted.

1 Samuel 12:14

fear ... serve ... obey ... not rebel

These similar words are used to emphasize how important this is.

1 Samuel 12:15

Yahweh's hand will be against you, as it was against your ancestors

This speaks of Yahweh punishing the people as his "hand" being against them. The word "hand" here represents Yahweh's power and control. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will punish you, just as he punished your ancestors"

1 Samuel 12:16

before your eyes

The word "eyes" here represents the people of the nation of Israel. Alternate translation: "out in the open where all of the nation of Israel may see"

1 Samuel 12:17

Is it not the wheat harvest today?

Samuel knows it is harvest time. He is using a rhetorical question to emphasize that it does not usually rain at this time so the people will know that the rain that will ruin their harvest is a judgment from Yahweh. Alternate translation: "It is harvest time and does not usually rain at this time"

he may send thunder and rain

Samuel is asking Yahweh to punish Israel for asking for a king by sending a rainstorm during the harvest which will ruin the grain.

1 Samuel 12:18

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 12:19

so that we do not die

The ultimate punishment for sin is death. The nation of Israel had seen Yahweh destroy the nations that had oppressed them. They were concerned that they had become "dedicated for destruction" like those nations.

1 Samuel 12:20

Do not be afraid

The people did evil and were afraid of God destroying them. Alternate translation: "Do not be afraid that God will be angry and destroy you because of this sin"

1 Samuel 12:21

turn away after empty things

"pursue worship of false gods"

1 Samuel 12:22

For the sake of his great name

Here "name" refers to the reputation of Yahweh. Alternate translation: "So that people will continue to honor and respect Yahweh"

1 Samuel 12:23

far be it from me that I should sin against Yahweh by ceasing to pray for you

The people are filled with fear because of the rain and thunder that Yahweh sent when Samuel prayed. Some people may believe Samuel would use his prayers to harm them.

1 Samuel 12:24

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 12:25

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 12:4

Had Samuel every done anything evil against the people of Israel?
The people of Israel told Samuel he had not cheated or oppressed them or stolen anything from them.

1 Samuel 12:5

Had Samuel every done anything evil against the people of Israel?
The people of Israel told Samuel he had not cheated or oppressed them or stolen anything from them.

1 Samuel 12:6

Why did Samuel tell the people of Israel to present themselves before Yahweh?
He told the people of Israel to present themselves so he could remind them of all the righteous deeds of Yahweh in the past.

1 Samuel 12:7

Why did Samuel tell the people of Israel to present themselves before Yahweh?
He told the people of Israel to present themselves so he could remind them of all the righteous deeds of Yahweh in the past.

1 Samuel 12:8

What did God do to the ancestors of the people of Israel after they forgot Yahweh their God after Moses and Aaron brought them up out of Egypt?
Yahweh sold them into the hand of Sisera, into the hand of the Philistines and into the hand of the king of Moab.

1 Samuel 12:9

What did God do to the ancestors of the people of Israel after they forgot Yahweh their God after Moses and Aaron brought them up out of Egypt?
Yahweh sold them into the hand of Sisera, into the hand of the Philistines and into the hand of the king of Moab.

1 Samuel 12:10

What did Yahweh do after Israel's ancestors cried out to Yahweh and asked him to rescue them from the hand of their enemies?
Yahweh sent Jerub Baal, Bedan, Jephthah, and Samuel to rescue them from their enemies.

1 Samuel 12:11

What did Yahweh do after Israel's ancestors cried out to Yahweh and asked him to rescue them from the hand of their enemies?
Yahweh sent Jerub Baal, Bedan, Jephthah, and Samuel to rescue them from their enemies.

1 Samuel 12:12

What truth did Samuel want the people of Israel to remember?
Samuel reminded the people of Israel that they had wanted a king to reign over them.

1 Samuel 12:13

What truth did Samuel want the people of Israel to remember?
Samuel reminded the people of Israel that they had wanted a king to reign over them.

1 Samuel 12:14

What choice did Samuel bring before the people of Israel?
They could obey the command of Yahweh and be followers of Yahweh, or they could rebel against Yahweh's commands and experience his hand against them.

1 Samuel 12:15

What choice did Samuel bring before the people of Israel?
They could obey the command of Yahweh and be followers of Yahweh, or they could rebel against Yahweh's commands and experience his hand against them.

1 Samuel 12:16

What challenge did Samuel lay before the people of Israel?
Samuel challenged the people to present themselves before Yahweh and see the great thing he would do before their eyes.

1 Samuel 12:17

What did Samuel ask Yahweh to send so that the people of Israel would know the extent of their wickedness?
He asked Yahweh to send thunder and rain.

1 Samuel 12:18

What did Samuel ask Yahweh to send so that the people of Israel would know the extent of their wickedness?
He asked Yahweh to send thunder and rain.

1 Samuel 12:19

How did Samuel respond when the people of Israel realized the serious nature of their sin?

Samuel told the people to not be afraid, but to serve Yahweh with all their heart.

1 Samuel 12:20

How did Samuel respond when the people of Israel realized the serious nature of their sin?

Samuel told the people to not be afraid, but to serve Yahweh with all their heart.

1 Samuel 12:22

What message of comfort did Samuel give to the people of Israel?

Samuel comforted the people of Israel by telling them that Yahweh would not reject them.

1 Samuel 12:23

What did Samuel decide to do for Israel?

He decided teach the people the way that was good and right, and not to cease to pray for them.

1 Samuel 12:24

What challenge did Samuel give to the people of Israel?

Samuel told them to consider the great things Yahweh had done for them so they would fear him and serve him in truth with all their heart.

Chapter 13

¹ Saul was thirty years old when he began to reign; when he had reigned forty years over Israel, ² he chose three thousand men of Israel. Two thousand were with him in Mikdash and in the hill country of Bethel, while a thousand were with Jonathan in Gibeah of Benjamin. The rest of the soldiers he sent home, each man to his tent. ³ Jonathan defeated the garrison of the Philistines that was at Geba and the Philistines heard of it. Then Saul blew the ram's horn throughout all the land, saying, "Let the Hebrews hear." ⁴ All Israel heard that Saul had defeated the garrison of the Philistines, and also that Israel had become a rotten smell to the Philistines. Then the soldiers were summoned together to join Saul at Gilgal.

⁵ The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel, with three thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. They came up and encamped at Mikdash, east of Beth Aven. ⁶ When the men of Israel saw that they were in trouble—for the people were distressed, the people hid in caves, in the underbrush, in rocks, in wells, and in pits. ⁷ Some of the Hebrews went over the Jordan to the land of Gad and Gilead. But Saul was still at Gilgal, and all the people followed him trembling.

⁸ He waited seven days, the time Samuel had set. But Samuel did not come to Gilgal, and the people were scattering from Saul. ⁹ Saul said, "Bring me the burnt offering and the peace offerings." Then he offered the burnt offering. ¹⁰ As soon as he finished offering the burnt offering Samuel arrived. Saul went out to meet him and to greet him. ¹¹ Then Samuel said, "What have you done?" Saul replied, "When I saw that the people were leaving me, and that you did not come within the set time, and that the Philistines had assembled at Mikdash, ¹² I said, 'Now the Philistines will come down against me at Gilgal, and I have not sought the favor of Yahweh.' So I forced myself to offer the burnt offering." ¹³ Then Samuel said to Saul, "You have acted foolishly. You have not kept the command of Yahweh your God that he commanded you. For then Yahweh would have established your rule over Israel forever. ¹⁴ But now your rule will not continue. Yahweh has sought out a man after his own heart, and Yahweh has appointed him to be prince over his people, because you have not obeyed what he commanded you." ¹⁵ Then Samuel arose and went up from Gilgal to Gibeah of Benjamin.

Then Saul numbered the people who were present with him, about six hundred men. ¹⁶ Saul, his son Jonathan, and the people who were present with them, stayed in Geba of Benjamin. But the Philistines camped at Mikdash. ¹⁷ Raiders came from the camp of the Philistines in three groups. One group turned toward Ophrah, to the land of Shual. ¹⁸ Another group turned toward Beth Horon, and another group turned toward the border that overlooks the Valley of Zeboyim toward the wilderness.

¹⁹ No blacksmith could be found throughout all of Israel, because the Philistines said, "Otherwise the Hebrews would make swords or spears for themselves." ²⁰ But all the men of Israel used to go down to the Philistines, each to sharpen his plow points, his mattock, his ax, and his sickle. ²¹ The charge was two-thirds of a shekel for the plow points, and the mattocks, and one-third of a shekel for sharpening axes and for straightening the goads. ²² So on the day of battle, there were no swords or spears found in the hands of any of the soldiers who were with Saul and Jonathan; only Saul and his son Jonathan had them. ²³ The garrison of the Philistines went out to the pass of Mikdash.

1 Samuel 13 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is the beginning of a story about Jonathan's victory over the Philistines.

Special concepts in this chapter

Preparation for the battle

Saul sent most of his army home before Jonathan attacked and defeated a Philistine garrison. This attack made the Philistines very angry, and they brought a huge army into Israel and camped at the top of a hill. Most of Saul's army ran away in fear and hid from the Philistines. There are many aspects of this story that give the reader the impression that Israel was unprepared for battle.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Hyperbole

Wanting to express the vast number of enemy soldiers, the author uses a hyperbole: "as numerous as the sand on the seashore," meaning "too many to count."

1 Samuel 13:1

General Information:

Samuel has renewed Saul's kingdom at Gilgal and Samuel has reminded the people to follow the Lord.

Saul was thirty years old ... over Israel

The text of this verse in ancient copies is uncertain, so modern versions have many different translations. They are all attempts to represent the most probable meaning of the original text.

1 Samuel 13:2

chose three thousand men

"chose 3,000 men"

Two thousand were with him

"2,000 men were with him"

Mikmash

This is the name of a city.

Gibeah of Benjamin

Gibeah is a town. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 10:26.

The rest of the soldiers he sent home

"He sent the rest of the soldiers home"

1 Samuel 13:3

garrison of the Philistines

"military base of the Philistines" or "military camp of the Philistines"

Geba

This is the name of the town that the Philistine garrison was stationed in.

1 Samuel 13:4

All Israel heard that Saul had defeated

Possible meanings are that 1) Saul was taking responsibility for Jonathan's actions or 2) Saul was taking credit for Jonathan's actions.

Israel had become a rotten smell to the Philistines

The Philistines hating the Israelites is spoken of as if the Israelites had become a bad smell that offended the Philistines. Alternate translation: "the Philistines hated the Israelites"

the soldiers were summoned together to join Saul at Gilgal

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Saul called the soldiers together to join him at Gilgal"

1 Samuel 13:5

three thousand ... six thousand

"3,000 ... 6,000"

troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore

This is an exaggeration that means a group of soldiers so large that it was difficult to count them.

Mikmash

This is the name of a place.

Beth Aven

This is the name of a place.

1 Samuel 13:6

General Information:

The Philistines had gathered together to fight against Israel.

the people

This phrase refers to the nation of Israel.

the people were distressed

"the people worried greatly"

1 Samuel 13:7

followed him trembling

The people were greatly afraid.

1 Samuel 13:8

the time Samuel had set

"according to the time Samuel had told them he would come"

the people were scattering from Saul

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people had started to leave Saul"

1 Samuel 13:9

Then he offered the burnt offering

Only the line of Aaron was permitted to perform the burnt offering sacrifice to God.

1 Samuel 13:10

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 13:11

What have you done

Samuel was not really asking a question, but giving a rebuke to Saul. Saul sought to defend his actions even though they were wrong.

Mikmash

Michmash is the name of a place. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 13:2.

1 Samuel 13:12

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 13:13

the command of Yahweh your God that he commanded you

This may sound better in your language: "the command of Yahweh your God that he gave you."

You have not kept the command of Yahweh

Saul was to wait for Samuel to come and sacrifice the burnt offering to God. He was not to perform the sacrifice himself.

established your rule

"set up your rule" or "authorized your rule" or "appointed your rule"

1 Samuel 13:14

your rule will not continue

This is a litotes that can be stated in the positive form. Alternate translation: "your rule will end soon"

a man after his own heart

Here "heart" represents Yahweh's desire or will. The phrase "man after his own heart" is an idiom that means to be a person who does what Yahweh desires. Alternate translation: "a man who is the kind of person he wants" or "a man who will obey him"

1 Samuel 13:15

Samuel arose and went up

This is an idiom for "Samuel left and went up."

went up from Gilgal

Gilgal is a city. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 7:15.

Gibeah of Benjamin

Gibeah is a town. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 10:26.

six hundred men

"600 men"

1 Samuel 13:16

Geba of Benjamin

Geba is a town. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 13:3.

Philistines camped at Mikmash

Michmash is the name of a place. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 13:2.

1 Samuel 13:17

Raiders came

Raiders are normally military people who attack enemy villages for their food and other supplies.

Ophrah, to the land of Shual

These are the names of places.

1 Samuel 13:18

Beth Horon ... Valley of Zeboyim

These are the names of places.

1 Samuel 13:19

General Information:

The narrative shifts to background information regarding blacksmiths in Israel.

No blacksmith could be found

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "No one could find a blacksmith"

blacksmith

Here "blacksmith" refers to someone who made or sharpened metal tools and weapons.

1 Samuel 13:20

sharpen his plow points

The words "plow points" refer to the point of a metal tool used for digging up the ground for planting crops.

mattock ... ax ... sickle

These are common garden tools.

mattock

A "mattock" is a broad-bladed axe, with a horizontal blade that is used for breaking up hard soil.

sickle

a curved blade for cutting grasses and grain stalks

1 Samuel 13:21

two-thirds of a shekel

The shekel is divided into 3 parts, 2 of 3 parts are given. "2/3 of a shekel"

straightening the goads

"taking out the bend and making the ox goad straight again so it could be used"

1 Samuel 13:22

General Information:

The narrative continues.

there were no swords or spears

This explains in part why Saul's army was afraid. They did not have any weapons to fight.

1 Samuel 13:23

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 13:2

What did Saul do with the soldiers he did not choose to be with him?

Saul sent the rest of the soldiers home to their own tents.

1 Samuel 13:3

Why did Israel become a rotten smell to the Philistines?

They became a rotten smell because Saul had defeated the garrison of the Philistines.

1 Samuel 13:4

Why did Israel become a rotten smell to the Philistines?

They became a rotten smell because Saul had defeated the garrison of the Philistines.

1 Samuel 13:5

How did the Philistines respond to the the defeat by the people of Israel?

They gathered numerous chariots and men to fight against Israel.

1 Samuel 13:6

How did the people of Israel react to the forces of the Philistines?

They were distressed so they hid in caves, in the underbrush, in rocks, in wells, and in pits, and some fled over the Jordan.

1 Samuel 13:7

How did the people of Israel react to the forces of the Philistines?

They were distressed so they hid in caves, in the underbrush, in rocks, in wells, and in pits, and some fled over the Jordan.

1 Samuel 13:8

What did Saul do when Samuel failed to come to Gilgal in seven days?

Saul offered the burnt offering and the peace offerings himself.

1 Samuel 13:9

What did Saul do when Samuel failed to come to Gilgal in seven days?

Saul offered the burnt offering and the peace offerings himself.

1 Samuel 13:10

What did Saul do when Samuel failed to come to Gilgal in seven days?

Saul offered the burnt offering and the peace offerings himself.

1 Samuel 13:11

What excuse did Saul give Samuel for not waiting for him to offer the sacrifices?

He said he saw the people leaving, so he forced himself to offer the burnt offering to Yahweh.

1 Samuel 13:12

What excuse did Saul give Samuel for not waiting for him to offer the sacrifices?

He said he saw the people leaving, so he forced himself to offer the burnt offering to Yahweh.

1 Samuel 13:13

What did Samuel say to rebuke Saul?

Samuel said Saul had acted foolishly for not keeping the command that Yahweh gave him.

What did Samuel say would be the consequences for Saul's actions?

Because Saul did not obey Yahweh's command, his rule over Israel would not continue forever, but instead Yahweh had appointed a man after his own heart to be prince over his people.

1 Samuel 13:14

What did Samuel say would be the consequences for Saul's actions?

Because Saul did not obey Yahweh's command, his rule over Israel would not continue forever, but instead Yahweh had appointed a man after his own heart to be prince over his people.

1 Samuel 13:17

What strategy did the Philistines use against the people of Israel?

The Philistines sent raiders from their camp to three different areas in Israel.

1 Samuel 13:19

What limitations did the soldiers of Israel face in their fight against the Philistines?

The Philistines did not allow the Israelites to have any blacksmiths who could make swords or spears.

1 Samuel 13:22

How were the soldiers of Israel hindered in their fight against the Philistines?

The soldiers of Israel did not have any swords or spears in their hands.

Chapter 14

¹ One day, Jonathan son of Saul said to the young man who was his armor bearer, "Come, let us go over to the Philistines' garrison on the other side." But he did not tell his father. ² Saul was staying on the outskirts of Gibeah under the pomegranate tree that is in Migron. About six hundred men were with him, ³ including Ahijah son of Ahitub (Ichabod's brother) son of Phinehas son of Eli, the priest of Yahweh at Shiloh, who wore an ephod. The people did not know that Jonathan was gone. ⁴ On each side of the pass through which Jonathan wanted to go in order to get to the Philistines' garrison, there was a rocky cliff on one side and another rocky cliff on the other side. One rocky cliff was named Bozez and the other rocky cliff was named Seneh. ⁵ One rocky cliff stood on the north in front of Mikdash, and the other on the south in front of Geba.

⁶ Jonathan said to his young armor bearer, "Come, let us cross over to the garrison of these uncircumcised fellows. It may be that Yahweh will work on our behalf, for nothing can stop Yahweh from saving by many or by few people." ⁷ His armor bearer replied, "Do everything that is in your heart. Go ahead, see, I am with you, to obey all your commands." ⁸ Then Jonathan said, "We will cross over to the men, and we will show ourselves to them." ⁹ If they say to us, 'Wait there until we come over to you'—then we will stay in our place and will not cross over to them. ¹⁰ But if they reply, 'Come over to us,' then we will cross over; because Yahweh has given them into our hand. This will be the sign to us." ¹¹ So both of them revealed themselves to the garrison of the Philistines. The Philistines said, "Look, Hebrews are coming out of the holes where they have hidden themselves." ¹² Then the men of the garrison called to Jonathan and his armor bearer, and said, "Come up to us, and we will show you something." Jonathan said to his armor bearer, "Follow after me, because Yahweh has given them into the hand of Israel." ¹³ Jonathan climbed up on his hands and feet, and his armor bearer followed behind him. The Philistines were put to death before Jonathan, and his armor bearer put some to death behind him. ¹⁴ That first attack that Jonathan and his armor bearer made, killed about twenty men within an area of half an acre. ¹⁵ There was a panic in the camp, in the field, and among the people. Even the garrison and the raiders panicked. The earth quaked, and there was a great panic.

¹⁶ Then Saul's watchmen in Gibeah of Benjamin looked; the crowd of Philistine soldiers was dispersing, and they were going here and there. ¹⁷ Then Saul said to the people that were with him, "Count and see who is missing from us." When they had counted, Jonathan and his armor bearer were missing. ¹⁸ Saul said to Ahijah, "Bring the ark of God here," for at that time it was with the people of Israel. ¹⁹ While Saul was talking to the priest, the commotion in the camp of the Philistines was continuing and increasing. Then Saul said to the priest, "Withdraw your hand." ²⁰ Saul and all the people who were with him rallied and went into battle. Every Philistine's sword was against his fellow countrymen, and there was very great tumult. ²¹ Now those Hebrews who previously had been with the Philistines, and who had gone with them into the camp, even they joined with Israel who were with Saul and Jonathan. ²² When all the men of Israel who had hidden themselves in the hills near Ephraim heard that the Philistines were fleeing, even they chased after them in battle. ²³ So Yahweh saved Israel that day, and the battle passed beyond Beth Aven.

²⁴ That day the men of Israel were distressed because Saul had put the people under an oath and said, "Cursed be the man that eats any food until evening and I am avenged on my enemies." So none of the troops tasted food. ²⁵ Then all the people entered the forest and there was honey upon the ground. ²⁶ When the people entered into the forest, the honey flowed, but no one put his hand to his mouth for the people feared the curse. ²⁷ But Jonathan had not heard that his father had bound the people with an oath. He reached out the tip of the staff that was in his hand and dipped it in the honeycomb. He raised his hand to his mouth, and his eyes brightened. ²⁸ Then one of the people, answered, "Your father strictly charged the people with an oath, by saying, 'Cursed be the man that eats food on this day,' even though the people are weak from hunger." ²⁹ Then Jonathan said, "My father has made trouble for the land. See how my eyes have become brightened because I tasted a little of this honey." ³⁰ How much better if the people had eaten freely today of the plunder from their enemies that they found? Because now the slaughter has not been great among the Philistines."

³¹ They attacked the Philistines that day from Mikdash to Aijalon. The people were very weary. ³² The people rushed greedily on the plunder and took sheep, cattle and calves, and killed them on the ground. The people ate them with the blood. ³³ Then they told Saul, "Look, the people are sinning against Yahweh

by eating with the blood." Saul said, "You have acted unfaithfully. Now, roll a big stone here to me." ³⁴ Saul said, "Go out among the people, and tell them, 'Let every man bring his cattle and his sheep, and slaughter them here and eat them. Do not sin against Yahweh by eating meat with the blood.'" So each of the people brought his own ox with him that night and killed it there. ³⁵ Saul built an altar to Yahweh, which was the first altar that he built to Yahweh.

³⁶ Then Saul said, "Let us pursue the Philistines by night and plunder them until the morning light; let us not leave one of them alive." They replied, "Do whatever seems good to you." But the priest said, "Let us approach God here." ³⁷ Saul asked God, "Should I pursue the Philistines? Will you give them into the hand of Israel?" But God did not answer him that day. ³⁸ Then Saul said, "Come here, all you leaders of the people; learn and see how this sin has happened today." ³⁹ For, as Yahweh lives, who saves Israel, even if it is in Jonathan my son, he will surely die." But none of the men among all the people answered him. ⁴⁰ Then he said to all Israel, "You must stand on one side, and I and Jonathan my son will be on the other." The people said to Saul, "Do what seems good to you." ⁴¹ Saul said, "Yahweh, God of Israel! If this sin has been committed by me or by my son Jonathan, then, Yahweh, God of Israel, give the Urim. But if this sin has been committed by your people Israel, give the Thummim." ^[1] Then Jonathan and Saul were taken by lot, but the army was exonerated. ⁴² Then Saul said, "Cast lots between me and Jonathan my son." Then Jonathan was taken by lot.

⁴³ Then Saul said to Jonathan, "Tell me what you have done." Jonathan told him, "I tasted a little honey with the end of the rod that was in my hand. Here I am; I will die." ⁴⁴ Saul said, "God do so and more also to me, if you do not die, Jonathan." ⁴⁵ Then the people said to Saul, "Should Jonathan die, who has accomplished this great salvation for Israel? Far from it! As Yahweh lives, not one hair of his head will fall to the ground, for he has worked with God today." So the people ransomed Jonathan so that he did not die. ⁴⁶ Then Saul stopped pursuing the Philistines, and the Philistines went to their own place.

⁴⁷ When Saul had taken the kingship over Israel, he fought against all his enemies on every side. He fought against Moab, the Ammonites, Edom, the kings of Zobah, and the Philistines. Wherever he turned, he inflicted punishment on them. ⁴⁸ He acted with great courage and defeated the Amalekites. He rescued Israel out of the hands of those who plundered them.

⁴⁹ The sons of Saul were Jonathan, Ishvi, and Malki-Shua. The names of his two daughters were Merab, the firstborn, and Michal, the younger. ⁵⁰ The name of Saul's wife was Ahinoam; she was the daughter of Ahimaaz. The name of the captain of his army was Abner son of Ner, Saul's uncle. ⁵¹ Kish was Saul's father; and Ner, the father of Abner, was the son of Abiel.

⁵² There was hard fighting against the Philistines all the days of Saul. When Saul saw any mighty man, or any valiant man, he attached him to himself.

Footnotes

14:41 ^[1]The ULB is following the ancient Greek translation in the quotation. The Hebrew copies have:

1 Samuel 14 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter completes the story of Jonathan's victory over the Philistines.

Special concepts in this chapter

The battle against the Philistines

Jonathan took his armor bearer to where the Philistines were on the top of the hill. He said God could use a few people just as easily as he could use many people to win his battles. He and his armor bearer started killing the Philistines, and suddenly the Philistines began fighting each other or running away. The rest of Israel, who had hidden, came and chased the Philistines. Even though Israel had a king, God was still in control of the nation of Israel.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Special reference

The people of Israel often used the term "uncircumcised" to refer to Gentiles. Here it is used to mean the Philistines. (See: circumcise)

1 Samuel 14:1

General Information:

Jonathan begins his second raid on the Philistines' army.

the young man who was his armor bearer

a teenage boy who is responsible for caring for his master's weapons of war

Philistines' garrison

This is an outpost staffed by the Philistine army.

1 Samuel 14:2

Gibeah

This is the name of a hill north of Jerusalem.

under the pomegranate tree

a tree whose fruit is thick skinned, round, red and has many seeds to eat

that is in Migron

"Migron" is the name of a place north of Jerusalem.

six hundred men were with him

"600 men were with him"

1 Samuel 14:3

son of Ahitub (Ichabod's brother)

"Ahitub" and "Ichabod" are names of men.

Phinehas son of Eli

Phinehas was one of the priests. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 1:3.

1 Samuel 14:4

One rocky cliff was named Bozez

A "cliff" is a rocky height with a steep drop. The cliff was well-known and given the name "Bozez."

the other rocky cliff was named Seneh

This was the name of the other cliff.

1 Samuel 14:5

Mikmash ... Geba

towns north of Jerusalem

1 Samuel 14:6

his young armor bearer

This was a teenage boy who was responsible for caring for his master's weapons of war. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 14:1.

uncircumcised fellows

a derogatory term used for non-Jewish men

work on our behalf

"work for our support" or "help us"

nothing can stop Yahweh from saving

"Yahweh can gain victory" or "Yahweh can win the battle"

by many or by few people

These extremes also include everything in between. Alternate translation: "by any number of people"

1 Samuel 14:7

everything that is in your heart

Here "heart" refers to Jonathan's desires. Alternate translation: "everything that you desire to do"

1 Samuel 14:8

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 14:9

will not cross over to them

"will not go over to the other side of the valley where the Philistines are"

1 Samuel 14:10

has given them into our hand

Here "hand" refers to the power to defeat them. Alternate translation: "will enable us to defeat them"

This will be the sign to us

"This will confirm that the Lord will be with us"

1 Samuel 14:11

revealed themselves to the garrison of the Philistines

"allowed the Philistine soldiers to see them"

the garrison
the army camp

coming out of the holes where they have hidden themselves
The Philistines implied that the Hebrews had been hiding in holes in the ground like animals.

1 Samuel 14:12

we will show you something
This is an idiom that means "we will teach you a lesson."

has given them into the hand of Israel
Here "hand" refers to power to defeat the Philistines. Alternate translation: "will enable Israel to defeat them"

1 Samuel 14:13

Jonathan climbed up on his hands and feet
He did this because it was very steep. This could be made explicit. Alternate translation: "So Jonathan climbed up, using his hands and his feet because it was very steep"

The Philistines were put to death before Jonathan
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jonathan killed the Philistines"

his armor bearer put some to death behind him
"Jonathan's armor bearer followed him and also killed Philistine soldiers"

1 Samuel 14:14

half an acre
An acre of land was the area that a farmer could plow in a day with two oxen yoked together.

1 Samuel 14:15

There was a panic in the camp, in the field, and among the people
The abstract noun "panic" can be translated as a verb or as an adjective. Alternate translation: "The Philistine soldiers in the camp and in the field, and all the people with them, panicked" or "The Philistine soldiers in the camp and in the field, and all the people with them, became very afraid"

the raiders
the Philistines who were raiding Israelite cities

The earth quaked
It may be helpful to state the cause. Alternate translation: "God caused the ground to shake"

1 Samuel 14:16

Gibeah
This was the town where Saul was born. Translated "Gibeah" as in [1 Samuel 10:26]

was dispersing ... going here and there
These two phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that the soldiers were running away in every direction.

1 Samuel 14:17

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 14:18

Bring the ark of God here
A few versions have "ephod" here instead of "ark of God."

1 Samuel 14:19

commotion
great noise and confusion

Withdraw your hand
This seems to be an idiom that means "Stop what you are doing." Saul did not want Ahijah to continue to use the ark to ask God for direction. Alternate translation: "Do not bring the sacred chest at this time"

1 Samuel 14:20

the people who were with him
the remnant of the Israelite army that remained with Saul

Every Philistine's sword was against his fellow countrymen
The swords are spoken of as if they were living people. Alternate translation: "The Philistine soldiers were striking each other with their swords"

1 Samuel 14:21

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 14:22

the men of Israel who had hidden themselves in the hills
This does not refer to an ambush. These soldiers were hiding because they were afraid of the Philistines. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "the Israelite soldiers who were afraid and had hidden themselves in the hills"

1 Samuel 14:23

Beth Aven

This is a place in Israel. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 13:5]

1 Samuel 14:24

So none of the troops tasted food

It was understood by the troops that no refreshment was permitted under Saul's oath.

1 Samuel 14:25

the people entered the forest

The Philistine soldiers fled through the forests and the Israelite soldiers followed them there.

1 Samuel 14:26

the honey flowed

This is an exaggeration to emphasize how much honey there was in the forest. Alternate translation: "there was a lot of honey everywhere"

no one put his hand to his mouth

Here putting one's "hand to his mouth" is a metonym that means to eat. Alternate translation: "no one ate any"

1 Samuel 14:27

General Information:

Jonathan learns of his father's oath.

bound the people with an oath

Here the obligation to obey an oath is spoken of as if the people were bound with ropes. Alternate translation: "commanded that the people obey his oath"

He raised his hand to his mouth

Here "hand to his mouth" is a metonym that means to eat. Alternate translation: "He ate some honey"

his eyes brightened

This idiom means that he was strengthened. Alternate translation: "he regained his strength"

1 Samuel 14:28

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 14:29

for the land

This is a metonym that represents the nation of Israel. Alternate translation: "for Israel"

my eyes have become brightened

This idiom means that he was strengthened. Alternate translation: "I regained my strength"

1 Samuel 14:30

How much better if the people ... that they found?

Jonathan uses this rhetorical question to say that the people should have been allowed to eat the food in the plunder they had taken. Alternate translation: "It would have been much better if the people had eaten freely today of the plunder that they took from their enemies."

plunder

This word refers to the things the people had taken from the battle with their enemy.

Because now the slaughter has not been great

Because the troops were not able to eat during the battle, as the day progressed, they became weaker. Because of this, they were not able to kill as many of the Philistines.

1 Samuel 14:31

General Information:

Jonathan's words lead the army to sin against God in their great hunger.

Mikmash

This is the name of a town. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 13:2.

Aijalon

a place in Zebulun in Israel

The people

This refers to the Israelites.

1 Samuel 14:32

ate them with the blood

The were so hungry they did not drain the blood first before eating. This was a violation of the Law which was given to Moses for the nation of Israel. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "ate them without draining the blood first as required by the law"

1 Samuel 14:33

by eating with the blood

This was a violation of the Law which was given to Moses for the nation of Israel. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "by eating meat without draining the blood first as required by the law"

You have acted unfaithfully

Saul is accusing his whole army of acting unfaithfully though this is a generalization because not every soldier acted unfaithfully.

Now, roll a big stone here to me

The stone would hold the animals up and make it easier to drain the blood from them.

1 Samuel 14:34

slaughter them here and eat them

This would allow Saul to observe if the blood was properly drained from the animals.

1 Samuel 14:35

General Information:

Saul had told the people to bring their animals to a big stone to kill and eat.

Saul built an altar to Yahweh

It is unclear if Saul built this altar with the large stone that the people brought to him in 1 Samuel 14:33.

1 Samuel 14:36

General Information:

Saul seeks to continue the fight against the Philistines.

let us not leave one of them alive

This is stated in a negative way to emphasize the slaughter. It can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "let us kill every one of them"

Do whatever seems good to you

Saul had the support of his army to continue the fight.

Let us approach God here

Here "approaching God" is associated with asking him counsel. Alternate translation: "Let us ask God what we should do"

1 Samuel 14:37

give them into the hand of Israel

Here "hand" refers to the power to defeat them. Alternate translation: "enable us to defeat them"

But God did not answer him that day

This implies that God was not willing to help Saul.

1 Samuel 14:38

the people

This refers to the Israelites.

learn and see how this sin has happened

"find who sinned"

1 Samuel 14:39

even if it is in Jonathan my son, he will surely die

The word "it" refers to the guilt. Alternate translation: "Even if Jonathan my son is the guilty one, he will surely die"

But none of the men among all the people answered him

The people remained silent because most of them knew that Jonathan had broken Saul's oath. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "His men knew who was guilty, but none of them said anything to Saul"

1 Samuel 14:40

Then he said to all Israel

This was a generalization since only the Israelite soldiers were present. Alternate translation: "Then he said to the Israelite soldiers who were there"

1 Samuel 14:41

give the Thummim

The Israelites at that time used special stones called the Urim and the Thummim to receive direction from God. Alternate translation: "Show us by means of the Thummim"

Thummim

This is a borrowed word from the original language.

Jonathan and Saul were taken by lot, but the army was exonerated

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The lots indicated that either Jonathan or Saul was guilty, but the army was not guilty"

1 Samuel 14:42

Then Jonathan was taken by lot

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Then the lot indicated that Jonathan was guilty"

1 Samuel 14:43

General Information:

The lots had just showed that Jonathan had sinned.

Tell me what you have done

"Tell me how you have sinned" or "Tell me what you have done that was wrong"

I will die

Possible meanings are 1) "I am willing to die" or 2) "do I deserve to be executed because of doing that?"

1 Samuel 14:44

God do so and more also to me, if you do not die, Jonathan

Saul makes a second foolish oath in less than one day. Alternate translation: "May God kill me if I do not kill you, Jonathan"

1 Samuel 14:45

General Information:

The Army defends and protects Jonathan from Saul.

Should Jonathan die, who has accomplished this great salvation for Israel? Far from it!

The people scold Saul. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Jonathan has just accomplished this great salvation for Israel. He should surely not die."

accomplished this great salvation

This is a metonym for winning the victory that brought about the salvation. Alternate translation: "won this great victory"

As Yahweh lives

The people were expressing their certainty that they would not let anything happen to Jonathan.

not one hair of his head will fall to the ground

This exaggeration shows how the people of Israel would protect Jonathan and keep him safe. This litotes can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "we will protect him from any harm"

1 Samuel 14:46

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 14:47

General Information:

For a brief period Saul served with great courage in defeating Israel's enemies.

Israel

This is a metonym that represents the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "the Israelites"

Moab

This refers to the people of Moab. Alternate translation: "the Moabites"

Edom

This refers to the people of Edom. Alternate translation: "the Edomites"

Wherever he turned

"Wherever he sent his army"

1 Samuel 14:48

out of the hands

The word "hand" represents control. Alternate translation: "out of the control"

1 Samuel 14:49

General Information:

This is background information on Saul's family.

Ishvi ... Malki-Shua

These are names of men.

Merab ... Michal

These are names of women.

1 Samuel 14:50

Ahinoam

This is the name of a woman.

Ahimaaz ... Abner ... Ner

These are names of men.

1 Samuel 14:51

Kish ... Ner ... Abner ... Abiel

These are names of men.

1 Samuel 14:52

all the days of Saul

"all of Saul's life"

he attached him to himself

"he forced him to join his army"

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 14:1

What secret did Jonathan, the son of Saul, keep from his father?

Jonathan and his armor bearer were going to the Philistines' garrison on the other side of the pass.

1 Samuel 14:2

What was unknown to the six hundred men who were with Saul?

They did not know that Jonathan had gone over to the Philistines' garrison.

1 Samuel 14:3

What was unknown to the six hundred men who were with Saul?

They did not know that Jonathan had gone over to the Philistines' garrison.

1 Samuel 14:6

What proposal did Jonathan present to his young armor bearer?

Jonathan told him that Yahweh would work on their behalf to save many people if they would cross over to the garrison of the Philistines.

1 Samuel 14:7

What was the armor bearer's response to the proposal?

Jonathan's armor bearer was ready to obey all his commands, so he encouraged him to do everything that was in his heart.

1 Samuel 14:8

What would be the sign to Jonathan and his armor bearer that Yahweh had given the Philistines into their hand?

If the Philistines said that they should come over to them, this would be the sign that Yahweh had given them into their hand.

1 Samuel 14:9

What would be the sign to Jonathan and his armor bearer that Yahweh had given the Philistines into their hand?

If the Philistines said that they should come over to them, this would be the sign that Yahweh had given them into their hand.

1 Samuel 14:10

What would be the sign to Jonathan and his armor bearer that Yahweh had given the Philistines into their hand?

If the Philistines said that they should come over to them, this would be the sign that Yahweh had given them into their hand.

1 Samuel 14:11

What did Jonathan say to his armor bearer after the men of the Philistines' garrison had told them, "Come up to us and we will show you something"?

He told his armor bearer to follow him because Yahweh had given them into the hand of Israel.

1 Samuel 14:12

What did Jonathan say to his armor bearer after the men of the Philistines' garrison had told them, "Come up to us and we will show you something"?

He told his armor bearer to follow him because Yahweh had given them into the hand of Israel.

1 Samuel 14:13

What was the result of the attack that Jonathan and his armor bearer made on the Philistines' garrison?

Jonathan and his armor bearer put to death about twenty men.

1 Samuel 14:14

What was the result of the attack that Jonathan and his armor bearer made on the Philistines' garrison?

Jonathan and his armor bearer put to death about twenty men.

1 Samuel 14:16

What did Saul do when his watchmen in Gibeah of Benjamin saw the crowd of Philistine soldiers dispersing and going here and there?

Saul had the people count to see who was missing from them, and they discovered it was Jonathan and his armor bearer.

1 Samuel 14:17

What did Saul do when his watchmen in Gibeah of Benjamin saw the crowd of Philistine soldiers dispersing and going here and there?

Saul had the people count to see who was missing from them, and they discovered it was Jonathan and his armor bearer.

1 Samuel 14:18

Why did Saul command Ahijah the priest to bring the ephod of God to him?

Saul commanded Ahijah the priest to bring the ephod of God so they could determine the will of God.

1 Samuel 14:19

Why did Saul command Ahijah the priest to bring the ephod of God to him?

Saul commanded Ahijah the priest to bring the ephod of God so they could determine the will of God.

1 Samuel 14:21

Who joined with the Israelites that were with Saul and Jonathan?

Those Hebrews who had previously been with the Philistines, and who had gone with them into the camp joined the Israelites that were with Saul and Jonathan.

1 Samuel 14:23

Who saved Israel that day?

Yahweh saved Israel that day.

1 Samuel 14:24

What caused the hungry men of Israel to be distressed?
Saul had put the people under an oath that any man that ate food until evening would be cursed.

1 Samuel 14:27

What did Jonathan do to unknowingly break the oath?
Jonathan ate of the honey from the forest.

1 Samuel 14:29

How was Jonathan critical of the oath his father had made?
Jonathan said that if the people had been able to freely eat of the honey and from the plunder of their enemies, there would have been a greater slaughter among the Philistines.

1 Samuel 14:30

How was Jonathan critical of the oath his father had made?
Jonathan said that if the people had been able to freely eat of the honey and from the plunder of their enemies, there would have been a greater slaughter among the Philistines.

1 Samuel 14:33

How did the people of Israel sin against Yahweh after their battle against the Philistines?
The people of Israel ate the blood of the animals they killed from the plunder.

1 Samuel 14:34

How did the people of Israel sin against Yahweh after their battle against the Philistines?
The people of Israel ate the blood of the animals they killed from the plunder.

1 Samuel 14:37

What caused Saul to not chase after the Philistines even though he was eager to do so?
He did not receive any answers from God that day.

1 Samuel 14:38

How did Saul say he would deal with this sin in Israel?
He said that the man who committed this sin would surely die, even if it was Jonathan his son.

1 Samuel 14:39

How did Saul say he would deal with this sin in Israel?
He said that the man who committed this sin would surely die, even if it was Jonathan his son.

1 Samuel 14:42

How was it determined that Jonathan was the person who had sinned?
It was determined by lots.

1 Samuel 14:45

How was Jonathan saved from death?
The people of Israel who would not allow Jonathan to die because he had accomplished a great victory.

1 Samuel 14:47

How did Saul lead the people of Israel as their king?
Saul acted with great courage and rescued Israel out of the hands of those who plundered them.

1 Samuel 14:48

How did Saul lead the people of Israel as their king?
Saul acted with great courage and rescued Israel out of the hands of those who plundered them.

Chapter 15

¹ Samuel said to Saul, "Yahweh sent me to anoint you king over his people Israel. Now listen to the words of Yahweh. ² This is what Yahweh of hosts says, 'I have noted what Amalek did to Israel in opposing them on the way, when they came up from Egypt. ³ Now go and attack Amalek and completely destroy all that they have. Do not spare them, but put to death both man and woman, child and infant, cattle and sheep, camel and donkey.'"

⁴ Saul summoned the people and numbered them at the city of Telaim—two hundred thousand footmen, and ten thousand men of Judah. ⁵ Then Saul came to the city of Amalek and waited in the valley. ⁶ Then Saul said to the Kenites, "Go, depart, come out from among the Amalekites, so I do not destroy you along with them. For you showed kindness to all the people of Israel, when they came from Egypt." So the Kenites moved away from the Amalekites. ⁷ Then Saul attacked the Amalekites, from Havilah as far as Shur, which is east of Egypt. ⁸ Then he took Agag the king of the Amalekites alive; he completely destroyed all the people with the edge of the sword. ⁹ But Saul and the people spared Agag, as well as the best of the sheep and cattle, fattened calves and the lambs. Everything that was good, they did not destroy. But they completely destroyed anything that was despised and worthless.

¹⁰ Then the word of Yahweh came to Samuel, saying, ¹¹ "I regret that I have set Saul to reign as king, for he has turned back from following me and has not performed my commandments." Samuel was angry; he cried out to Yahweh all night. ¹² Samuel got up early to meet Saul in the morning. Samuel was told, "Saul came to Carmel and he set up a monument to himself, then turned and proceeded on down to Gilgal." ¹³ Then Samuel came to Saul, and Saul said to him, "Blessed are you by Yahweh! I have fulfilled the command of Yahweh." ¹⁴ Samuel said, "What then is this bleating of sheep in my ears, and the lowing of the cattle that I hear?" ¹⁵ Saul replied, "They have brought them from the Amalekites. For the people spared the best of the sheep and cattle, to sacrifice to Yahweh your God. The rest we have completely destroyed." ¹⁶ Then Samuel said to Saul, "Wait, and I will tell you what Yahweh has said to me tonight." Saul said to him, "Speak!"

¹⁷ Samuel said, "Though you are little in your own sight, were you not made the head of the tribes of Israel? Then Yahweh anointed you king over Israel, ¹⁸ and Yahweh sent you on your way and said, 'Go and completely destroy the sinners, the Amalekites, and fight against them until they are destroyed.' ¹⁹ Why did you not obey the voice of Yahweh? Why did you rush to the plunder and do what was evil in the sight of Yahweh?" ²⁰ Then Saul said to Samuel, "I have indeed obeyed the voice of Yahweh, and have gone on the way that Yahweh sent me. I have captured Agag, the king of Amalek, and have completely destroyed the Amalekites. ²¹ But the people took some of the booty—sheep and cattle, the best of the things devoted to destruction, to sacrifice to Yahweh your God in Gilgal." ²² Samuel replied, "Has Yahweh as much delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of Yahweh? Obedience is better than sacrifice, and to listen is better than the fat of rams. ²³ For rebellion is like the sin of divination, and stubbornness is like wickedness and idolatry. Because you have rejected the word of Yahweh, he has also rejected you from being king."

²⁴ Then Saul said to Samuel, "I have sinned; for I have broken Yahweh's commandment and your words, because I was afraid of the people and obeyed their voice. ²⁵ Now, please pardon my sin, and return with me so that I may worship Yahweh." ²⁶ Samuel said to Saul, "I will not go back with you; for you have rejected the word of Yahweh, and Yahweh has rejected you from being king over Israel." ²⁷ As Samuel turned to leave, Saul took hold of the hem of his robe, and it tore. ²⁸ Samuel said to him, "Yahweh has torn the kingdom of Israel from you today and has given it to a neighbor of yours, one who is better than you. ²⁹ Also, the Strength of Israel will not lie nor change his mind; for he is not a man, that he should change his mind." ³⁰ Then Saul said, "I have sinned. But please honor me now before the elders of my people and before Israel. Turn again with me, that I may worship Yahweh your God." ³¹ So Samuel turned again after Saul, and Saul worshiped Yahweh.

³² Then Samuel said, "Bring Agag the king of the Amalekites here to me." Agag came to him confined with chains and said, "Surely death is bitter." ³³ Samuel replied, "As your sword has made women childless, so must your mother be childless among women." Then Samuel chopped Agag to pieces before Yahweh at Gilgal.

³⁴ Samuel went to Ramah, and Saul went up to his house at Gibeah of Saul. ³⁵ Samuel did not see Saul until the day of his death, for he mourned for Saul. Yahweh regretted that he had made Saul king over Israel.

1 Samuel 15 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the end of the section on Saul and Samuel (8-15).

Special concepts in this chapter

God wants total obedience

Samuel told Saul that God wanted him to completely destroy the Amalekite people and animals. Saul fought the Amalekites and killed all the people except the king. He destroyed the animals that were not very good but saved the best animals. Saul told Samuel he had obeyed God's command. Samuel asked him about the animals Saul had. Saul said he had saved them for a sacrifice to God. God said that obedience was better than sacrifice. Because Saul had disobeyed him, God had chosen someone else to become king.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idiom

"He has turned back from following me" is an idiom meaning "he has stopped obeying me."

Rhetorical questions

When Saul insisted that he had obeyed God, Samuel rebuked him with these rhetorical questions: "What then is this bleating of sheep in my ears, and the lowing of the oxen that I hear?"; "Though you are little in your own sight, were you not made the head of the tribes of Israel?"; "Why then did you not obey the voice of Yahweh, but instead you seized the booty and did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh?"; and "Has Yahweh as much delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of Yahweh?"

1 Samuel 15:1

the words of Yahweh

"the message of Yahweh"

1 Samuel 15:2

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 15:3

completely destroy all that they have ... put to death both man and woman, child and infant, cattle and sheep, camel and donkey

These two phrases mean the same thing. The second phrase gives specific details about what they are to destroy completely.

Do not spare them

"Do not allow any of them to live"

1 Samuel 15:4

the people

"the army"

numbered them

"counted them"

two hundred thousand footmen, and ten thousand men of Judah

"200,000 footmen, and 10,000 men of Judah"

1 Samuel 15:5

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 15:6

Kenites

a nomad people group that had always been friendly to the nation of Israel

1 Samuel 15:7

Havilah ... Shur

These are the names of places.

1 Samuel 15:8

General Information:

Yahweh had told Saul to destroy everything, but here Saul disobeys Yahweh's command.

he took Agag

Here Saul represents himself accompanied by his army. Alternate translation: "Saul and his army took Agag" or "Saul and his army captured Agag"

he completely destroyed all the people with the edge of the sword

The "edge of the sword" represents the swords and other weapons that soldiers used in battle. Here Saul represents himself accompanied by his army. Alternate translation: "they completely destroyed all of the people with their swords" or "they killed all of the people with their swords"

1 Samuel 15:9

Saul ... spared Agag

Saul disobeyed God by letting Agag live.

as well as the best of the sheep

Saul disobeyed God by keeping the best of the livestock.

1 Samuel 15:10

the word of Yahweh came to Samuel, saying,

The idiom "the word of Yahweh came to" is used to introduce a special message from God. Alternate translation: "Yahweh gave a message to Samuel. He said," or "Yahweh spoke this message to Samuel:"

1 Samuel 15:11

I regret

"I am sorry"

he has turned back from following me

Saul not obeying Yahweh is spoken of as if Saul had physically turned away from walking behind God. Alternate translation: "he has stopped following me"

has not performed my commandments

"has not obeyed what I commanded him to do." Saul was to completely destroy everything and everyone. God had placed a ban on the Amalekites. But Saul permitted some livestock to live.

Samuel was angry

Possible meanings are 1) Samuel was angry with Saul for his disobedience or 2) Samuel was disturbed.

1 Samuel 15:12

Samuel was told

"Someone told Samuel"

he set up a monument to himself

Saul was full of pride.

down to Gilgal

Gilgal was lower in elevation than Carmel.

1 Samuel 15:13

I have fulfilled the command of Yahweh

It is not clear if Saul understood that he had not fully obeyed God's command to completely destroy the Amalekites.

1 Samuel 15:14

General Information:

Samuel questions why Saul did not utterly destroy the Amalekites.

bleating of sheep ... lowing of the cattle

These are the sounds that these animals make. Your language may have different terms for these.

in my ears ... that I hear

These two phrases mean the same thing. Here "in my ears" refers to hearing.

1 Samuel 15:15

They have brought ... the people spared

The word "they" and the phrase "the people" here both represent Saul's army. Saul is blaming the people rather than himself.

to sacrifice to Yahweh your God

Saul is arguing that animals for sacrifice were an exception to Yahweh's command to destroy everything.

Yahweh your God

Saul here does not describe Samuel's God as his own God.

1 Samuel 15:16

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 15:17

in your own sight

Here sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: "in your own opinion" or "in your judgment"

were you not made the head of the tribes of Israel?
Samuel uses this question to remind Saul of how much God had given him. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Yahweh made you the ruler of the tribes of Israel!"

1 Samuel 15:18

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 15:19

Why did you not obey the voice of Yahweh?

Samuel asks this question to rebuke Saul for disobeying Yahweh. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have obeyed the voice of Yahweh!"

the voice of Yahweh

Here "voice" refers to the commands that Yahweh spoke. Alternate translation: "the things that Yahweh commanded"

Why did you rush to the plunder and do what was evil in the sight of Yahweh?

Samuel asks this question to rebuke Saul for disobeying Yahweh. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not have rushed to the plunder and done what was evil in the sight of Yahweh!"

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

Here "sight" refers to Yahweh's thoughts or opinion. Alternate translation: "what Yahweh considers to be evil" or "what is evil in Yahweh's judgment"

1 Samuel 15:20

I have indeed obeyed the voice of Yahweh

This is an emphatic statement. It is unclear if Saul thought this was true, or if he was simply making excuses for his sin.

the voice of Yahweh

Here "voice" refers to the commands that Yahweh spoke. Alternate translation: "the things that Yahweh commanded"

Agag

This is the name of the king of the Amalekites.

1 Samuel 15:21

But the people took

This appears to be shifting the blame to the people.

things devoted to destruction

"animals that Yahweh commanded them to destroy"

Gilgal

This is the name of a place.

1 Samuel 15:22

Has Yahweh as much delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of Yahweh?

Samuel asks this question to emphasize that obedience is much more important than sacrifice. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Yahweh does not delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices as much as in obeying his voice!"

the voice of Yahweh

Here "voice" refers to the commands that Yahweh spoke. Alternate translation: "the things that Yahweh commanded"

Obedience is better than sacrifice

God wanted Saul's complete obedience in the destruction of the Amalekites. Nothing in the land was fit for sacrifice.

better than the fat of rams

"better than to sacrifice the fat of rams as a burnt offering"

1 Samuel 15:23

rebellion is like the sin of divination

The abstract noun "rebellion" can be translated with a verb. Alternate translation: "to rebel is as sinful as practicing divination"

stubbornness is like wickedness and idolatry

The abstract noun "stubbornness" can be translated with a verb and the abstract noun "wickedness" can be translated as an adjective. Alternate translation: "being stubborn is as bad as doing wicked things and practicing idolatry"

the word of Yahweh

"Yahweh's message" or "Yahweh's command"

rejected you from being king

"decided that you will no longer be king"

1 Samuel 15:24

I have broken Yahweh's commandment

This is an idiom that means he had disobeyed the commandment. Alternate translation: "I have disobeyed what Yahweh commanded"

because I was afraid of the people

This is the reason Saul gives for not obeying God. Alternate translation: "because I was afraid of the soldiers"

obeyed their voice

Here "voice" refers to what the soldiers asked Saul to do. Alternate translation: "did what they asked"

1 Samuel 15:25

return with me

Saul and Samuel were apparently talking in private away from the other people.

1 Samuel 15:26

for you have rejected the word of Yahweh

Samuel made it clear that Saul understood that he was disobeying God at the time when he spared the best animals and did not kill Agag.

rejected the word of Yahweh

"rejected Yahweh's command" or "rejected Yahweh's message." This means that he refused to obey Yahweh's command. Alternate translation: "refused to obey Yahweh's command"

1 Samuel 15:27

Saul took hold of the hem of his robe

Saul did this to try to stop Samuel from leaving. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "Saul tried to stop him by grabbing the edge of Samuel's robe"

the hem of his robe

"the edge of his robe" or "the fringe of his robe"

1 Samuel 15:28

Yahweh has torn the kingdom of Israel

This refers back to when Saul tore Samuel's robe in [1 Samuel 15:27]

has given it to a neighbor of yours, one who is better than you

God had already decided who would be the next king after Saul.

1 Samuel 15:29

the Strength of Israel

Here Yahweh is referred to as "the Strength of Israel" because he gives strength to the Israelites. Alternate translation: "Yahweh, who is the strength of Israel"

will not lie nor change his mind

This is stated as a negative to emphasize that God tells the truth. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "will always tell the truth and do what he says"

his mind

This refers to his thoughts and decisions. Alternate translation: "what he has decided to do"

he is not a man, that he should change his mind

This is stated as a negative to emphasize that God is trustworthy. This can be stated in positive form.

Alternate translation: "he is God, and will do what he says he will do"

1 Samuel 15:30

But please honor me now before the elders

Saul may have been more interested in being honored by the people than in actually worshipping God.

before the elders of my people and before Israel

Here "Israel" refers to the people of Israel.

Alternate translation: "before the people of Israel and the elders who lead them"

Turn again with me

"Come back with me" or "Return with me"

1 Samuel 15:31

So Samuel turned again after Saul

This implies that Samuel changed his mind, and that they went together to where the people were. Alternate translation: "So Samuel finally agreed to do that, and they went together back to where the people were"

1 Samuel 15:32

Agag came to him confined with chains and said, "Surely death is bitter."

The text here is unclear. Possible meanings are 1) Agag knows that Samuel will not spare his life, as Saul had, or 2) Agag no longer thinks he will be killed. Alternate translation: "Agag came to him confidently, thinking to himself, 'Surely I am no longer in danger of dying.'"

Agag came to him confined with chains and said

"They brought Agag to him bound by chains and Agag said"

1 Samuel 15:33

As your sword has made women childless, so must your mother be childless among women

Both of these phrases have similar meaning and may be intended to be in poetic form. Alternate translation: "Since you have killed people, you will also be killed"

made women childless, so must your mother be childless

This is a polite way of referring to killing people. Alternate translation: "killed the sons of other women, so shall I kill your mother's son"

Then Samuel chopped Agag to pieces

Samuel is the one who completed this task that Yahweh commanded Saul to do. Alternate translation: "Then Samuel cut Agag into pieces with his sword"

1 Samuel 15:34

Ramah ... Gibeah

These are the names of places.

went up to his house at Gibeah

Gibeah was higher in elevation than Gilgal where Saul and Samuel had been talking.

1 Samuel 15:35

Samuel did not see Saul until the day of his death

"Samuel did not see Saul again for as long as he lived"

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 15:2

Why did Yahweh want Saul to attack and completely destroy Amalek?

Amalek opposed Israel on the way when they came up from Egypt.

1 Samuel 15:3

Why did Yahweh want Saul to attack and completely destroy Amalek?

Amalek opposed Israel on the way when they came up from Egypt.

1 Samuel 15:6

Why did Saul tell the Kenites to depart from the Amalekites?

The Kenites showed kindness to the people of Israel when they came up from Egypt.

1 Samuel 15:7

Why did Saul tell the Kenites to depart from the Amalekites?

The Kenites showed kindness to the people of Israel when they came up from Egypt.

1 Samuel 15:8

How did Saul disobey the directions which Yahweh had given to him?

Saul spared the life of King Agag as well as the best of the animals of the Amalekites.

1 Samuel 15:9

How did Saul disobey the directions which Yahweh had given to him?

Saul spared the life of King Agag as well as the best of the animals of the Amalekites.

1 Samuel 15:10

Why was Yahweh grieved that he had made Saul king?

Saul had turned back from following Yahweh's commandments.

1 Samuel 15:11

Why was Yahweh grieved that he had made Saul king?

Saul had turned back from following Yahweh's commandments.

1 Samuel 15:12

What was the lie that Saul told to Samuel?

He said he had fulfilled the command of Yahweh.

1 Samuel 15:13

What was the lie that Saul told to Samuel?

He said he had fulfilled the command of Yahweh.

1 Samuel 15:14

How did Samuel respond to the lie which Saul had told him?

Samuel asked about the bleating of sheep and the lowing of oxen he was hearing.

1 Samuel 15:15

What excuse did Saul give to Samuel to try to explain his disobedience?

He said the people spared the best of the sheep and oxen so they could sacrifice them to Yahweh.

1 Samuel 15:17

What did Samuel say to rebuke Saul?

He told Saul that Yahweh had anointed him king over Israel and told him to completely destroy the Amalekites, but instead he had seized the booty and done evil in the sight of Yahweh.

1 Samuel 15:18

What did Samuel say to rebuke Saul?

He told Saul that Yahweh had anointed him king over Israel and told him to completely destroy the Amalekites, but instead he had seized the booty and done evil in the sight of Yahweh.

1 Samuel 15:19

What did Samuel say to rebuke Saul?

He told Saul that Yahweh had anointed him king over Israel and told him to completely destroy the Amalekites, but instead he had seized the booty and done evil in the sight of Yahweh.

1 Samuel 15:20

What was the same excuse that Saul gave to Samuel?

Saul insisted it was the people who took the best of the booty to sacrifice to Yahweh.

1 Samuel 15:21

What was the same excuse that Saul gave to Samuel?

Saul insisted it was the people who took the best of the booty to sacrifice to Yahweh.

1 Samuel 15:22

What was Samuel's response to Saul?

Obedience to Yahweh is better than sacrifice and rebellion and stubbornness are sin to Yahweh.

1 Samuel 15:23

What was Samuel's response to Saul?

Obedience to Yahweh is better than sacrifice and rebellion and stubbornness are sin to Yahweh.

1 Samuel 15:24

What was the reason Saul told Samuel he had sinned?

Saul said he had broken Yahweh's commandment because he was afraid of the people.

1 Samuel 15:26

What was the declaration which Samuel gave to Saul from Yahweh?

Yahweh had rejected Saul from being the king of Israel.

1 Samuel 15:28

Who was Yahweh going to give the kingdom of Israel to?

Samuel told Saul that Yahweh was going to give the kingdom of Israel to one of Saul's neighbors, one who was better than Saul.

1 Samuel 15:32

What did Samuel do to finish the task that Saul had not done?

Samuel used his sword to kill Agag before Yahweh.

1 Samuel 15:33

What did Samuel do to finish the task that Saul had not done?

Samuel used his sword to kill Agag before Yahweh.

Chapter 16

¹ Yahweh said to Samuel, "How long will you mourn for Saul, since I have rejected him from being king over Israel? Fill your horn with oil and go. I will send you to Jesse of Bethlehem, for I have selected for myself a king among his sons." ² Samuel said, "How can I go? If Saul hears of it, he will kill me." Yahweh said, "Take a heifer with you and say, 'I have come to sacrifice to Yahweh.'" ³ Call Jesse to the sacrifice, and I will show you what you will do. You will anoint for me the one whom I tell you." ⁴ Samuel did as Yahweh said and went to Bethlehem. The elders of the city were trembling as they came to meet him and said, "Are you coming in peace?" ⁵ He said, "In peace; I have come to sacrifice to Yahweh. Prepare to set yourselves apart and come with me to the sacrifice." Then he set apart Jesse and his sons and invited them to the sacrifice.

⁶ When they came, he looked at Eliab and said to himself that Yahweh's anointed was certainly standing before him. ⁷ But Yahweh said to Samuel, "Do not look at his outward appearance, or on the height of his stature; because I have rejected him. For Yahweh does not see as man sees; man looks on the outward appearance, but Yahweh looks on the heart." ⁸ Then Jesse called Abinadab and made him pass before Samuel. Then Samuel said, "Neither has Yahweh chosen this one." ⁹ Jesse then made Shammah pass by, but Samuel said, "Neither has Yahweh chosen this one." ¹⁰ Jesse made seven of his sons pass before Samuel. Then Samuel said to Jesse, "Yahweh has not chosen any of these." ¹¹ Then Samuel said to Jesse, "Are these all the boys?" He replied, "There remains yet the youngest, but he is tending the sheep." Samuel said to Jesse, "Send and get him; for we will not sit down until he comes here." ¹² Jesse sent and brought him in. Now this son was ruddy and had beautiful eyes and a handsome appearance. Yahweh said, "Arise, anoint him; for he is the one." ¹³ Then Samuel took the horn of oil and anointed him in the middle of his brothers. The Spirit of Yahweh rushed on David from that day forward. Then Samuel rose up and went to Ramah.

¹⁴ Now the Spirit of Yahweh left Saul, and a harmful spirit from Yahweh tormented him instead. ¹⁵ Saul's servants said to him, "See now, a harmful spirit from God is tormenting you." ¹⁶ Let our master now command your servants who are before you to search for a man who is a skillful player on the harp. Then when the harmful spirit from God is on you, he will play it and you will be well." ¹⁷ Saul said to his servants, "Find me a man that can play well and bring him to me." ¹⁸ Then one of the young men answered, and said, "I have seen a son of Jesse the Bethlehemite, who is skillful in playing, a strong, courageous man, a man of war, one prudent in speech, a handsome man; and Yahweh is with him." ¹⁹ So Saul sent messengers to Jesse, and said, "Send me your son David, who is with the sheep." ²⁰ Jesse took a donkey loaded with bread, a container of wine, and a young goat, and sent them with his son David to Saul. ²¹ Then David came to Saul and entered his service. Saul loved him greatly, and he became his armor bearer. ²² Saul sent to Jesse, saying, "Let David stand before me, for he has found favor in my eyes." ²³ Whenever the harmful spirit from God was upon Saul, David took the harp and played it. So Saul would be refreshed and well, and the harmful spirit would depart from him.

1 Samuel 16 General Notes

Structure and formatting

1 Samuel 16-31 Saul and David

Chapter 16 establishes God's choice of David to be the next king. David receives the Holy Spirit to empower and guide him as the king. This chapter also records the Holy Spirit leaving Saul because of his disobedience. (See: holyspirit)

Special concepts in this chapter

David chosen to be the next king

Humans judge others by what they look like, but God judges people by their true inner character. God rejected David's older brothers in favor of David, who truly loved and obeyed him. (See: judge and love)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical Question

God scolds Samuel with this rhetorical question for his unwillingness to accept God's decision: "How long will you mourn for Saul, since I have rejected him from being king over Israel?" It was wrong to mourn because it was God's punishment of Saul.

1 Samuel 16:1

How long will you mourn for Saul, since I have rejected him from being king over Israel?

This rhetorical question is a rebuke from God and can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Stop mourning that I rejected Saul from being king over Israel."

Fill your horn with oil

The term "horn" was sometimes used to refer to a "flask" that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king.

1 Samuel 16:2

How can I go?

Samuel uses a question to emphasize that he is worried about going to Bethlehem. Alternate translation: "I cannot go!" or "I am afraid to go."

Take a heifer with you and say

You can state the understood information. Alternate translation: "Take a heifer with you to Bethlehem and say to the people there"

say, 'I have come to sacrifice to Yahweh.'

This has a quotation within a quotation. The direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "say to the people there that you have come to sacrifice to Yahweh."

1 Samuel 16:3

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 16:4

The elders of the city were trembling as they came to meet him

It seems the elders were trembling because they were worried that Samuel came to rebuke them.

1 Samuel 16:5

In peace

This can be stated as a complete sentence. Alternate translation: "Yes, I have come in peace"

to set ... apart

To set someone apart means to get that person ready for Yahweh's purposes by making sure that

person is ritually clean according to the law of Moses.

1 Samuel 16:6

When they came

Here "they" refers to Jesse and his sons.

he looked at Eliab

Here "he" refers to Samuel.

Eliab

This is the name of Jesse's oldest son.

standing before him

Here "him" refers to Yahweh.

1 Samuel 16:7

Yahweh does not see as man sees

Here "see" means to evaluate something.

For Yahweh does not see ... Yahweh looks

Yahweh is speaking about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "For I, Yahweh, do not see ... I, Yahweh, look"

on the heart

Here "heart" represents a person's inner being.

1 Samuel 16:8

Abinadab

This is the name of one of Jesse's sons.

made him pass before Samuel

"told him to go to Samuel"

1 Samuel 16:9

Jesse then made Shammah pass by

It is understood that Shammah passed by Samuel. Alternate translation: "Jesse then made Shammah pass before Samuel" or "Jesse then told Shammah to go to Samuel"

Shammah

This is the name of one of Jesse's sons.

1 Samuel 16:10

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 16:11

There remains yet the youngest
"There is still my youngest son"

we will not sit down

It is understood that they were waiting to sit down and eat. Alternate translation: "we will not sit down to eat"

1 Samuel 16:12

Now ... appearance

The word "Now" is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here the narrator tells about a new person in the story.

this son was ruddy

The word "ruddy" means David was healthy looking.

1 Samuel 16:13

the horn of oil

The term "horn" was sometimes used to refer to a "flask" that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king. See how you translated a similar phrase in 1 Samuel 16:1.

Samuel rose up and went

It is implied that he rose up after they sat down to eat.

The Spirit of Yahweh rushed on David

The phrase "rushed on" means Yahweh's Spirit influenced David. In this case it means he enabled David to fulfill whatever Yahweh wanted him to do. See how you translated a similar phrase in 1 Samuel 10:6.

1 Samuel 16:14

Now

This word is used here to mark a stop in the main story. Here the narrator starts to tell a new part of the story.

harmful spirit

This may refer to either a "spirit that causes trouble" or an "evil spirit."

1 Samuel 16:15

See now, a harmful spirit

The phrase "See now" indicates that what follows is a polite request for the hearer to pay attention. Alternate translation: "Please listen carefully: a harmful spirit"

a harmful spirit

See how you translated similar words in 1 Samuel 9:6.

1 Samuel 16:16

Let our master now command

The servants refer to Saul in the third person as "our master." Alternate translation: "We ask that you, our master, command"

command your servants who are before you to search

The servants refer to themselves in the third person as "your servants." Alternate translation: "command us, your servants who attend to you, to search"

is on you

"troubles you"

1 Samuel 16:17

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 16:18

a strong, courageous man

Possible meanings are 1) "a great warrior" or 2) "a very brave man."

one prudent in speech

"one wise in speech" or "one who speaks wisely"

Yahweh is with him

Here "with him" means Yahweh helps and blesses David.

1 Samuel 16:19

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 16:20

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 16:21

David came to Saul

Here "came" can be translated as "went."

entered his service

The abstract noun "service" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "began to serve him"

he became his armor bearer

"David became Saul's armor bearer"

1 Samuel 16:22

Let David stand before me

Here "stand before me" is an idiom that means to continue in Saul's service. Alternate translation: "Let David stay in my service"

he has found favor in my eyes

Here "eyes" are a metonym for sight, and "my sight" represents how Saul judges or evaluates David. Alternate translation: "he has found favor in my judgment" or "I am pleased with him"

1 Samuel 16:23

harmful spirit

Here "harmful spirit" may refer to either a "spirit that causes trouble" or an "evil spirit." See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 16:14.

was upon Saul

"troubled Saul"

Saul would be refreshed and well

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the music would refresh Saul and make him well"

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 16:1

From what did Yahweh tell Samuel he had rejected Saul?
Yahweh had rejected Saul from being king over Israel.

1 Samuel 16:2

What did Samuel fear if Saul heard of his travel to Bethlehem?

He feared that Saul would kill him.

1 Samuel 16:3

How did Yahweh say that Samuel would know who to anoint?

He told Samuel that he would anoint the one whom Yahweh told him.

1 Samuel 16:4

How did the elders of Bethlehem act when Samuel arrived at their city?

They were trembling as they came to meet him.

1 Samuel 16:6

What did Samuel say to himself when he looked at Eliab?

He said to himself that Yahweh's anointed was certainly standing before him.

1 Samuel 16:7

How did Yahweh explain to Samuel that he does not see as man sees?

Yahweh said that man looks on the outward appearance, but Yahweh looks on the heart.

1 Samuel 16:10

What did Samuel say to Jesse after he made seven sons pass before him?

Samuel said that Yahweh had not chosen any of them.

1 Samuel 16:11

Where was the youngest son before Samuel called for him?

The youngest son was tending the sheep.

1 Samuel 16:13

When did the Spirit of Yahweh rush on David?

The Spirit of Yahweh rushed on David from that day forward.

1 Samuel 16:14

What spirit troubled Saul instead of the Spirit of Yahweh?

A harmful spirit from Yahweh troubled Saul.

1 Samuel 16:16

What did Saul's servants say that a skillful player could do when the harmful spirit was on Saul?

The player of the harp would play it and Saul would be well.

1 Samuel 16:19

How did Saul say which of Jesse's sons he wanted sent to him?

Saul sent messengers to Jesse, saying to send him Jesse's son David, who was with the sheep.

1 Samuel 16:21

What assignment did Saul give David since he loved him greatly?

Saul made David his armor bearer.

1 Samuel 16:23

What would depart from Saul so he would be refreshed and well, when David played the harp?

The harmful spirit would depart from Saul.

Chapter 17

¹ Now the Philistines gathered their armies for battle. They were gathered at Sokoh, which belongs to Judah. They had encamped between Sokoh and Azekah, in Ephes Dammim. ² Saul and the men of Israel gathered and encamped in the Valley of Elah, and drew up their battle line to meet the Philistines. ³ The Philistines stood on a mountain on one side, and Israel stood on a mountain on the other side with a valley between them. ⁴ A strong man came out of the Philistines' camp, a man named Goliath of Gath, whose height was six cubits and a span. ⁵ He had a helmet of bronze on his head, and he was clothed in scale armor of bronze that weighed five thousand shekels. ⁶ He had bronze armor on his legs and a javelin of bronze between his shoulders. ⁷ The staff of his spear was large, with a loop of cord for throwing it like the cord on a weaver's beam. His spear's head weighed six hundred shekels of iron. His shield bearer went before him. ⁸ He stood and shouted to the ranks of Israel, "Why have you come out to draw up for battle? Am I not a Philistine, and are you not servants of Saul? Choose a man for yourselves and let him come down to me. ⁹ If he is able to fight with me and kill me, then will we be your servants. But if I defeat him and kill him, then you will be our servants and serve us." ¹⁰ Again the Philistine said, "I defy the ranks of Israel today. Give me a man so we may fight together." ¹¹ When Saul and all Israel heard what the Philistine said, they were discouraged and greatly afraid.

¹² Now David was the son of the Ephrathite of Bethlehem in Judah, whose name was Jesse. He had eight sons. Jesse was an old man in the days of Saul, very old among men. ¹³ The three oldest sons of Jesse had followed Saul to the battle. The names of his three sons who went to the battle were Eliab the firstborn, second to him Abinadab, and the third Shammah. ¹⁴ David was the youngest. The three oldest followed Saul. ¹⁵ Now David went back and forth between Saul's army and his father's sheep at Bethlehem, in order to feed them. ¹⁶ For forty days the Philistine strong man came near morning and evening to present himself for battle.

¹⁷ Then Jesse said to his son David, "Take to your brothers an ephah of this roasted grain and these ten loaves, and carry them quickly to the camp for your brothers. ¹⁸ Also bring these ten cheeses to the captain of their thousand. Look to the well-being of your brothers, and bring back some evidence that they are doing well. ¹⁹ Your brothers are with Saul and all the men of Israel in the Valley of Elah, fighting the Philistines." ²⁰ David got up early in the morning and left the flock in the care of a shepherd. He took the supplies and left, as Jesse commanded him. He came to the camp as the army was going out to the battlefield shouting the war cry. ²¹ Then Israel and the Philistines lined up for battle, army against army. ²² David left his belongings with the keeper of supplies, ran to the army, and greeted his brothers. ²³ As he talked with them, the strong man, the Philistine of Gath, Goliath by name, came out of the ranks of the Philistines and said the same words as before, and David heard them. ²⁴ When all the men of Israel saw the man, they fled from him and were very afraid. ²⁵ The men of Israel said, "Have you seen this man who has come up? He has come to defy Israel. The king will give great riches to the man who kills him, and he will give his daughter to him in marriage, and will make his father's house free from taxation in Israel." ²⁶ David said to the men who stood by him, "What will be done for the man who kills this Philistine and takes away the disgrace from Israel? Who is this uncircumcised Philistine that he should defy the armies of the living God?" ²⁷ Then the people repeated what they had been saying and told him, "So it will be done for the man who kills him."

²⁸ Eliab his oldest brother heard when he spoke to the men. Eliab's anger was kindled against David, and he said, "Why did you come down here? With whom have you left those few sheep in the wilderness? I know your pride, and the mischief in your heart; for you have come down here so that you might see the battle." ²⁹ David said, "What have I done now? Was it not just a question?" ³⁰ He turned away from him toward another, and spoke in the same way. The people answered the same thing as before.

³¹ When the words that David said were heard, soldiers repeated them to Saul, and he sent for David. ³² Then David said to Saul, "Let no man's heart fail because of that Philistine; your servant will go and fight with this Philistine." ³³ Saul said to David, "You are not able to go against this Philistine to fight with him; for you are only a youth, and he a man of war from his youth." ³⁴ But David said to Saul, "Your servant used to shepherd his father's sheep. When a lion or a bear came and took a lamb out of the flock, ³⁵ I chased after him and attacked him, and rescued it out of his mouth. When he rose up against me, I caught him by his beard, struck him, and put him to death. ³⁶ Your servant has killed both a lion and a bear. This

uncircumcised Philistine will be like one of them, since he has defied the armies of the living God." ³⁷ David said, "Yahweh rescued me from the paw of the lion and from the paw of the bear. He will rescue me from the hand of this Philistine." Then Saul said to David, "Go, and may Yahweh be with you." ³⁸ Saul clothed David with his armor. He put a helmet of bronze upon his head, and he clothed him with a coat of chainmail. ³⁹ David strapped his sword on his armor. But he was not able to walk, because he had not trained with them. Then David said to Saul, "I cannot go out to fight with these, for I have not trained with them." So David put them off. ⁴⁰ He took his staff in his hand and chose five smooth stones out of the brook; he put them in his shepherd's pouch. His sling was in his hand as he approached the Philistine.

⁴¹ The Philistine came and approached David, with his shield bearer in front of him. ⁴² When the Philistine looked around and saw David, he despised him, for he was only a boy, and ruddy, with a handsome appearance. ⁴³ Then the Philistine said to David, "Am I a dog, that you come to me with sticks?," and the Philistine cursed David by his gods. ⁴⁴ The Philistine said to David, "Come to me, and I will give your flesh to the birds of the heavens and to the wild animals of the field." ⁴⁵ David replied to the Philistine, "You come to me with a sword, a spear, and a javelin. But I come to you in the name of Yahweh of hosts, the God of the armies of Israel, whom you have defied. ⁴⁶ Today Yahweh will give me victory over you, and I will kill you and remove your head from your body. Today I will give the dead bodies of the Philistine army to the birds of the heavens and to the wild beasts of the earth, so that all the earth may know that there is a God in Israel, ⁴⁷ and that all this gathering may know that Yahweh does not save with sword or spear. For the battle is Yahweh's, and he will give you into our hand." ⁴⁸ When the Philistine rose and approached David, then David ran quickly toward the enemy army to meet him. ⁴⁹ David put his hand in his bag, took a stone from it, slung it, and hit the Philistine in the forehead. The stone sank into the Philistine's forehead, and he fell on his face to the ground.

⁵⁰ David defeated the Philistine with a sling and with a stone. He hit the Philistine and put him to death. There was no sword in David's hand. ⁵¹ Then David ran and stood over the Philistine and took his sword, drew it out of the sheath, killed him, and cut off his head with it. When the Philistines saw that their mighty man was dead, they fled. ⁵² Then the men of Israel and of Judah rose with a shout, and chased after the Philistines as far as the valley and the gates of Ekron. The dead Philistines lay along the way to Shaaraim, all the way to Gath and Ekron. ⁵³ The people of Israel returned from hotly pursuing the Philistines, and they plundered their camp. ⁵⁴ David took the head of the Philistine and brought it to Jerusalem, but he put his armor in his tent.

⁵⁵ When Saul saw David go out against the Philistine, he said to Abner, the captain of the army, "Abner, whose son is this youth?" Abner said, "As you live, king, I do not know." ⁵⁶ The king said, "Ask those who might know, whose son the boy is." ⁵⁷ When David returned from killing the Philistine, Abner took him, and brought him before Saul with the head of the Philistine in his hand. ⁵⁸ Saul said to him, "Whose son are you, young man?" David answered, "I am the son of your servant Jesse the Bethlehemite."

1 Samuel 17 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter introduced David as a soldier, a skill that will be important for the rest of his life.

Special concepts in this chapter

David kills Goliath

Trust in God is more powerful than physical might or military training and equipment. David, trusting in the Lord and armed only with a sling, defeats Goliath who is well-armed and physically strong but who did not believe in Yahweh. (See: trust and believe)

Uncircumcised

The people of Israel often used the term "uncircumcised" to refer to Gentiles. Here it is used to describe the Philistines. (See: circumcise)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical questions

David uses rhetorical questions to state his desire to fight the giant: "What will be done for the man who kills this Philistine and takes away the disgrace from Israel? Who is this uncircumcised Philistine that he should defy the armies of the living God?"

His brother uses rhetorical questions to show his disdain for his younger brother, whom he thinks is pretending to be bigger than he really is: "Why did you come down here? With whom have you left those few sheep in the wilderness?" David defends himself with some questions: "What have I done now? Was it not just a question?"

Goliath also uses a rhetorical question to show his contempt for young David: "Am I a dog, that you come to me with sticks?"

1 Samuel 17:1

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 17:2

the Valley of Elah

This is the name of a place.

1 Samuel 17:3

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 17:4

six cubits and a span

A cubit is a unit of measurement equal to about 46 centimeters. A span is a unit of measurement equal to about 23 centimeters. Alternate translation: "about 3 meters"

1 Samuel 17:5

clothed in scale armor of bronze

A "coat of chainmail" is a flexible piece of body armor covered with protective scales or small plates. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he protected himself by wearing a coat of chainmail" or "he wore a coat of chainmail"

five thousand shekels

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. Alternate translation: "about 55 kilograms"

1 Samuel 17:6

a javelin of bronze

A "javelin" is a small spear that is meant to be thrown.

1 Samuel 17:7

staff of his spear

"the handle of his spear"

loop of cord

"rope rolled up into a circle"

His spear's head

"The point of his spear"

six hundred shekels of iron

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. Alternate translation: "about 7 kilograms"

1 Samuel 17:8

Why have you come out to draw up for battle?

"Why have you come to fight in battle against us?" Goliath uses this question to mock the Israelites. Alternate translation: "You are fools if you think you can fight in battle against us!"

Am I not a Philistine, and are you not servants of Saul?

Goliath uses this question to mock the Israelites. When he says that he is a Philistine, he is implying that he is strong. Alternate translation: "I am a great Philistine, and you are merely servants of Saul."

1 Samuel 17:9

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 17:10

I defy the ranks of Israel

"I defy the army of Israel"

1 Samuel 17:11

all Israel

This refers to the Israelite soldiers who were there.

they were discouraged and greatly afraid

The words "discouraged" and "greatly afraid" mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of their fear.

1 Samuel 17:12

He had eight sons

"He" refers to Jesse.

Jesse was an old man ... very old among men

The two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis.

1 Samuel 17:13

second to him Abinadab, and the third Shammah

"Abinadab the second born, and Shammah the third born." This phrase shows birth order.

1 Samuel 17:14

The three oldest

The implied information is that these are the sons of Jesse. Alternate translation: "The three oldest sons of Jesse"

1 Samuel 17:15

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 17:16

For forty days

"For 40 days"

to present himself for battle

"to show that he was ready to fight"

1 Samuel 17:17

ephah

An ephah is a unit of measurement equal to about 22 liters.

1 Samuel 17:18

the captain of their thousand

"the captain of your brothers' thousand." Possible meanings are 1) the word "thousand" represents the exact amount of soldiers that this captain led. Alternate translation: "the captain of your brothers' unit of 1,000 soldiers" or 2) the word translated as "thousand" does not represent exact number, but is the name of a large military division. Alternate translation: "the captain of your brothers' military division"

Look to the well-being of your brothers

"Check and find out how your brothers are doing"

1 Samuel 17:19

all the men of Israel

"all the soldiers of Israel"

the Valley of Elah

This is the name of a place. See how you translated it in [1 Samuel 17:2]

1 Samuel 17:20

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 17:21

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 17:22

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 17:23

Goliath by name

"whose name was Goliath"

came out of the ranks of the Philistines

"stepped forward from the Philistines' battle line"

1 Samuel 17:24

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 17:25

Have you seen this man who has come up?

The soldiers were saying this to draw one another's attention to the man Goliath. Alternate translation: "Look at this man who has come up!"

The king

This refers to the king of Israel. Alternate translation: "Our king"

his daughter

This refers to the king's daughter.

to him ... his father's house

The words "him" and "his" refer to the man who kills Goliath.

will make his father's house free from taxation in Israel

The word "house" refers to the household or family. Alternate translation: "will no longer require his family to pay taxes"

1 Samuel 17:26

takes away the disgrace from Israel

This can be expressed with the verb "disgrace."
Alternate translation: "stops Israel from being disgraced" or "stops him from disgracing Israel"

Who is this uncircumcised Philistine that he should defy the armies of the living God?

David said this to show his anger that this Philistine was defying God's army. Alternate translation: "This uncircumcised Philistine certainly has no power that he should defy the armies of the living God!"

this uncircumcised Philistine

This phrase is an insult and indicates that Goliath does not belong to the living God.

1 Samuel 17:27

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 17:28

Eliab's anger was kindled against David

Here anger is spoken of as if it were a fire that could be kindled. Alternate translation: "Eliab became angry with David"

Why did you come down here?

Eliab uses this question to show that he is angry that David came down. He was probably implying that David did not have a good reason for coming. Alternate translation: "You had no good reason to come here"

With whom have you left those few sheep in the wilderness?

Eliab uses this question to insult David by making his work seem unimportant and by accusing him of not taking care of his father's sheep. Alternate translation: "You simply had the responsibility of watching over a few sheep in the wilderness. You could not even carry out that simple responsibility!"

your pride, and the mischief in your heart

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis.

1 Samuel 17:29

What have I done now? Was it not just a question?

David used these questions to express his frustration and to justify himself. Alternate translation: "I have done nothing wrong. I was only asking a question!"

1 Samuel 17:30

He turned away from him

"He" refers to David and the word "him" refers to Eliab.

1 Samuel 17:31

When the words that David said were heard

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When the soldiers heard what David said"

1 Samuel 17:32

Let no man's heart fail

The heart failing represents being terrified and losing confidence. Alternate translation: "Do not let anyone be terrified" or "Do not let anyone lose their confidence"

your servant will go

David spoke of himself as "your servant" to show respect to Saul. Alternate translation: "I, your servant, will go"

1 Samuel 17:33

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 17:34

Your servant used to shepherd his father's sheep

David spoke of himself as "your servant" to show respect to Saul. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 17:32]

used to shepherd his father's sheep

"used to take care of his father's sheep"

a bear

A bear is a large animal with thick fur and long claws and that walks on four legs but can stand on two legs as a person does.

1 Samuel 17:35

chased after him and attacked him

Here "him" refers to the lion or bear. Some languages would use the word "it" instead of "him."

rescued it out of his mouth

Here "it" refers to the lamb.

he rose up against me

Here "rose up against" is an idiom that refers to attacking. Alternate translation: "it attacked me"

caught him by his beard

The "beard" refers to the lion's mane or the hair on the bear's face.

1 Samuel 17:36

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to King Saul.

This uncircumcised Philistine

This phrase is an insult and indicates that Goliath does not belong to the living God. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 17:26.

will be like one of them

David is saying that he will be able to kill the Philistine just as he was able to kill the lion and bear.

1 Samuel 17:37

from the paw of the lion and from the paw of the bear
Bears and lions use their paws when they attack, so the word "paw" represents the attack. Alternate translation: "from the attack of the lion and from the attack of the bear" or "from the lion and the bear"

the hand of this Philistine

The Philistine's hand represents his power in fighting. Alternate translation: "the power of this Philistine" or "the Philistine"

1 Samuel 17:38

coat of chainmail

a flexible piece of body armor covered with protective scales or small plates

1 Samuel 17:39

his sword on his armor

"Saul's sword on the armor"

1 Samuel 17:40

his staff in his hand

Here "his" refers to David.

His sling was in his hand

A sling is a weapon for throwing stones.

1 Samuel 17:41

with his shield bearer in front of him

"and his shield bearer walked in front of him"

1 Samuel 17:42

he despised him

"he hated him"

and ruddy

"and healthy looking"

1 Samuel 17:43

Am I a dog, that you come to me with sticks?

Here a dog represents a small animal that a person can easily kill. The word "sticks" refers to David's staff and shows Goliath's opinion that it is not a

good weapon. Goliath uses this question to accuse David of insulting him. Alternate translation: "You insult me by coming at me with mere sticks as if I were just a dog!"

1 Samuel 17:44

I will give your flesh to the birds of the heavens and to the wild animals of the field

Goliath speaks of killing David and leaving his body on the ground for the animals to eat it as if he were to give David's body to the animals. Alternate translation: "I will kill you, and the birds of the heavens and the wild animals of the field will eat your body"

birds of the heavens

"birds of the sky" or "birds"

1 Samuel 17:45

in the name of Yahweh

Here "name" represents God's power or authority. Alternate translation: "with the power of Yahweh" or "with the authority of Yahweh"

whom you have defied

"whom you have provoked" or "whom you have insulted"

1 Samuel 17:46

Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to Goliath.

I will give the dead bodies ... to the birds ... and to the wild beasts of the earth

David speaks of leading the Israelites in killing the Philistines and leaving their bodies on the ground for the animals to eat them as if he were to give their bodies to the animals. Alternate translation: "We Israelites will kill the Philistine army, and the birds of the heavens and the wild beasts of the earth will eat them"

all the earth may know

The word "earth" refers to the people on earth. Alternate translation: "all the people of the earth may know"

1 Samuel 17:47

Yahweh does not save with sword or spear

"Yahweh can save his people without anyone's sword or spear"

sword or spear

These words are a synecdoche for any weapon used in battle. Alternate translation: "the weapons people use"

the battle is Yahweh's

Winning the battle is spoken of as owning the battle. Alternate translation: "Yahweh always wins the battle" or "the victory belongs to Yahweh"

he will give you into our hand

Giving the Philistines into Israel's hand represents helping Israel to defeat the Philistines in battle. Alternate translation: "he will help us defeat you"

1 Samuel 17:48

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 17:49

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 17:50

David defeated ... He hit ... put him to death ... There was no sword in David's hand

Verse 50 is a summary of David's amazing victory over Goliath. The details about how he hit and killed Goliath are in 1 Samuel 17:49 and 17:51. Some languages do not use summary statements like this. In those situations, translators may restructure the verses as they are in the UDB.

1 Samuel 17:51

Then David ran and stood over the Philistine

David did this after Goliath fell to the ground in 1 Samuel 17:49.

took his sword

"took the Philistine's sword." Here the word "his" refers to Goliath.

1 Samuel 17:52

The dead Philistines lay along the way to Shaaraim

It can be stated clearly that the Israelites were killing the Philistines as they chased them. Alternate translation: "And they killed the Philistines as they chased them, and the bodies of the dead Philistines were on the ground along the way to Shaaraim"

1 Samuel 17:53

they plundered their camp

"the Israelites plundered the Philistines' camp"

1 Samuel 17:54

he put his armor in his tent

"he put Goliath's armor in his own tent"

1 Samuel 17:55

When Saul saw David

The conversation in 17:55-56 happened before David killed Goliath. Alternate translation: "When Saul had seen David" or "Earlier when Saul saw David"

go out against the Philistine

"go to fight against the Philistine"

whose son is this youth

"who is this youth's father"

As you live

This was a way of swearing that what he was about to say was true.

1 Samuel 17:56

whose son the boy is

"who the boy's father is"

1 Samuel 17:57

in his hand

Here "his" refers to David.

1 Samuel 17:58

Whose son are you

"Who is your father"

I am the son of your servant Jesse the Bethlehemite

"My father is your servant Jesse, the Bethlehemite"

your servant Jesse

David referred to his father as "your servant" to show that his father was faithful to King Saul.

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 17:2

Why had Saul and the men of Israel encamped in the valley of Elah?

They encamped in the valley of Elah to draw up their battle line to meet the Philistines.

1 Samuel 17:5

What was on Goliath's head?

He had a helmet of bronze on his head.

1 Samuel 17:6

What did Goliath carry between his shoulders?
He had a javelin of bronze between his shoulders.

1 Samuel 17:8

Whom did Goliath say the ranks of Israel served?
Goliath said they were servants of Saul.

1 Samuel 17:9

What did Goliath say would happen to the ranks of Israel if their man killed him?
He said the Philistines would be their servants.

1 Samuel 17:11

When Saul and all Israel heard what the Philistine said, how did they feel?
They were discouraged and greatly afraid.

1 Samuel 17:13

Which of Jesse's sons had followed Saul to the battle?
The three oldest sons of Jesse had followed Saul to the battle.

1 Samuel 17:16

For how long and how often did the Philistine strong man come near to present himself for battle?
For forty days he came near morning and evening to present himself for battle.

1 Samuel 17:20

What was the army doing as David arrived at the camp?
The army was going out to the battlefield shouting the war cry.

1 Samuel 17:23

As David talked with his brothers who came out of the ranks of the Philistines?
The strong man, Goliath, came out of the ranks of the Philistines.

1 Samuel 17:25

What would the king do for the father's house of the man who killed Goliath?
The king would give the man great riches and make his father's house free from taxation in Israel.

1 Samuel 17:26

What did David say the man who killed the Philistine would take away from Israel?
The man who killed the Philistine would take away the disgrace from Israel.

1 Samuel 17:28

What did Eliab say was the mischief in David's heart?
He said that he knew David's pride, and that he came down so that he might see the battle.

1 Samuel 17:32

What did David tell Saul he would do so no man's heart needed to fail because of the Philistine?
David told Saul that he would go and fight with the Philistine.

1 Samuel 17:35

What did David do to the lion or bear that rose up against him?
He caught him by his beard, struck him, and killed him.

1 Samuel 17:36

Why did David say this uncircumcised Philistine will be like the lion or the bear he had killed earlier?
The Philistine had challenged the armies of the living God.

1 Samuel 17:39

Why was David not able to walk in the armor the king provided?
He had not trained with it.

1 Samuel 17:42

Why did the Philistine despise David when he saw him?
David was only a boy, and ruddy, with a handsome appearance.

1 Samuel 17:45

When the Philistine came with sword, spear and javelin, in what did David say he came?
David said that he came in the name of Yahweh of hosts, the God of the armies of Israel, whom the Philistine had defied.

1 Samuel 17:46

What did David say the earth would know because the dead bodies of the Philistines would be given to the birds and wild beasts?
All the earth would know that there is a God in Israel.

1 Samuel 17:48

What did David do when Goliath drew near to meet him?
David ran quickly toward the enemy to meet him.

1 Samuel 17:51

What did the Philistines do when they saw that their strong man was dead?
The Philistines fled.

1 Samuel 17:53

What did the people of Israel do as they returned from chasing the Philistines?
The people of Israel plundered the Philistine camp.

1 Samuel 17:57

What did David have in his hand when Abner brought him before Saul?
David had the head of the Philistine in his hand.

Chapter 18

¹ When he had finished speaking to Saul, the soul of Jonathan was bound to the soul of David, and Jonathan loved him as his own soul. ² Saul took David into his service that day; he did not let him return to his father's house. ³ Then Jonathan and David made a covenant of friendship because Jonathan loved him as his own soul. ⁴ Jonathan took off the robe that he was wearing and gave it to David with his armor, as well as his sword, bow, and belt. ⁵ David went out wherever Saul sent him, and he succeeded. Saul set him over the men of war. This was pleasing in the eyes of all the people and also in the sight of Saul's servants.

⁶ As they came home from defeating the Philistines, the women came from all the cities of Israel, singing and dancing, to meet King Saul, with tambourines, with joy, and with musical instruments. ⁷ The women sang one to another as they played. They sang:

"Saul has killed his thousands,
and David his ten thousands."

⁸ Saul was very angry, and this song displeased him. He said, "They have ascribed to David ten thousands, but they have ascribed only thousands to me. What more can he have but the kingship?" ⁹ Saul looked at David with suspicion from that day on.

¹⁰ The next day a harmful spirit from God rushed upon Saul and he prophesied within the house. So David played his instrument, as he did each day. Saul had a spear in his hand. ¹¹ Saul threw the spear, for he thought, "I will pin David to the wall." But David escaped from Saul's presence twice in this way. ¹² Saul was afraid of David, because Yahweh was with him, but was no longer with Saul. ¹³ So Saul removed him from his presence and appointed him a commander of a thousand. In this way David went out and came in before the people. ¹⁴ David was prospering in all his ways, for Yahweh was with him. ¹⁵ When Saul saw that he prospered, he stood in awe of him. ¹⁶ But all Israel and Judah loved David, for he went out and came in before them.

¹⁷ Then Saul said to David, "Here is my oldest daughter Merab. I will give her to you as a wife. Only be courageous for me and fight Yahweh's battles." For Saul thought, "Let not my hand be on him, but let the hand of the Philistines be on him." ¹⁸ David said to Saul, "Who am I, and who are my relatives, or my father's clan in Israel, that I should be son-in-law to the king?" ¹⁹ But at the time when Merab, Saul's daughter, should have been given to David, she was given to Adriel the Meholathite as a wife. ²⁰ But Michal, Saul's daughter, loved David. They told Saul, and this pleased him. ²¹ Then Saul thought, "I will give her to him, so that she can be a trap for him, and that the hand of the Philistines may be against him." So Saul said to David a second time, "You will be my son-in-law."

²² Saul commanded his servants, "Speak with David in private, and say, 'See, the king takes pleasure in you, and all his servants love you. Now then, become the king's son-in-law.'" ²³ So Saul's servants spoke these words to David. Then David said, "Is it a small matter to you to be the king's son-in-law, since I am a poor man, and lightly esteemed?" ²⁴ The servants of Saul reported to him the words which David spoke. ²⁵ Then Saul said, "Say this to David, 'The king does not desire any price for the bride except a hundred foreskins of the Philistines, to be avenged from the king's enemies.'" Now Saul thought to make David fall by the hand of the Philistines. ²⁶ When his servants told David these words, it pleased David to be the king's son-in-law. ²⁷ Before those days had expired, David went with his men and killed two hundred Philistines. David brought their foreskins, and they gave them in full number to the king, so that he might be the king's son-in-law. So Saul gave him Michal his daughter as his wife. ²⁸ When Saul saw, and he knew that Yahweh was with David, and that Michal, Saul's daughter, loved him, ²⁹ Saul was even more afraid of David. Saul was continually David's enemy.

³⁰ Then the princes of the Philistines came out for battle, and as often as they came out, David behaved more prudently than all the servants of Saul, so that his name was highly regarded.

1 Samuel 18 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the first chapter of a section explaining why Saul wants to kill David.

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetic song in 18:7.

Special concepts in this chapter

Saul is jealous of David's popularity

Saul's son, Jonathan, loves David. David is successful in battling the Philistines, and Saul is happy until the women give David more attention than they give him. He fears that David will replace him as king. This is potentially confusing because the author has already established that David will be the next king. It is probably that Saul feared David would kill him in order to be the next king sooner, or that he did not really believe David would be the next king. (See: love)

Jonathan's love of David

Some scholars believe Jonathan loved David as a man loves his wife. There is no reason to translate this as if Jonathan were a homosexual. Instead, treat this as a brotherly type of love.

1 Samuel 18:1

the soul of Jonathan was bound to the soul of David

Very close friendship is spoken of as if it were binding together the souls of two people. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jonathan felt a strong affection towards David" or "Jonathan committed himself to David"

Jonathan loved him as his own soul

Here "loved" refers to the love between friends, not romantic love. The word "soul" represents the person or the person's life. Alternate translation: "Jonathan loved David as much as he loved himself" or "Jonathan loved David as he loved his own life"

1 Samuel 18:2

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 18:3

Jonathan loved him as his own soul

Here "loved" refers to the love between friends, not romantic love. The word "soul" represents the person or the person's life. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 18:1]

1 Samuel 18:4

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 18:5

he succeeded

"he prospered"

This was pleasing in the eyes of all the people and also in the sight of Saul's servants

The phrases "in the eyes of" and "in the sight of" mean the same thing. The opinion of the people is spoken of as something that they view as either good or bad. Alternate translation: "This was pleasing in the opinions of all the people and of Saul's servants" or "This pleased all the people and Saul's servants"

1 Samuel 18:6

from all the cities of Israel

This is generalization that emphasizes the great number of women who came from many cities. Alternate translation: "from many of the cities throughout Israel"

with tambourines, with joy, and with musical instruments

"joyfully playing tambourines and other musical instruments"

with tambourines

A "tambourine" is a small handheld drum.

1 Samuel 18:7

his thousands ... his ten thousands

"thousands of enemy soldiers ... ten thousand enemy soldiers"

David his ten thousands

The verb may be supplied from the previous line. Alternate translation: "David has killed his ten thousands"

1 Samuel 18:8

They have ascribed
"They have credited"

What more can he have but the kingship?
This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "The only thing left for him to have is the kingship."

1 Samuel 18:9

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 18:10

a harmful spirit from God
Here "harmful spirit" may refer to either "a spirit that causes trouble" or "an evil spirit." See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 16:15.

a harmful spirit from God rushed upon Saul
The phrase "rushed upon" means the harmful spirit influenced Saul. In this case it means it caused Saul to be troubled and act crazy. See how you translated a similar phrase in 1 Samuel 10:6.

he prophesied
"a spirit caused him to speak." Here it appears that what Saul said was of no benefit to the hearers, so some modern English versions read, "he spoke words that made no sense."

1 Samuel 18:11

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 18:12

Yahweh was with him
"Yahweh was with David"

1 Samuel 18:13

So Saul removed him from his presence
"So Saul removed David from his presence"

a commander of a thousand
Possible meanings are 1) the word "thousand" represents the exact amount of soldiers that he would lead. Alternate translation: "a commander of 1,000 soldiers" or 2) the word translated as "thousand" does not represent exact number, but is the name of a large military division. Alternate translation: "a commander of a large military division" See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Samuel 17:18]

David went out and came in before the people
Here "the people" refers to the soldiers under David's command. The phrases "went out" and "came in" are idioms that refer to leading the people into battle and leading them home from battle. Alternate translation: "David led his soldiers into battle and led them home from battle"

1 Samuel 18:14

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 18:15

he stood in awe of him
Here "stood in awe" is an idiom that means to fear. Alternate translation: "he feared David"

1 Samuel 18:16

all Israel and Judah loved David
Here "Israel and Judah" represent the people of all of the tribes. Alternate translation: "all the people in Israel and Judah loved David"

went out and came in before them
The phrases "went out" and "came in" are idioms that refer to leading the people into battle and leading them home from battle. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 18:13]

1 Samuel 18:17

Let not my hand be on him, but let the hand of the Philistines be on him
Harming someone is spoken of as if it were placing one's hand on that person. Here, Saul is referring to killing David. Alternate translation: "I will not be the one to kill him; I will let the Philistines kill him"

1 Samuel 18:18

Who am I, and who are my relatives, or my father's clan in Israel ... to the king?
David uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that he is not worthy of being Saul's son-in-law. Alternate translation: "I am nobody and neither my relatives nor my father's family are important enough in Israel ... to the king."

son-in-law to the king
"husband of the king's daughter"

1 Samuel 18:19

when Merab, Saul's daughter, should have been given to David
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when Saul should have given his daughter Merab to David"

she was given to Adriel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Saul gave her to Adriel"

1 Samuel 18:20

Michal ... loved David

Here "loved" means she had romantic feelings for David.

They told Saul

Here "they" refers to people who found out about Michal's feelings, not to David and Michal.

1 Samuel 18:21

that the hand of the Philistines may be against him

Harming someone is spoken of as if it were placing one's hand on that person. Here, Saul is referring to killing David. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Samuel 18:17]

You will be my son-in-law

"You will be the husband of my daughter"

1 Samuel 18:22

all his servants love you

"all of his servants admire you"

Now then

"For these reasons you should"

1 Samuel 18:23

Is it a small matter to you to be the king's son-in-law, since I am a poor man, and lightly esteemed?

David asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that he is not worthy to be the king's son-in-law. Alternate translation: "It is a great matter to be the king's son-in-law, and I am too poor and unimportant for that."

1 Samuel 18:24

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 18:25

The king does not desire any price for the bride except a hundred foreskins

This double negative emphasizes that a hundred foreskins is the only price that the king desires. The verb for the second phrase may be supplied from the first. Alternate translation: "The king desires only a hundred foreskins as price for the bride" or "The king does not desire any price for the bride; he desires only that you bring to him a hundred foreskins"

a hundred

100

foreskins

The foreskin is a fold of skin on a man's private part that is removed during circumcision.

to be avenged from the king's enemies

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to get revenge on the king's enemies"

to make David fall by the hand of the Philistines

Here "fall" means to die. The phrase "by the hand" is an idiom that tells us the means by which something will happen, in this case, David will be killed by the Philistines. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to have the Philistines kill David"

1 Samuel 18:26

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 18:27

two hundred Philistines

This can be rendered numerically. Alternate translation: "200 Philistines"

they gave them in full number to the king

"David and his men gave all of them to the king"

1 Samuel 18:28

Saul saw, and he knew

Here the words "saw" and "knew" share similar meanings and emphasize that Saul knew with certainty. Alternate translation: "Saul recognized"

Michal, Saul's daughter, loved him

Here "loved" means she had romantic feelings for David.

1 Samuel 18:29

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 18:30

behaved more prudently

Many modern English translations understand this phrase as a metonym for the success that his prudent behavior gave him, so they read, "had more success."

so that his name was highly regarded

Here "name" is a metonym for David. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that people greatly respected David"

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 18:1

How strongly was the soul of Jonathan bound to the soul of David?

Jonathan loved David as his own soul.

1 Samuel 18:4

What did Jonathan take off and give to David with his armor?

Jonathan took off the robe that he was wearing and gave it to David.

1 Samuel 18:5

Over whom did Saul set David?

Saul set him over the men of war.

1 Samuel 18:8

What had the singers' song ascribed to David, which displeased Saul?

They ascribed to David ten thousands, but they had ascribed only thousands to Saul.

1 Samuel 18:11

What did Saul think as he threw the spear at David?

Saul thought that he would pin David to the wall.

1 Samuel 18:14

Why did David prosper in all his ways?

David prospered for Yahweh was with him.

1 Samuel 18:17

Why did Saul think his hand would not need to be against David?

Saul thought the hand of the Philistines be against David.

1 Samuel 18:20

What did Saul think his daughter Michal would be for David if Saul gave her to him?

Saul thought she could be a trap for David.

1 Samuel 18:22

Where did Saul command his servants to speak with David about becoming the king's son-in-law?

He commanded his servants to speak with David in private.

1 Samuel 18:23

Why did David think he was not worthy to be the king's son-in-law?

He was a poor man, and lightly esteemed.

1 Samuel 18:25

What was the only dowry the king desired from David?

The king desired only one hundred foreskins of the Philistines.

1 Samuel 18:27

What did David and his men do that exceeded the king's dowry request?

David killed two hundred Philistines and brought their foreskins.

1 Samuel 18:30

How great was David's success, so his name was highly regarded?

David succeeded more than all the servants of Saul.

Chapter 19

¹ Saul said to Jonathan his son and to all his servants that they should kill David. But Jonathan, Saul's son, took great pleasure in David. ² So Jonathan told David, "Saul my father seeks to kill you. Therefore be on your guard in the morning and hide yourself in a secret place. ³ I will go out and stand beside my father in the field where you are, and I will speak with my father about you. If I learn anything, I will tell you." ⁴ Jonathan spoke well of David to Saul his father and said to him, "Do not let the king sin against his servant David. For he has not sinned against you, and his deeds have brought you good. ⁵ For he took his life in his hand and killed the Philistine. Yahweh brought about great salvation for all Israel. You saw it and rejoiced. Why would you sin against innocent blood by killing David for no reason?" ⁶ Saul listened to Jonathan. Saul swore, "As Yahweh lives, he will not be put to death." ⁷ Then Jonathan called David, and Jonathan told him all these things. Jonathan brought David to Saul, and he was in his presence as before.

⁸ There was war again, and David went out and fought with the Philistines and defeated them with a great slaughter. They fled before him. ⁹ A harmful spirit from Yahweh came on Saul as he sat in his house with his spear in his hand, and as David was playing his instrument. ¹⁰ Saul tried to pin David to the wall with the spear, but he slipped away from Saul's presence, so that Saul drove the spear into the wall. David fled and escaped that night. ¹¹ Saul sent messengers to David's house to watch him that he might kill him in the morning. Michal, David's wife, told him, "If you do not save your life tonight, tomorrow you will be killed." ¹² So Michal let David down through the window. He went and fled, and escaped. ¹³ Michal took a household idol and laid it in the bed. Then she put a pillow of goats' hair at its head, and covered it with the clothes. ¹⁴ When Saul sent messengers to take David, she said, "He is sick." ¹⁵ Then Saul sent the messengers to see David; he said, "Bring him up to me in the bed, so that I may kill him." ¹⁶ When the messengers came in, behold, the household idol was in the bed along with the pillow of goats' hair at its head. ¹⁷ Saul said to Michal, "Why have you deceived me and let my enemy go, so that he has escaped?" Michal answered Saul, "He said to me, 'Let me go. Why should I kill you?'"

¹⁸ Now David fled and escaped, and went to Samuel in Ramah and told him all that Saul had done to him. Then he and Samuel went and stayed in Naioth. ¹⁹ It was told to Saul, saying, "See, David is at Naioth in Ramah." ²⁰ Then Saul sent messengers to capture David. When they saw the company of the prophets prophesying, and Samuel standing as head over them, the Spirit of God came on the messengers of Saul, and they also prophesied. ²¹ When Saul was told this, he sent other messengers, and they also prophesied. So Saul sent messengers again the third time, and they also prophesied. ²² Then he also went to Ramah and came to the deep well that is in Seku. He asked, "Where are Samuel and David?" Someone said, "See, they are at Naioth in Ramah." ²³ Saul went to Naioth in Ramah. Then the Spirit of God came upon him, and as he went he prophesied until he came to Naioth in Ramah. ²⁴ He stripped off his clothes and also prophesied before Samuel. He lay naked all that day and all that night. This is why they ask, "Is Saul also among the prophets?"

1 Samuel 19 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

God protects David

Jonathan persuades Saul not to kill David, but Saul again becomes jealous and orders his servants to bring David to him to be killed. God uses Michal to save David. David flees to Samuel and they begin prophesying. When Saul sends servants to capture David, they begin prophesying. This causes Saul to go himself and he begins to prophesy. (See: jealous and save and prophet)

1 Samuel 19:1

to all his servants

Here "his" refers to Saul.

took great pleasure in David

Jonathan greatly enjoyed being with David.

1 Samuel 19:2

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 19:3

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 19:4

Do not let the king sin against his servant

Jonathan speaks as if Saul is another person to show Saul that Jonathan respects Saul. Alternate translation: "Do not sin against your servant"

1 Samuel 19:5

he took his life in his hand

Here "life in his hand" is an idiom that refers to risking his life. Alternate translation: "he risked his life"

Yahweh brought about great salvation

The words "brought about great salvation" is a metonym for allowing the Israelites to win the battle. Alternate translation: "Yahweh gave us a great victory"

Why would you sin against innocent blood by killing David for no reason?

Jonathan asks this question to rebuke Saul. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not sin against innocent blood and kill David without cause."

sin against innocent blood

Here "blood" is a metonym for the life of an innocent person. Alternate translation: "commit the sin of murder"

1 Samuel 19:6

he will not be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will not put him to death" or "I will not kill him" or "I will certainly keep him alive"

1 Samuel 19:7

he was in his presence

David was in Saul's presence.

1 Samuel 19:8

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 19:9

A harmful spirit from Yahweh

Here "harmful spirit" may refer to either "a spirit that causes trouble" or "an evil spirit." See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 16:14.

1 Samuel 19:10

pin David to the wall with the spear

throw his spear so it would go through David and into the wall

1 Samuel 19:11

he might kill him

"Saul might kill David"

Michal ... told him

Michal told David

If you do not save your life

Here "save your life" is an idiom that refers to escape. Alternate translation: "If you do not escape"

you will be killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone will kill you"

1 Samuel 19:12

General Information:

Michal helps David escape King Saul. She uses a household idol to make David's bed look like he is sleeping in it.

1 Samuel 19:13

she put a pillow of goats' hair at its head, and covered it with the clothes

Possible meanings are 1) the head of the idol was lying on the goat's hair pillow and Michal dressed the idol in David's clothes or 2) Michal used David's clothes as a blanket to completely cover the idol and made the "pillow" of goat's hair look like David's hair sticking out from under the blanket of clothes.

1 Samuel 19:14

General Information:

Saul acts out his desire to kill David.

take David

"take David back to Saul"

she said

Here "she" refers to Michal.

1 Samuel 19:15

Bring him up to me in the bed

The reason why the men thought David was in bed can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "If he really is too sick to come to me, bring me the bed with him in it"

1 Samuel 19:16

pillow of goats' hair

See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 19:13.

behold

The word "behold" here shows that the messengers were surprised by what they saw.

1 Samuel 19:17

Why have you deceived me and let my enemy go, so that he has escaped?

Possible meanings are 1) Saul really wants to know why Michal did what she did or 2) Saul uses this question to rebuke Michal. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not have deceived me and let my enemy go, so that he has escaped."

Let me go. Why should I kill you?

Although David did not actually say this, Michal tells Saul that David threatened her with this question. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I will kill you if you do not help me to escape."

1 Samuel 19:18

General Information:

David flees to Samuel.

Now

This word is used here to show that the writer has started to tell a new part of the story.

1 Samuel 19:19

It was told to Saul

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone told Saul"

See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

1 Samuel 19:20

standing as head over them

Here "head" refers to a position of authority. Alternate translation: "acting as their leader"

1 Samuel 19:21

When Saul was told this

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When someone told Saul this"

1 Samuel 19:22

Ramah ... Seku ... Naioth

These are place names.

1 Samuel 19:23

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 19:24

This is why they ask, "Is Saul also among the prophets?"

This became a proverb among the Israelites. Apparently people said this to express surprise when a person unexpectedly did something that he had not done before. The implied meaning of the question can be stated explicitly. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 10:12]

they ask

Here "they" refers to people in general. The question became a proverb among the people.

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 19:2

Why did Jonathan tell David to be on his guard and hide himself?

Saul was seeking to kill David.

1 Samuel 19:4

What did Jonathan tell Saul that David's deeds brought to him?

Jonathan told Saul that David's deeds had brought Saul good.

1 Samuel 19:6

What did Saul swear after listening to Jonathan?

Saul swore that he would not put David to death.

1 Samuel 19:8

What happened when David again went out and fought with the Philistines?

David defeated the Philistines with a great slaughter.

1 Samuel 19:11

Why did Saul send messengers to David's house to watch him?

Saul wanted to kill him in the morning.

1 Samuel 19:12

How did Michal help David to flee and escape?

Michal let David down through the window.

1 Samuel 19:15

What did Saul plan to do when he ordered for David to be brought to him in the bed?

Saul planned to kill him.

1 Samuel 19:16

What did Michal use at the head of the household idol in the bed to make it look like David?

She put a pillow of goats' hair at the idol's head.

1 Samuel 19:18

When David fled and escaped, who did he go to see in Ramah?

David went to Samuel.

1 Samuel 19:20

What happened to the messengers of Saul that caused them to prophesy?

The Spirit of God came on them.

1 Samuel 19:21

After sending messengers for a third time what did Saul do?

Saul also went to Ramah.

1 Samuel 19:22

After sending messengers for a third time what did Saul do?

Saul also went to Ramah.

1 Samuel 19:24

How long did Saul lay naked before Samuel?

He lay naked all that day and all that night.

Chapter 20

¹ Then David fled from Naioth in Ramah and came and said to Jonathan, "What have I done? What is my iniquity? What is my sin before your father, that he seeks to take my life?" ² Jonathan said to David, "Far from it; you will not die. My father does nothing either great or small without telling it to me. Why should my father hide this thing from me? It is not so." ³ Yet David vowed again and said, "Your father knows well that I have found favor in your eyes. He has said, 'Do not let Jonathan know this, or he will be grieved.' But as truly as Yahweh lives, and as you live, there is but a step between me and death." ⁴ Then Jonathan said to David, "Whatever you say, I will do for you." ⁵ David said to Jonathan, "Tomorrow is the new moon, and I ought to sit down to eat with the king. But let me go, so that I may hide myself in the field until the third day at evening." ⁶ If your father misses me at all, then say, 'David earnestly asked leave of me that he might run to Bethlehem his city, because it is the yearly sacrifice there for all the clan.' ⁷ If he says, 'It is well,' your servant will have peace. But if he is very angry, then know that he has decided on evil. ⁸ Therefore deal kindly with your servant. For you have brought your servant into a covenant of Yahweh with you. But if there is iniquity in me, kill me yourself; for why then should you bring me to your father?" ⁹ Jonathan said, "Far be it from you! If I learned my father decided harm to come upon you, would I not tell you?" ¹⁰ Then David said to Jonathan, "Who will tell me if by chance your father should answer you roughly?" ¹¹ Jonathan said to David, "Come, let us go out into the field." So they both went out into the field.

¹² Jonathan said to David, "May Yahweh, the God of Israel, be witness. When I have questioned my father around this time tomorrow, or the third day, see, if there is good will toward David, will I not then send to you and make it known to you?" ¹³ If it pleases my father to do you harm, may Yahweh do to Jonathan and more also if I do not make it known to you and send you away, so that you may go in peace. May Yahweh be with you, as he has been with my father. ¹⁴ If I am still alive, will you not show me the covenant faithfulness of Yahweh, that I may not die? ¹⁵ Do not cut off your covenant faithfulness from my house forever—not even when Yahweh cuts off every one of the enemies of David from the face of the earth." ¹⁶ So Jonathan made a covenant with the house of David and said, "May Yahweh require an accounting from the hand of the enemies of David."

¹⁷ Jonathan made David vow again because of the love that he had for him, because he loved him as he loved his own soul. ¹⁸ Then Jonathan said to him, "Tomorrow is the new moon. You will be missed because your seat will be empty." ¹⁹ When you have stayed three days, go down quickly and come to the place where you hid yourself when this matter began, and stay by the stone Ezel. ²⁰ I will shoot three arrows to the side of it, as though I were shooting at a target. ²¹ Then I will send my young man and say to him, 'Go find the arrows.' If I say to the young boy, 'Look, the arrows are on this side of you; get them,' then come; for there will be safety for you and not harm, as Yahweh lives. ²² "But if I say to the young man, 'Look, the arrows are beyond you,' then go your way, for Yahweh has sent you away. ²³ As for the agreement of which you and I have spoken, see, Yahweh is between you and me forever."

²⁴ So David hid himself in the field. When the new moon came, the king sat down to eat food. ²⁵ The king sat on his seat, as usual, on the seat by the wall. Jonathan stood up, and Abner sat by Saul's side. But David's place was empty. ²⁶ Yet Saul did not say anything that day, because he thought, "Something has happened to him. He is not clean; surely he is not clean." ²⁷ But on the second day, the day after the new moon, David's place was empty. Saul said to Jonathan his son, "Why has the son of Jesse not come to the meal either yesterday or today?" ²⁸ Jonathan answered Saul, "David earnestly asked permission from me to go to Bethlehem. ²⁹ He said, 'Please let me go. For our family has a sacrifice in the city, and my brother has ordered me to be there. Now, if I have found favor in your eyes, please let me go and see my brothers.' For this reason he has not come to the king's table."

³⁰ Then Saul's anger burned against Jonathan, and he said to him, "You son of a perverse, rebellious woman! Do I not know that you have chosen the son of Jesse to your own shame, and to the shame of your mother's nakedness?" ³¹ For as long as the son of Jesse lives on the earth, neither you nor your kingdom will be established. Now then, send and bring him to me, for he must surely die." ³² Jonathan answered Saul his father, "For what reason should he be put to death? What has he done?" ³³ Then Saul threw his spear at him to kill him. So Jonathan knew that his father was determined to put David to death. ³⁴

Jonathan got up from the table in fierce anger and ate no food the second day of the month, for he was grieved over David, because his father had dishonored him.

³⁵ In the morning, Jonathan went out into the field to the appointment with David, and a young man was with him. ³⁶ He said to his young man, "Run and find the arrows that I shoot." As the young man ran, he shot an arrow beyond him. ³⁷ When the young man came to the place where the arrow that Jonathan shot had landed, Jonathan called after the young man, and said, "Is not the arrow beyond you?" ³⁸ Then Jonathan called after the young man, "Hurry, be quick, do not stay!" So Jonathan's young man gathered up the arrows and came to his master. ³⁹ But the young man did not know anything. Only Jonathan and David knew the matter. ⁴⁰ Jonathan gave his weapons to his young man and said to him, "Go, take them to the city." ⁴¹ As soon as the young man was gone, David stood up from behind the mound, lay facedown on the ground, and bowed himself three times. They kissed one another and wept together, with David weeping the more. ^[1]⁴² Jonathan said to David, "Go in peace, because we have both sworn in the name of Yahweh and said, 'May Yahweh be between you and me, and between my descendants and your descendants, forever.'" Then David stood up and left, and Jonathan returned to the city.

Footnotes

20:41 ^[1]The copies of the ancient Hebrew text read,

1 Samuel 20 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Jonathan warns David

David tells Jonathan that Saul is still trying to kill him. Jonathan promises to find out if this is true. When David misses dinner two consecutive days, Saul asks about him. Jonathan says that David went home for an annual sacrifice. Saul gets angry at Jonathan, telling him he will never be king unless they kill David. Saul throws his spear at Jonathan. Jonathan warns David to run away, but first they both promise to always be friends. It was usually a king's son who became king after his death in the ancient Near East.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

David uses a powerful metaphor and an oath to impress Jonathan with the danger he is in: "But as truly as Yahweh lives, and as you live, there is but a step between me and death."

1 Samuel 20:1

What have I done? What is my iniquity? What is my sin before your father, that he seeks to take my life?

These three questions mean basically the same thing. David uses them to emphasize that he has done nothing wrong to Saul. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I have done nothing wrong. I have not committed any iniquity. I have not sinned against your father. He has no reason to take my life."

that he seeks to take my life?

Here "take my life" is an idiom for "kill me."

1 Samuel 20:2

Far from it

Here "far from it" is an idiom that refers to that it is not true. Alternate translation: "This is certainly not true"

nothing either great or small

The words "great or small" include everything in between. Alternate translation: "nothing at all"

Why should my father hide this thing from me?

Jonathan uses this question to emphasize that Saul would have told him if he planned to kill David. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "My father has no reason to hide this thing from me!" or "If this thing were true, my father would certainly let me know!"

It is not so
"It is not true"

1 Samuel 20:3

I have found favor in your eyes
Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: "I have pleased you" or "you consider me favorably"

he will be grieved
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "this will grieve him" or "he will be very sad"

there is but a step between me and death
Here "step between me and death" is an idiom that refers to being very close to death. Alternate translation: "I am very close to death"

1 Samuel 20:4

General Information:
David proposes a test against King Saul to Jonathan.

1 Samuel 20:5

Tomorrow is the new moon
On the first of every month the people would celebrate and offer sacrifices to God.

until the third day at evening
"until the evening of the day after tomorrow"

1 Samuel 20:6

Connecting Statement:
David continues to describe the test he proposes.

asked leave of me
"asked me if I would allow him to leave"

1 Samuel 20:7

he says ... he is ... he has decided
The word "he" refers to Saul.

your servant will have peace
David speaks of himself as if he were another person to show that he respects Jonathan. Alternate translation: "I, your servant, will have peace"

1 Samuel 20:8

Connecting Statement:
David continues speaking to Jonathan.

with your servant ... have brought your servant
David speak of himself in the third person as a form of humility. Alternate translation: "with me, your

servant ... have brought me, your servant" or "with me ... have brought me"

you have brought your servant into a covenant of Yahweh with you

What it was that the two men agreed on can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "Yahweh heard you when you made a solemn agreement with me that you and I will always be good friends"

for why then should you bring me to your father?
This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "then there would be no reason for you to bring me to your father"

1 Samuel 20:9

Far be it from you!
This is an idiom that means it will never happen to you. Alternate translation: "This will never happen to you!"

would I not tell you?
This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I would certainly tell you."

1 Samuel 20:10

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 20:11

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 20:12

see
"look" or "listen" or "pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

if there is good will
"if my father wants to do good things for you"

will I not then send to you and make it known to you?
Jonathan uses this question to emphasize that he will tell David if Saul intends to harm him. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "then I will certainly send to you and make it known to you"

1 Samuel 20:13

may Yahweh do to Jonathan and more also
This is an idiom. Jonathan uses this oath for emphasis and speaks of himself as if he were another person. Alternate translation: "may Yahweh do to me whatever harm my father intends to do to you, and even more than that"

1 Samuel 20:14

General Information:

Jonathan asks David not to completely kill all his offspring so that a remnant will remain.

will you not show me the covenant faithfulness of Yahweh, that I may not die?

Jonathan asks this question to confirm that David will do this. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "please show me the covenant faithfulness of Yahweh, that I may not die"

show me the covenant faithfulness of Yahweh

The abstract noun "faithfulness" can be stated as "faithful." Possible meanings for "of Yahweh" are 1) "be faithful to me as Yahweh is faithful" or 2) "be faithful to me as Yahweh requires"

1 Samuel 20:15

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 20:16

house of David

The word "house" is a metonym for the people who live in the house. Alternate translation: "David's family"

May Yahweh require an accounting from the hand of the enemies of David

The hand is a synecdoche for the person. Possible meanings are 1) "May Yahweh use David's enemies to punish David if David breaks this promise" or 2) "May Yahweh destroy the enemies of David."

1 Samuel 20:17

he loved him as he loved his own soul

Here "his own soul" refers to himself. Alternate translation: "Jonathan loved David as much as he loved himself"

1 Samuel 20:18

You will be missed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "My father will miss you"

1 Samuel 20:19

the stone Ezel

"Ezel" was the name of the stone. Alternate translation: "the stone that people call Ezel"

1 Samuel 20:20

Connecting Statement:

Jonathan continues to speak to David.

to the side of it

Here the word "it" refers to the stone by which David was to hide.

1 Samuel 20:21

my young man ... the young boy

These refer to the same person.

Look

"Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

then come

"then you, David, come"

1 Samuel 20:22

Connecting Statement:

Jonathan continues to speak to David.

1 Samuel 20:23

see, Yahweh

Possible meanings are 1) "we know that Yahweh" or 2) "pay attention because this is important: Yahweh."

Yahweh is between you and me

Possible meanings are 1) "Yahweh is a witness between you and me" or "Yahweh will be watching how we treat each other" or 2) "May Yahweh be a witness between you and me" or "May Yahweh watch how we treat each other"

1 Samuel 20:24

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 20:25

Jonathan stood up

Some ancient copies have "Jonathan sat across from him."

1 Samuel 20:26

He is not clean; surely he is not clean

According to the law of Moses, a person who is ceremonially unclean is not to participate in the feast until the priest declares that he is clean. Saul repeats this phrase as if he is trying to convince himself.

1 Samuel 20:27

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 20:28

asked permission from me to go
"asked me to allow him to go"

1 Samuel 20:29

if I have found favor in your eyes
Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 20:3]

the king's table
Jonathan speaks of Saul as if he is another person to show that he respects Saul. Alternate translation: "your table"

1 Samuel 20:30

Saul's anger burned against Jonathan
Here "anger burned" is a metonym that refers to becoming very angry. Alternate translation: "Saul became very angry with Jonathan"

You son of a perverse, rebellious woman!
This is an idiom. Saul uses this phrase as a harsh rebuke to Jonathan and his concern for David. Alternate translation: "You stupid son of a prostitute" or "You stupid traitor"

Do I not know that you have chosen the son of Jesse ... mother's nakedness?
Saul uses this question to emphasize that he knows that Jonathan and David are friends. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I know that you have chosen the son of Jesse ... mother's nakedness."

to the shame of your mother's nakedness
Here "mother's nakedness" is an idiom that refers to the mother who gave birth to you. Alternate translation: "to the shame of your mother who gave birth to you"

1 Samuel 20:31

neither you nor your kingdom will be established
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you will not become king and will not establish your kingdom"

1 Samuel 20:32

For what reason should he be put to death? What has he done?
Jonathan is trying to get Saul to think carefully about what he is doing. This can be translated as a statement, and the words "should he be put to death" can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "You have no good reason to put him to death. He has done nothing wrong." or "You have no good reason to kill him. He has done nothing wrong."

1 Samuel 20:33

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 20:34

the second day of the month
This "second" is an ordinal number which refers to two. Alternate translation: "the second day of the new moon festival"

he was grieved over David
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he was grieving over David"

had dishonored him
Here "him" refers to David.

1 Samuel 20:35

a young man was with him
Here "him" refers to Jonathan.

1 Samuel 20:36

he shot an arrow beyond him
"Jonathan shot an arrow beyond the young man"

1 Samuel 20:37

Is not the arrow beyond you?
Jonathan uses this question to emphasize that the arrow is farther ahead of the young man. The uses of litotes also emphasizes this. The rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should know that the arrow is beyond you." or "The arrow is far beyond you."

1 Samuel 20:38

called after the young man, "Hurry"
"called out to the young man, who was running away from him, 'Hurry'"

1 Samuel 20:39

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 20:40

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 20:41

the mound
It seems that David had hidden behind a pile of earth or stones.

lay facedown on the ground, and bowed himself three times.

David bowed before Jonathan, who was still the King's son, worthy of such respect. Also, this was the last time David met with Jonathan.

1 Samuel 20:42

May Yahweh be between you and me

Possible meanings are 1) "Yahweh is a witness between you and me" or "Yahweh will be watching how we treat each other" or 2) "May Yahweh be a witness between you and me" or "May Yahweh watch how we treat each other." See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 20:23.

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 20:2

What did Jonathan say his father did not do without telling him?

He said that his father did nothing either great or small without telling it to him.

1 Samuel 20:3

How close did David say he was to death?

He said that there was but a step between him and death.

1 Samuel 20:5

What did David ask to do until the third day at evening?

David asked to hide in the field until the third day at evening.

1 Samuel 20:6

What reason did David tell Jonathan to give Saul if Saul missed him?

He said to tell Saul that he went to Bethlehem his city, because it is the yearly sacrifice there for the whole family.

1 Samuel 20:8

Why did David ask Jonathan to deal kindly with him as his servant?

Jonathan had brought David, his servant, into a covenant of Yahweh with him.

1 Samuel 20:11

Where did Jonathan say to go to continue their discussion?

He told David to go with him out into the field.

1 Samuel 20:13

Why did Jonathan want to make his father's response known to David and send him away?

Jonathan promises to make it known to David so that David could go in peace.

1 Samuel 20:17

Why did Jonathan make David vow again to him?

He made David vow again because of the love that he had for him.

1 Samuel 20:21

Who does Jonathan say he would send to find the arrows he shot?

He said he would send a young man to find the arrows.

1 Samuel 20:24

When the new moon came, what did the king sit down to do?

The king sat down to eat food.

1 Samuel 20:26

What did Saul think could have happened to David to make him absent from the feast?

Saul thought David was not clean.

1 Samuel 20:29

Why does Jonathan say David had to attend his family's sacrifice?

He said David's brother had ordered him to be there.

1 Samuel 20:30

How does Saul describe Jonathan's mother in his burning anger?

He called him the son of a wicked and rebellious woman.

1 Samuel 20:34

Why was Jonathan grieved over David?

He was grieved over David because his father had dishonored him.

1 Samuel 20:36

Where did Jonathan shoot the arrow as the young man ran?

Jonathan shot an arrow beyond the young man.

1 Samuel 20:42

What did Jonathan do when David stood up and left?

Jonathan returned to the city.

Chapter 21

¹ Then David came to Nob to see Ahimelek the priest. Ahimelek came to meet David trembling and said to him, "Why are you alone and have no one with you?" ² David said to Ahimelek the priest, "The king has sent me on a mission and has said to me, 'Let no one know anything about the business I am sending you, and what I have commanded you.' I have directed the young men to a certain place." ³ Now then what do you have on hand? Give me five loaves of bread, or whatever is here." ⁴ The priest answered David and said, "There is no ordinary bread on hand, but there is holy bread—if the young men have kept themselves from women." ⁵ David answered the priest, "Surely women have been kept from us for the past three days, as usual when I set out. The things belonging to the young men have been set apart even on ordinary missions. How much more today will what they have be set apart!" ⁶ So the priest gave him the bread that was set apart. For there was no bread there except the bread of the presence, which was removed from before Yahweh, in order to put hot bread in its place on the day it was taken away.

⁷ Now one of the servants of Saul was there that day, detained before Yahweh. His name was Doeg the Edomite, the chief of Saul's shepherds. ⁸ David said to Ahimelek, "Now is there not here on hand any spear or sword? For I brought neither my sword nor my weapons with me, because the king's business was urgent." ⁹ The priest said, "The sword of Goliath the Philistine, whom you killed in the Valley of Elah, is here wrapped in a cloth behind the ephod. If you want to take that, take it, for there is no other weapon here." David said, "There is no other sword like that one; give it to me."

¹⁰ David arose and fled that day from Saul and went to Achish, the king of Gath. ¹¹ Achish's servants said to him, "Is not this David, the king of the land? Did they not sing to one another about him in dances,

'Saul has killed his thousands,
and David his ten thousands?'"

¹² David took these words to heart and was very afraid of Achish, the king of Gath. ¹³ He changed his behavior before them and pretended to be insane in their hands; he made marks on the doors of the gate and let his saliva run down his beard. ¹⁴ Then Achish said to his servants, "Look, you see the man is mad. Why have you brought him to me? ¹⁵ Do I lack madmen, so that you have brought this fellow to behave like one in my presence? Will this fellow really come into my house?"

1 Samuel 21 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetic song in 21:11.

Special concepts in this chapter

David and the chief priest

David visits the chief priest and lies to him about being on a special mission for the king. He asks for food, weapons, and prayer. The chief priest gives him some sacred bread and Goliath's sword and prays for him.

David and the king of Gath

David flees to Gath. The advisers to the king tell him that David is almost the king of Israel. David becomes afraid of the king and pretends to be insane.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical questions

The king of Gath's advisers use two rhetorical questions to warn him about how dangerous David could be: "Is not this David the king of the land? Did they not sing to one another about him in dances, 'Saul has killed his thousands, and David his ten thousands?'"

1 Samuel 21:1

Nob

This is the name of a place.

Ahimelek

This is a man's name.

trembling

shaking in fear

1 Samuel 21:2

on a mission

"to do work for him"

I have directed the young men to a certain place

"I have told the young men to go to another place, and I will meet them there later"

1 Samuel 21:3

Now then

David is starting a new part of the conversation.

what do you have on hand?

Here "on hand" is a metonym meaning "available."
Alternate translation: "What food do you have that you can give me?"

Give me five loaves of bread

This is a polite request.

1 Samuel 21:4

ordinary bread

bread that the priests have not used in worship

if the young men have kept themselves from women

This can be translated as a complete sentence by supplying the understood information. Alternate translation: "Your men may eat it if they have not slept with women recently"

1 Samuel 21:5

women have been kept from us

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "we have kept ourselves from women"

three days

"3 days"

when I set out

"when I begin a journey"

The things belonging to the young men have been set apart

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The young men have set what belongs to them apart"

How much more today will what they have be set apart

This is a statement, not a question. It can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "It is especially true today that they will set apart what they have"

1 Samuel 21:6

there was no bread there except the bread of the presence

This double negative emphasizes that the bread of the presence was the only bread that was there. Alternate translation: "the only bread that was there was the bread of the presence"

the bread that was set apart

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "the bread that the priests had set apart"

which was removed from before Yahweh, in order to put

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "which the priests had removed from before Yahweh so that they could put"

1 Samuel 21:7

detained before Yahweh

Possible meanings are that 1) Doeg had some religious work regarding Yahweh to do there. Alternate translation: "for some work before Yahweh" or 2) Yahweh detained Doeg there. Alternate translation: "because Yahweh had detained him there"

Doeg ... shepherds

You may need to say clearly that Doeg saw what David did. Alternate translation: "Doeg ... herdsmen, and he saw what Ahimelech did"

Doeg the Edomite

This is the name of a man from the land of Edom.

1 Samuel 21:8

Now is there not here on hand any spear or sword?

Here "on hand" is a metonym meaning "available." See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 21:3]

weapons

a general name for such things as swords, knives, bows and arrows, and spears

1 Samuel 21:9

Valley of Elah

This is the name of a place in Israel.

1 Samuel 21:10

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 21:11

Is not this David, the king of the land?

They were probably exaggerating when they said that David was king of the land. They used this question to imply that David was a powerful enemy and Achish should not let him stay there. Alternate translation: "You know that this is David, who is as dangerous as the king of the land"

Did they not sing to one another about him in dances, 'Saul ... thousands?'

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You know that when the people of the land were dancing, they sang to each other about him, 'Saul ... thousands.'"

1 Samuel 21:12

David took these words to heart

Here "took ... to heart" is a metonym to think seriously about what was said. Alternate translation: "David thought seriously about what the servants said"

1 Samuel 21:13

in their hands

Here "hands" are a synecdoche for the person. Alternate translation: "in their presence"

1 Samuel 21:14

Why have you brought him to me?

Possible meanings are 1) Achish demands that his servants explain why they have brought David to him or 2) Achish is scolding them with a rhetorical question. Alternate translation: "You should have known not to bring him to me."

1 Samuel 21:15

Do I lack madmen, so that you have brought this fellow to behave like one in my presence?

This rhetorical question is a rebuke. Alternate translation: "There are enough madmen here who waste my time. You should not have brought this fellow to behave like one in my presence."

Will this fellow really come into my house?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Do not allow this fellow to enter my house."

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 21:2

About what did David say the king told him to let no one know?

He said the king told him to let no one know anything about the business he was sending him, and what he had commanded him.

1 Samuel 21:4

What did the priest answer David about the bread on hand?

The priest said that there was no ordinary bread on hand, but there was holy bread.

1 Samuel 21:6

From where had the bread of the presence been removed?

The bread of the presence had been removed from before Yahweh.

1 Samuel 21:7

What was the work Doeg the Edomite did for Saul?

Doeg the Edomite was the chief of Saul's herdsmen.

1 Samuel 21:8

Why did David say he had no weapons with him?

He said that he had brought no weapons because the king's business was urgent.

1 Samuel 21:10

From whom was David fleeing when he went to Achish?

He was fleeing that day from Saul.

1 Samuel 21:13

What did David pretend when he changed his behavior before Achish?

He pretended to be insane in their hands.

1 Samuel 21:14

What did Achish ask his servants when he saw David was mad?

He asked them why they brought this madman to him.

Chapter 22

¹ So David left there and escaped to the cave of Adullam. When his brothers and all his father's house heard it, they went down there to him. ² Everyone who was in distress, everyone who was in debt, and everyone who was discontented—they all gathered to him. David became captain over them. There were about four hundred men with him.

³ Then David went from there to Mizpah in Moab. He said to the king of Moab, "Please let my father and my mother go out with you until I know what God will do for me." ^[1]⁴ He left them with the king of Moab. His father and mother stayed with him the whole time that David was in his stronghold. ⁵ Then the prophet Gad said to David, "Do not stay in your stronghold. Leave and go into the land of Judah." So David left there and went into the forest of Hereth.

⁶ Saul heard that David had been discovered, along with the men who were with him. Now Saul was sitting in Gibeah under the tamarisk tree on a hill, with his spear in his hand, and all his servants were standing around him. ⁷ Saul said to his servants who stood around him, "Listen now, people of Benjamin! Will the son of Jesse give every one of you fields and vineyards? Will he make you all captains of thousands and captains of hundreds, ⁸ in exchange for all of you plotting against me? None of you informs me when my son makes a covenant with the son of Jesse. None of you is sorry for me. None of you informs me that my son has incited my servant David against me. Today he hides and waits for me so he may attack me." ⁹ Then Doeg the Edomite, who stood by the servants of Saul, answered, "I saw the son of Jesse come to Nob, to Ahimelek son of Ahitub. ¹⁰ He prayed to Yahweh that he might help him, and he gave him provisions and the sword of Goliath the Philistine."

¹¹ Then the king sent someone to summon the priest Ahimelek son of Ahitub and all his father's house, the priests who were in Nob. All of them came to the king. ¹² Saul said, "Listen now, son of Ahitub." He answered, "Here I am, my master." ¹³ Saul said to him, "Why have you plotted against me, you and the son of Jesse, in that you have given him bread, and a sword, and have prayed to God that he might help him, so that he might rise up against me, to hide in secret, as he does today?" ¹⁴ Then Ahimelek answered the king and said, "Who among all your servants is so faithful as David, who is the king's son-in-law and is over your bodyguard, and is honored in your house? ¹⁵ Is today the first time I have prayed to God to help him? Far be it from me! Do not let the king impute anything to his servant or to all the house of my father. For your servant knows nothing of this whole matter." ¹⁶ The king replied, "You will surely die, Ahimelek, you and all your father's house." ¹⁷ The king said to the guard that stood around him, "Turn and kill the priests of Yahweh. Because their hand also is with David, and because they knew that he fled, but did not reveal it to me." But the servants of the king would not put out their hand to kill the priests of Yahweh. ¹⁸ Then the king said to Doeg, "Turn and kill the priests." So Doeg the Edomite turned and attacked the priests; he killed eighty-five persons who wore a linen ephod that day. ¹⁹ He also put to the sword Nob, the city of the priests, both men and women, children and infants, and its cattle, donkeys and sheep, he put to the sword.

²⁰ But one of the sons of Ahimelek son of Ahitub, named Abiathar, escaped and fled after David. ²¹ Abiathar told David that Saul had killed Yahweh's priests. ²² David said to Abiathar, "I knew on that day, when Doeg the Edomite was there, that he would surely tell Saul. I am responsible for every death in your father's family! ²³ Stay with me and do not be afraid. For the one who seeks your life seeks mine as well. You will be safe with me."

Footnotes

22:3 ^[1]Some ancient translations have,

1 Samuel 22 General Notes

Structure and formatting

There are two stories in this chapter: David gathering a group of followers and Saul having all the priests and their families killed. (See: priest)

Special concepts in this chapter

David assembles a force of unhappy people

David hides in the wilderness, and people in trouble come to him. Soon he has a force of 500 men. The prophet then tells him to leave the wilderness. (See: prophet)

Saul and the chief priest's family

Doeg tells Saul that Ahimelech the priest gave David food and a sword and prayed for him. Saul accuses the priests of encouraging David to rebel. This is a serious accusation because the priests are God's representatives and are rebelling against God's king if the accusation is true. Saul has the priests and all their families killed except those who escape to David. (See: highpriest)

1 Samuel 22:1

cave

a hollow space under the ground, generally opening into the side of a hill, large enough for people to enter

Adullam

This is the name of a town near the city of Gath.

heard it

heard that David had gone to hide in the cave

1 Samuel 22:2

Everyone who was in distress ... everyone who was discontented

This is a generalization. Alternate translation: "Many people who were distressed ... many people who were unhappy"

captain

military officer who leads soldiers

four hundred

"400"

1 Samuel 22:3

Then David went from there

"Then David went from the cave at Adullam"

Mizpah

This is the name of a city.

go out with you

David wanted his parents to live with the king of Moab so that King Saul would not be able to harm them. Translators can express his basic meaning by using the ideas of "come to stay with you," "stay with you," or "live here with you," as in the UDB.

1 Samuel 22:4

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 22:5

go into the land of Judah

"go to your home land of Judah"

Hereth

This is the name of a city.

1 Samuel 22:6

David had been discovered, along with the men who were with him

Saul was most interested in David, so the writer mentions the other men separately. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone had discovered where David and all the men who were with him were hiding"

the tamarisk tree

This is a type of tree. Alternate translation: "a large shade tree"

1 Samuel 22:7

Will the son of Jesse give every one of you fields and vineyards?

Saul uses a question to emphasize that David, who is from the tribe of Judah, does not desire to do this for the people of the tribe of Benjamin. Alternate translation: "The son of Jesse will not give you fields or vineyards."

Will the son of Jesse give

The time when he will give can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "When the son of Jesse becomes king, will he give"

the son of Jesse
"David"

Will he make you all captains of thousands and captains of hundreds

Saul uses a question to emphasize that David, who is from the tribe of Judah, does not desire to do this for the people of the tribe of Benjamin. Alternate translation: "He will not make you captains of thousands and captains of hundreds"

Will he make you all captains

You may need to make explicit when he will make them captains. Alternate translation: "When he becomes king, will he make you all captains"

captains of thousands and captains of hundreds

Possible meanings are 1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these captains led. Alternate translation: "captains of 1,000 soldiers and captains of 100 soldiers" or 2) the words translated as "thousands" and "hundreds" do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: "captains of large military divisions and captains of smaller military divisions" See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Samuel 17:18]

1 Samuel 22:8

Connecting Statement:

This continues what Saul said to his servants.

1 Samuel 22:9

Doeg the Edomite

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 21:7]

Nob ... Ahimelek

This is a place name and the name of a man. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 21:1]

Ahitub

This is the name of a man.

1 Samuel 22:10

He prayed to Yahweh that he might help him, and he gave him

Ahitub prayed to Yahweh that Yahweh might help David, and Ahitub gave David

1 Samuel 22:11

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 22:12

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 22:13

in that you have given

"by giving"

rise up

"rebel" or "fight"

1 Samuel 22:14

Who among all your servants is so faithful as David ... house?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "None of your servants is as faithful as David ... house."

bodyguard

a person or group of people who protect someone

is honored in your house

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom your family honors"

1 Samuel 22:15

Is today the first time I have prayed to God to help him?

Ahimelech asks himself this question before Saul can ask it, then immediately answers it. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "This is not the first time I have prayed to God to help David."

Far be it from me!

This idiom means "Absolutely not!"

Do not let the king impute anything to his servant or to all the house of my father. For your servant knows nothing

Ahimelech speaks of himself in the third person as the "servant." Ahimelech also refers to Saul in the third person as "the king." Ahimelech speaks this way to show respect to Saul. Alternate translation: "Please, King Saul, do not consider me, your servant, or anyone in the house of my father to be guilty. For I know nothing"

impute

to consider someone guilty

to all the house of my father

Here "house" represents "family." Alternate translation: "to all my father's family"

1 Samuel 22:16

your father's house

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. Alternate translation: "your father's family" or "your father's descendants"

1 Samuel 22:17

the guard that stood around him

"the soldiers standing nearby to protect him"

Turn and kill

Here "Turn" means to turn around or turn away from the king. Alternate translation: "Go and kill" or "Kill"

their hand also is with David

The word "hand" is a metonym for the work done with the hand. Alternate translation: "they also help David"

would not put out their hand to kill

The word "hand" is a metonym for the work done with the hand. Alternate translation: "did not do anything to kill" or "refused to kill"

1 Samuel 22:18

Turn and kill the priests ... turned and attacked the priests

Here "Turn" means to turn around or turn away from the king. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 22:17]

Doeg the Edomite turned and attacked ... he killed

Possible meanings are 1) Doeg killed all the priests himself or 2) the word "Doeg" is a synecdoche for Doeg and the men who went with him. Alternate translation: "Doeg the Edomite and his men turned and attacked ... they killed"

Doeg the Edomite

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 21:7]

eighty-five persons

"85 men" or "85 priests"

1 Samuel 22:19

He also put to the sword ... he put to the sword

Possible meanings are 1) Doeg killed all the priests himself or 2) the word "Doeg" is a synecdoche for Doeg and the men who went with him. Alternate translation: "They also put to the sword ... they put to the sword"

put to the sword

"killed with the sword"

Nob

Nob is the name of a city. Here the name "Nob" represents the people of that city. Alternate translation: "the people in the city of Nob" or "the people of Nob"

1 Samuel 22:20

Abiathar

This is a man's name.

1 Samuel 22:21

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 22:22

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 22:23

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 22:2

Who besides David's father's house gathered to him at the cave of Adullam?

Everyone who was in distress, every one who was in debt, and every one who was discontented, gathered to him.

1 Samuel 22:4

How long did David's father and mother stay with the king of Moab?

They stayed with the king the whole time that David was in his stronghold.

1 Samuel 22:6

Who had been discovered along with David?

The men who were with David were also discovered.

1 Samuel 22:8

What does Saul accuse his servants of not revealing to him?

Saul said that none of his servants revealed to him that his son had incited his servant David against him.

1 Samuel 22:10

What two things does Doeg the Edomite tell Saul that Ahimelech gave to David?
Ahimelech gave David provisions and the sword of Goliath the Philistine.

1 Samuel 22:13

What did Saul say Ahimelech did for the son of Jesse besides giving him bread and a sword?
Saul said that Ahimelech prayed to God that he might help him.

1 Samuel 22:17

What were the servants of King Saul not willing to put out their hand to do?
They would not kill the priests of Yahweh.

1 Samuel 22:19

Who did Doeg kill with the edge of the sword in Nob, the city of the priests?
He killed both men and women, children and infants, and oxen and donkeys and sheep.

1 Samuel 22:20

Where did Abiathar go when he escaped the killing?
Abiathar fled after David.

1 Samuel 22:22

For what did David tell Abiathar he was responsible?
David said that he was responsible for every death in his father's family.

Chapter 23

¹ They told David, "Look, the Philistines are fighting against Keilah and are robbing the threshing floors."
² So David prayed to Yahweh for help and asked him, "Should I go and attack these Philistines?" Yahweh said to David, "Go and attack the Philistines and save Keilah." ³ David's men said to him, "See, we are afraid here in Judah. How much more then if we go to Keilah against the armies of the Philistines?" ⁴ Then David prayed to Yahweh for help yet again. Yahweh answered him, "Arise, go down to Keilah. For I will give you victory over the Philistines." ⁵ David and his men went to Keilah and fought with the Philistines. He led away their cattle and struck them with a great slaughter. So David saved the inhabitants of Keilah. ⁶ When Abiathar son of Ahimelek had fled to David at Keilah, he came down with an ephod in his hand.

⁷ Saul was told that David had gone to Keilah. Saul said, "God has given him into my hand. For he is shut in because he has entered a city that has gates and bars." ⁸ Saul summoned all his forces for battle, to go down to Keilah, to besiege David and his men. ⁹ David knew that Saul was plotting harm against him. He said to Abiathar the priest, "Bring the ephod here." ¹⁰ Then David said, "Yahweh, the God of Israel, your servant has indeed heard that Saul seeks to come to Keilah, to destroy the city for my sake. ¹¹ Will the men of Keilah surrender me into his hand? Will Saul come down, as your servant has heard? Yahweh, the God of Israel, I beg you, please tell your servant." Yahweh said, "He will come down." ¹² Then David said, "Will the men of Keilah surrender me and my men into the hand of Saul?" Yahweh said, "They will surrender you." ¹³ Then David and his men, who were about six hundred, got up and went away from Keilah, and they went from place to place. It was told Saul that David had escaped from Keilah, and he stopped the pursuit. ¹⁴ David stayed in the strongholds in the wilderness, in the hill country in the wilderness of Ziph. Saul looked for him every day, but God did not give him into his hand.

¹⁵ David saw that Saul had come out to seek his life; now David was in the wilderness of Ziph at Horesh. ¹⁶ Then Jonathan, Saul's son, got up and went to David at Horesh, and strengthened his hand in God. ¹⁷ He said to him, "Do not be afraid. For the hand of Saul my father will not find you. You will be king over Israel, and I will be next to you. Saul my father also knows this." ¹⁸ They made a covenant before Yahweh. David remained at Horesh, and Jonathan went home.

¹⁹ Then Ziphites came to Saul at Gibeah and said, "Is not David hiding among us in the strongholds at Horesh, on the hill of Hakilah, which is south of Jeshimon?" ²⁰ Now come down, king! According to your desire, come down! Our part will be to surrender him into the king's hand." ²¹ Saul said, "May you be blessed by Yahweh. For you have had compassion on me. ²² Go, make even more sure. Learn and find out where his hiding place is and who has seen him there. It is told to me that he is very crafty. ²³ So look, and learn all of the places where he hides himself. Come back to me with sure information, and then I will return with you. If he is in the land, I will search him out among all the thousands of Judah."

²⁴ Then they rose up and went to Ziph ahead of Saul. Now David and his men were in the wilderness of Maon, in the Arabah to the south of Jeshimon. ²⁵ Saul and his men went to seek him. But David was told of it, so he went down to a rocky hill and lived in the wilderness of Maon. When Saul heard it, he chased David in the wilderness of Maon. ²⁶ Saul went on one side of the mountain, and David and his men were going on the other side of the mountain. David hurried to get away from Saul. As Saul and his men were surrounding David and his men to take them, ²⁷ a messenger came to Saul and said, "Hurry and come, for the Philistines have made a raid against the land." ²⁸ So Saul returned from pursuing David and went against the Philistines. Therefore that place was called Sela Hammahlekoth. ²⁹ David went up from there and lived in the strongholds of En Gedi.

1 Samuel 23 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Saul chases David

Saul wants to kill David, but David trusts in God who keeps rescuing him. David rescues the town of Keilah from the Philistines who are stealing their harvest. Saul goes to Keilah to capture David, but David flees to the wilderness near Ziph. When David goes deeper into the wilderness, Saul follows but he has to

leave to fight the Philistines who have invaded the land. Saul's pursuit of David shows that Saul cares more about killing his enemies than pleasing God. (See: trust)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Synecdoche

Jonathan strengthens David with a synecdoche: "For the hand of Saul my father will not find you." This helps to strengthen David's faith. (See: and faith)

1 Samuel 23:1

fighting against Keilah

"Keilah" is the name of a town. Here "Keilah" represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: "fighting against the people of Keilah"

threshing

separating the grain or seeds, generally from a cereal plant or wheat by some mechanical means

1 Samuel 23:2

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 23:3

How much more then if we go to Keilah against the armies of the Philistines?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "We will be even more fearful if we go to Keilah to fight the armies of the Philistines."

1 Samuel 23:4

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 23:5

went ... fought ... led ... struck ... saved

The writer pays the most attention to David, so these words are all singular, though David's men helped him do all these things.

1 Samuel 23:6

Ahimelek

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 21:1]

1 Samuel 23:7

Saul was told

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone told Saul" or "They told Saul"

1 Samuel 23:8

summoned

officially called. The reader should understand that Saul probably told his officials to gather the soldiers. He did not call with a loud voice to get them to come.

all his forces

"all his soldiers"

1 Samuel 23:9

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 23:10

David said

"David asked" or "David prayed"

your servant has indeed heard

David speaks as if he were someone else to show his respect for Yahweh. Alternate translation: "I have indeed heard"

destroy the city

make the city so no one could live in it and kill all the people who live there

1 Samuel 23:11

as your servant has heard ... tell your servant

David speaks as if he were someone else to show his respect for Yahweh. Alternate translation: "as I have heard ... tell me"

surrender me into his hand

Here "hand" represents power or control. Alternate translation: "give me over to Saul"

1 Samuel 23:12

David said

or "David asked" or "David prayed"

surrender me and my men into the hand of Saul

Here "hand" represents power or control. Alternate translation: "give me and my men over to Saul"

1 Samuel 23:13

six hundred
"600"

It was told Saul

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone told Saul" or "They told Saul"

had escaped

"had run away from"

1 Samuel 23:14

wilderness of Ziph

This is the name of a deserted area near the city of Ziph.

did not give him into his hand

The word "hand" is a metonym for power. Alternate translation: "did not allow Saul to have power over David" or "did not allow Saul to do as he desired with David" or "did not allow Saul to capture David"

1 Samuel 23:15

seek his life

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "try to kill him"

Horesh

This is the name of city near Ziph.

1 Samuel 23:16

strengthened his hand in God

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "encouraged him to trust in God"

1 Samuel 23:17

For the hand of Saul my father will not find you

Here "hand" is a metonym for Saul and his power. Alternate translation: "For Saul my father will not find you" or "For Saul my father will never be able to have power over you"

1 Samuel 23:18

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 23:19

Ziphites

This is the name of the people group from Ziph.

Is not David hiding among us in ... Jeshimon?

This rhetorical question can be translated as an exclamation. Alternate translation: "David is hiding among us in ... Jeshimon!"

the hill of Hakilah

This is the name of a hill in the wilderness of Judah.

Jeshimon

This is the name of a desert area near the Dead Sea. It can also be translated as "the Judean Wilderness" or "the wasteland."

1 Samuel 23:20

surrender him into the king's hand

The word "hand" is a metonym for power. The Ziphites speak to Saul as if he were another man to show him that they respect him. Alternate translation: "give David to you so you can do whatever you desire with him"

1 Samuel 23:21

May you be blessed by Yahweh

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "I hope that Yahweh blesses you"

you have had compassion on me

The abstract noun "compassion" can be translated with the adjective "kind." Saul says this because they had told him about David and they were willing to help Saul capture David. Alternate translation: "you have been kind to me" or "you have kindly told this to me"

1 Samuel 23:22

Learn and find out

These two words mean almost the same thing and can be translated as one phrase. Alternate translation: "Know for sure"

who has seen him

"who saw him"

It is told to me

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "People tell me" or "I have heard"

1 Samuel 23:23

among all the thousands of Judah

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "even if I have to arrest every man in Judah" or "among all the clans of Judah"

1 Samuel 23:24

Then they rose up

They stopped what they had been doing. The reader should not believe that they were sitting or lying.

Then they

"Then the Ziphites"

Ziph

This is the name of a place. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 23:14.

Jeshimon

This is the name of a desert area near the Dead Sea. It can also be translated as "the Judean Wilderness" or "the wasteland." See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 23:19]

the wilderness of Maon

This is the name of the deserted area around the city of Maon in southern Judah.

1 Samuel 23:25

David was told of it

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone told David that they were coming" or "David learned that they were coming"

rocky hill

a hill covered with many rocks or boulders

1 Samuel 23:26

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 23:27

Hurry and come

The words "hurry" and "come" can be combined into one idea. Alternate translation: "Come quickly"

1 Samuel 23:28

pursuing David

"chasing David, trying to catch him"

Sela Hammahlekoth

The name means "Rock of Escape." This was a memorial or marker of David's escape from Saul.

1 Samuel 23:29

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 23:1

From whom did David seek help when the Philistines fought against Keilah and robbed the threshing floors?
David prayed to Yahweh for help.

1 Samuel 23:2

From whom did David seek help when the Philistines fought against Keilah and robbed the threshing floors?
David prayed to Yahweh for help.

1 Samuel 23:3

Why did David pray to Yahweh again about the Philistines?
David's men told him they were afraid in Judah and were also afraid to attack the Philistines.

1 Samuel 23:4

Why did David pray to Yahweh again about the Philistines?
David's men told him they were afraid in Judah and were also afraid to attack the Philistines.

1 Samuel 23:5

What was the outcome when David and his men fought with the Philistines as Yahweh had told David to do?
Yahweh gave them victory over the Philistines, so David saved the inhabitants of Keilah.

1 Samuel 23:7

Why did Saul think he could attack David and his men?
David and his men were shut in in a city that had gates and bars.

1 Samuel 23:8

Why did Saul think he could attack David and his men?
David and his men were shut in in a city that had gates and bars.

1 Samuel 23:9

After David knew that Saul was plotting harm against him, what did David say to Abiathar the priest?
David said to Abiathar the priest, "Bring the ephod here."

1 Samuel 23:10

What did David ask Yahweh concerning Saul and the men of Keilah?
David wanted to know if Saul would come down to Keilah and if the men of Keilah would surrender him into Saul's hand.

1 Samuel 23:11

What did David ask Yahweh concerning Saul and the men of Keilah?

David wanted to know if Saul would come down to Keilah and if the men of Keilah would surrender him into Saul's hand.

1 Samuel 23:12

What was Yahweh's reply to David concerning the men of Keilah?

Yahweh told David that the men of Keilah would surrender David into the hand of Saul.

1 Samuel 23:13

Why did Saul stop his pursuit of David at Keilah and search for him elsewhere?

Saul was told that David had escaped from Keilah.

1 Samuel 23:14

Why did Saul stop his pursuit of David at Keilah and search for him elsewhere?

Saul was told that David had escaped from Keilah.

1 Samuel 23:15

How was Jonathan, Saul's son, a help to David in the wilderness?

He went to David and strengthened his hand in God.

1 Samuel 23:18

Before Jonathan went home, what did he and David do in Horesh?

They made a covenant before Yahweh.

1 Samuel 23:25

Why was David not safe in Horesh and what did he do?

He was going to be betrayed by the people and given over to Saul, so he and his men went to another wilderness.

1 Samuel 23:26

What happened as Saul and his men were surrounding David and his men?

A messenger came to Saul and told him that the Philistines had made a raid against the land.

1 Samuel 23:27

What happened as Saul and his men were surrounding David and his men?

A messenger came to Saul and told him that the Philistines had made a raid against the land.

1 Samuel 23:28

What was Saul's response to this news?

Saul returned to fight the Philistines.

Chapter 24

¹ When Saul returned from chasing the Philistines, he was told, "David is in the wilderness of En Gedi." ² Then Saul took three thousand chosen men from all Israel and went to seek David and his men on the Rocks of the Wild Goats. ³ He came to sheep pens on the way, where there was a cave. Saul went inside to cover his feet. Now David and his men were sitting far back in the cave. ⁴ David's men said to him, "This is the day of which Yahweh spoke when he said to you, 'I will give your enemy into your hand, for you to do with him as you wish.'" Then David arose and quietly crept forward and cut off the corner of Saul's robe. ⁵ Afterward David's heart afflicted him because he had cut a corner off Saul's robe. ⁶ He said to his men, "May Yahweh forbid that I should do this thing to my master, Yahweh's anointed, to put out my hand against him, seeing he is Yahweh's anointed." ⁷ So David rebuked his men with these words, and did not permit them to attack Saul. Saul stood up, left the cave, and went on his way.

⁸ Afterward, David also stood up, left the cave, and called out after Saul: "My master the king." When Saul looked behind him, David bowed with his face to the ground and showed him respect. ⁹ David said to Saul, "Why do you listen to the men who say, 'See, David is seeking your harm?'" ¹⁰ Today your eyes have seen how Yahweh put you into my hand when we were in the cave. Some told me to kill you, but I spared you. I said, 'I will not put out my hand against my master; for he is Yahweh's anointed.' ¹¹ See, my father, see the corner of your robe in my hand. For the fact that I cut off the corner of your robe and did not kill you, you may know and see that there is no evil or treason in my hand, and I have not sinned against you, even though you hunt my life to take it. ¹² May Yahweh judge between you and me, and may Yahweh avenge me against you, but my hand must not be against you. ¹³ As the proverb of the ancients says, 'Out of the wicked comes wickedness.' But my hand will not be against you. ¹⁴ After whom has the king of Israel come out? After whom do you pursue? After a dead dog! After a flea! ¹⁵ May Yahweh be judge and give judgment between you and me, and see to it, and plead my cause and permit me to escape from your hand."

¹⁶ When David had finished speaking these words to Saul, Saul said, "Is this your voice, my son David?" Saul lifted up his voice and wept. ¹⁷ He said to David, "You are more righteous than I am. For you have repaid me good, where I have repaid you evil. ¹⁸ You have declared today how you have done good to me, for you did not kill me when Yahweh had put me at your mercy. ¹⁹ For if a man finds his enemy, will he let him go safely? May Yahweh reward you with good for what you have done to me today. ²⁰ Now, I know that you will surely be king and that the kingdom of Israel will be established in your hand. ²¹ Swear to me by Yahweh that you will not cut off my descendants after me, and that you will not destroy my name out of my father's house." ²² So David made an oath to Saul. Then Saul went home, but David and his men went up to the stronghold.

1 Samuel 24 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Even though Saul tries again and again to kill David, David does not avenge himself on Saul because God had chosen Saul as king. This is meant to contrast with Saul's treatment of David, the future king. Saul represents the king the people wanted, a selfish man. David is the king God wanted, a godly man. (See: avenge and elect and godly)

1 Samuel 24:1

he was told

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone told him"

wilderness of En Gedi

Engedi is a place in Israel west of the Dead Sea where there is water with dry land all around it.

1 Samuel 24:2

three thousand

3,000

chosen men

men whom he had chosen because of their superior military abilities

1 Samuel 24:3

sheep pens

"sheep corrals" or "sheep enclosures"

cover his feet

This is a euphemism for "relieve himself" or "defecate" or "empty his intestines."

cave

generally a natural hole under the ground, often with an opening in the side of a hill or cliff

1 Samuel 24:4

David arose and quietly crept

The word "arose" is an idiom for taking action. Alternate translation: "David took action; he quietly crept"

crept

approached slowly, carefully or quietly

1 Samuel 24:5

David's heart afflicted him

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "David was sad because he had done something wrong"

1 Samuel 24:6

Yahweh's anointed

"the one whom Yahweh has chosen to lead his people" or "the one Yahweh has made king"

to put out my hand against him

The hand is a metonym for the ability to cause harm. Alternate translation: "to harm him in any way"

1 Samuel 24:7

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 24:8

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 24:9

Why do you listen to the men who say, 'See, David is seeking your harm?'

This is a rhetorical question. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not listen to the men who say, 'See, David is seeking to harm you.'"

1 Samuel 24:10

your eyes have seen

Here "your eyes" represent King Saul. Alternate translation: "you have seen with your own eyes"

put you into my hand

The word "hand" is a metonym for control. Alternate translation: "put you where I could kill you or allow you to live"

1 Samuel 24:11

my father

Saul was not David's real father. David calls him "father" to show that he respects Saul.

there is no evil or treason in my hand

David speaks as if evil and treason were physical objects he could hold in his hand. Here "hand" represents a person acting or doing something. Alternate translation: "I have done no evil deed against you, nor have I rebelled against you"

1 Samuel 24:12

my hand must not be against you

The hand is a metonym for the ability to cause harm. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Samuel 24:6]

1 Samuel 24:13

ancients

This nominal adjective can be translated as a noun phrase. Alternate translation: "people who lived long ago"

1 Samuel 24:14

After whom has the king of Israel come out? After whom do you pursue?

These rhetorical questions can be translated as statements. When David asks the questions, he knows that he will answer the questions himself. Alternate translation: "Let me tell you who the king of Israel has come out after. Let me tell you who it is that you are pursuing."

After a dead dog

The words "dead dog" are a metaphor for a powerless person. This sentence can be made complete. Alternate translation: "You are pursuing a person who is as powerless as a dead dog"

After a flea

The word "flea" is a metaphor for a person whom others do not consider important. Alternate translation: "You are pursuing a person who is as unimportant as a flea"

1 Samuel 24:15

see to it, and plead my cause

Possible meanings are 1) "do what is right, and plead my cause" or 2) "see that my cause is right and fight for me."

from your hand

The word "hand" is a metonym for power. Alternate translation: "so that you have no power over me"

1 Samuel 24:16

my son David

Saul speaks as if David were his son to show David that he loves him.

lifted up his voice and wept

The writer writes as if a voice were something a person could lift up with his hands. Alternate translation: "wept loudly"

1 Samuel 24:17

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 24:18

you have done good to me

Saul acknowledges that David did show that he supported King Saul and was loyal to him by not killing him.

for you did not kill me when Yahweh had put me at your mercy

Saul acknowledges that David chose to show mercy and demonstrated his loyalty to King Saul as Yahweh's anointed.

1 Samuel 24:19

For if a man finds his enemy, will he let him go safely?

A rhetorical question with the answer included in the question. Alternate translation: "For if a man finds his enemy, he will not let him go safely."

For if a man finds his enemy, will he let him go safely?

Where Saul had believed David was his enemy, he learns that even though David will be king, David will not take over the throne from Saul by force, but will wait for Yahweh's appointed time.

1 Samuel 24:20

the kingdom of Israel will be established in your hand

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) David will cause the kingdom of Israel to prosper through his power as king. Alternate translation: "the kingdom of Israel will prosper as you rule the Israelite people" or 2) Yahweh will cause David to have complete control over the kingdom of Israel. Alternate translation: "you will have complete rule over the kingdom of Israel"

in your hand

The word "hand" is a metonym that represents power or control.

1 Samuel 24:21

you will not cut off my descendants after me

"you will not kill my sons and their families." It was common for a new king who was not from the previous family line to kill off all the children of the former king to prevent any of them from challenging him for the throne.

you will not destroy my name out of my father's house

It is important for each family in Israel to have descendants from generation to generation carrying on the family name and land inheritance. Alternate translation: "you will not destroy my family and descendants" or "you will allow my family to live"

1 Samuel 24:22

David and his men

"David and his army"

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 24:1

What did Saul do when he heard that David was in the wilderness of Engedi?

He took three thousand chosen men and went to find David and his men.

1 Samuel 24:2

What did Saul do when he heard that David was in the wilderness of Engedi?

He took three thousand chosen men and went to find David and his men.

1 Samuel 24:4

What did David do to Saul in the cave instead of killing him?

David cut off a corner of Saul's robe without being noticed.

1 Samuel 24:5

Why would David not allow his men to attack Saul, but let him leave the cave in safety?

David's heart afflicted him and he felt that Yahweh would not want him to harm Yahweh's anointed.

1 Samuel 24:6

Why would David not allow his men to attack Saul, but let him leave the cave in safety?

David's heart afflicted him and he felt that Yahweh would not want him to harm Yahweh's anointed.

1 Samuel 24:7

Why would David not allow his men to attack Saul, but let him leave the cave in safety?

David's heart afflicted him and he felt that Yahweh would not want him to harm Yahweh's anointed.

1 Samuel 24:8

When David left the cave after Saul, how did he show respect to Saul?

David called Saul his master, the king, and then bowed his face to the ground.

1 Samuel 24:10

How did David show Saul that he did not want to bring harm to him?

David showed him the corner of his robe that David had been close enough to cut off.

1 Samuel 24:11

How did David show Saul that he did not want to bring harm to him?

David showed him the corner of his robe that David had been close enough to cut off.

1 Samuel 24:16

What was Saul's response to David?

He called David his son, then Saul lifted up his voice and wept.

1 Samuel 24:17

Why did Saul say that David was more righteous than himself?

David had repaid Saul with good even though Saul had done evil to David.

1 Samuel 24:18

Why did Saul say that David was more righteous than himself?

David had repaid Saul with good even though Saul had done evil to David.

1 Samuel 24:20

What did Saul come to know about David at this time?

Saul knew that David would be king and the kingdom of Israel would be established with David.

1 Samuel 24:21

Before Saul went home, what oath did David make to him at Saul's request?

David promised he would not cut off Saul's descendants, and he would not destroy Saul's name out of his father's house.

1 Samuel 24:22

Before Saul went home, what oath did David make to him at Saul's request?

David promised he would not cut off Saul's descendants, and he would not destroy Saul's name out of his father's house.

Chapter 25

¹ Now Samuel died. All Israel gathered together and mourned for him, and they buried him in his house at Ramah. Then David rose and went down to the wilderness of Paran.

² There was a man in Maon, whose possessions were in Carmel. The man was very wealthy. He had three thousand sheep and one thousand goats. He was shearing his sheep in Carmel. ³ The man's name was Nabal, and the name of his wife was Abigail. The woman was intelligent and beautiful in appearance. But the man was harsh and evil in his dealings. He was a descendant of the house of Caleb. ⁴ David heard in the wilderness that Nabal was shearing his sheep. ⁵ So David sent ten young men. David said to the young men, "Go up to Carmel, go to Nabal, and greet him in my name. ⁶ You will say to him, 'Live in prosperity. Peace to you and peace to your house, and peace be to all that you have. ⁷ I hear that you have shearers. Your shepherds have been with us, and we did them no harm, and they missed nothing the whole time they were in Carmel. ⁸ Ask your young men, and they will tell you. Now let my young men find favor in your eyes, for we have come on a festive day. Please give whatever you have on hand to your servants and to your son David.'"

⁹ When David's young men arrived, they said all of this to Nabal in David's name and then waited. ¹⁰ Nabal answered David's servants, "Who is David, and who is the son of Jesse? There are many servants these days who are breaking away from their masters. ¹¹ Should I take my bread and my water and my meat that I have killed for my shearers, and give it to men who come from I do not know where?" ¹² So David's young men turned away and came back, and told him everything that was said. ¹³ David said to his men, "Every man strap on his sword." So every man strapped on his sword. David also strapped on his sword. About four hundred men followed after David, and two hundred stayed by the baggage.

¹⁴ But one of the young men told Abigail, Nabal's wife; he said, "David sent messengers out of the wilderness to greet our master, and he screamed at them. ¹⁵ Yet the men were very good to us. We were not harmed and did not miss anything as long as we went with them when we were in the fields. ¹⁶ They were a wall to us both day and night, all the while we were with them tending the sheep. ¹⁷ Therefore know this and consider what you will do, for evil is plotted against our master, and against his whole house. He is such a worthless fellow that one cannot reason with him."

¹⁸ Then Abigail hurried and took two hundred loaves, two bottles of wine, five sheep already prepared, five measures of parched grain, one hundred clusters of raisins, and two hundred cakes of figs, and laid them on donkeys. ¹⁹ She said to her young men, "Go on before me, and I will come after you." But she did not tell her husband Nabal. ²⁰ As she rode on her donkey and came down by the cover of the mountain, David and his men came down toward her, and she met them. ²¹ Now David had said, "Surely in vain have I guarded all that this man has in the wilderness, so that nothing was missed of all that belonged to him, and he has returned me evil for good. ²² May God do so to the enemies of David, and more also, if by the morning I leave so much as one male of all who belong to him."

²³ When Abigail saw David, she hurried and got down from her donkey and lay before David facedown and bowed herself to the ground. ²⁴ She lay at his feet and said, "On me alone, my master, be the guilt. Please let your servant speak to you, and listen to the words of your servant. ²⁵ Let not my master regard this worthless fellow, Nabal, for as his name is, so is he. Nabal is his name, and folly is with him. But I your servant did not see the young men of my master, whom you sent. ²⁶ Now then, my master, as Yahweh lives, and as you live, since Yahweh has restrained you from bloodshed, and from avenging yourself with your own hand, now let your enemies, and those who seek to do evil to my master, be like Nabal. ²⁷ Now let this present that your servant has brought to my master be given to the young men who follow my master. ²⁸ Please forgive the trespass of your servant, for Yahweh will certainly make my master a sure house, because my master is fighting the battles of Yahweh; and evil will not be found in you so long as you live. ²⁹ Though men rise up to pursue you to take your life, yet the life of my master will be bound in the bundle of the living by Yahweh your God; and he will sling away the lives of your enemies, as from the pocket of a sling. ³⁰ Yahweh will have done for my master everything he promised you, and has appointed you leader over Israel. ³¹ This will not cause grief or a troubled heart to my master—that you have poured out innocent blood, or because my master attempted to rescue himself. For when Yahweh will do good for my master, remember your servant."

³² David said to Abigail, "May Yahweh, the God of Israel, be blessed, he who sent you to meet me today. ³³ Your wisdom is blessed and you are blessed, because you have kept me today from bloodshed and from avenging myself with my own hand! ³⁴ For in truth, as Yahweh, the God of Israel, lives, he who has kept me from hurting you, unless you had hurried to come meet me, there would certainly have not been left to Nabal so much as one male baby by the morning light." ³⁵ So David received from her hand what she had brought him; he said to her, "Go up in peace to your house; see, I have listened to your voice and have accepted you."

³⁶ Abigail went back to Nabal; behold, he was holding a feast in his house, like the feast of a king; and Nabal's heart was merry within him, for he was very drunk. So she told him nothing at all until the morning light. ³⁷ It came about in the morning, when the wine had gone out of Nabal, that his wife told him these things; his heart died within him, and he became like a stone. ³⁸ It came about ten days later that Yahweh attacked Nabal so that he died.

³⁹ When David heard that Nabal was dead, he said, "May Yahweh be blessed, who has avenged the scorn I have received from the hand of Nabal and has kept back his servant from doing wrong. He has turned Nabal's evil action back on his own head." Then David sent and spoke to Abigail, to take her to himself as wife. ⁴⁰ When David's servants had come to Abigail at Carmel, they spoke to her and said, "David has sent us to you to take you to him as his wife." ⁴¹ She arose, bowed herself with her face to the ground, and said, "See, your female servant is a servant to wash the feet of the servants of my master." ⁴² Abigail hurried and arose, and rode on a donkey with five servant girls of hers who followed her; and she followed David's messengers and became his wife.

⁴³ Now David had also taken Ahinoam of Jezreel as a wife; both of them became his wives. ⁴⁴ Also, Saul had given Michal his daughter, David's wife, to Paltiel son of Laish, who was of Gallim.

1 Samuel 25 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Revenge

When David decides to kill all of the men in Nabal's household, Abigail convinces David not to avenge himself but to leave revenge to God. (See: [avenge](#))

1 Samuel 25:1

All Israel gathered together and mourned for him

This is likely a generalization. A large number of the people of Israel were probably there, but some were probably unable to attend.

gathered together
"met together"

buried him in his house at Ramah

Possible meanings are that they buried Samuel 1) in his home town of Ramah or 2) on his family's land in Ramah but not physically in the house or 3) in his house in Ramah.

David rose and went down

"David and his men moved on and they went down"

1 Samuel 25:2

There was a man in Maon, whose possessions were in Carmel. The man was very wealthy.

Some translators may need to put the ideas in these verses in a different order. Alternate translation: "There was a very wealthy man in Maon whose possessions were in Carmel."

Maon

This is the name of a town.

Carmel

This is the name of a town. This is different from Mount Carmel.

three thousand

3,000

one thousand

1,000

shearing his sheep

"shaving the wool off his sheep"

1 Samuel 25:3

The man's name was Nabal, and the name of his wife was Abigail. The woman was intelligent and beautiful in appearance. But the man was harsh and evil in his dealings. He was a descendant of the house of Caleb.
This verse give some background information about the man Nabal and his character. Some translators may need to put the ideas in this verse in a different order. Alternate translation: "Now the man was a descendant of the house of Caleb. His name was Nabal, and the name of his wife was Abigail. She was intelligent and beautiful in appearance. But the man was harsh and evil in his dealings."

Nabal

This is the name of a man.

Abigail

This is the name of a woman.

He was a descendant of the house of Caleb
Here "house" represents family. Alternate translation: "He was a descendant of the family of Caleb" or "He was a descendant of Caleb"

1 Samuel 25:4

shearing his sheep

"shaving the wool off his sheep"

1 Samuel 25:5

greet him in my name

"greet him as I would greet him if I were there"

1 Samuel 25:6

Live in prosperity

"I desire that you may live in prosperity." The abstract noun "prosperity" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "I desire that you possess many good things as long as you live"

Peace to you and peace to your house, and peace be to all that you have

"I desire that peace may come to you, your household and your possessions"

1 Samuel 25:7

you have shearers

"your shearers are working" or "your shearers have sheep to shear." David wants his men to speak so that Nabal understands that his sheep were well because David's men helped guard them.

we did them no harm, and they missed nothing

David is pointing out how he and his men offered protection to Nabal's servants and flocks. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "we kept them and all their property from harm"

1 Samuel 25:8

let my young men find favor in your eyes

Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: "may you be pleased with my young men" or "may you consider my young men favorably"

to your servants

David was expressing respect toward Nabal by calling his men Nabal's servants.

your son David

David spoke as if he were Nabal's son to show that he respected Nabal, who was an older man.

1 Samuel 25:9

David's young men

"David's army"

said all of this to Nabal in David's name

"told Nabal that this message had come from David"

1 Samuel 25:10

Who is David, and who is the son of Jesse?

Nabal used questions to emphasize that he had no reason to help David. These two rhetorical questions can be translated as statements. Alternate translation: "This David son of Jesse you speak of—I do not know him." or "I do not know who this David is, so I will not do as he says. I do not know who Jesse is, so I do not care what happens to his son."

breaking away from

"running away from" or "rebellng against"

1 Samuel 25:11

my bread

Here "bread" is an idiom for any kind of food.

men who come from I do not know where

"men when I do not know where they have come from" or "men whom I do not know"

1 Samuel 25:12

that was said

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that Nabal had said"

1 Samuel 25:13

said to his men

"said to his army"

"Every man strap on his sword." So every man strapped on his sword. David also strapped on his sword

If swords are not known in your language, you can treat "strap on his sword" as a metonym meaning to prepare for war. Alternate translation: "'Every man, prepare for war.' And every man prepared for war. David also prepared for war"

four hundred
400

two hundred
200

stayed by the baggage

They remained at their base camp to prevent other raiders from stealing their possessions.

1 Samuel 25:14

But one of the young men told Abigail, Nabal's wife

You may need to make explicit what the young man did before he spoke with Abigail. Alternate translation: "One of Nabal's servants found out what David and his men were planning to do, so he went to Nabal's wife Abigail"

1 Samuel 25:15

We were not harmed

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Nobody harmed us" or "We were safe"

did not miss anything as long as we went with them

"we did not lose anything when we were with them." David's men kept wild animals and other people from stealing Nabal's flocks.

1 Samuel 25:16

They were a wall

David's men were like a wall around a city that protects the people in the city from their enemies.

1 Samuel 25:17

evil is plotted against our master

The speaker is careful not to name the one plotting the evil. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone is plotting to do evil things to our master"

our master

The speaker speaks of David as if David were another person to show that he respects David. Alternate translation: "you"

1 Samuel 25:18

two hundred
200

loaves

A loaf is like a cake. You may need to make explicit what the loaves consisted of. Alternate translation: "loaves of bread"

already prepared

"that someone had already cooked" or "ready for someone to cook"

measures

This is a generic term as none is given.

parched grain

"grain that someone had cooked"

clusters of raisins

"cakes of raisins" or "masses of raisins"

1 Samuel 25:19

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 25:20

David and his men

"David and his army"

by the cover of the mountain

Possible meanings are 1) into a low, narrow stream bed or 2) to where the men were hiding.

1 Samuel 25:21

Connecting Statement:

The writer gives background information before he continues with the story.

Now David had said, "Surely ... for good.

The reader needs to understand that David had said these things before he said, "Every man strap on his sword" in 1 Samuel 25:13.

Now David had said

The word "Now" is used here to mark a break in the story. The author stops telling about Abigail going to David and tells about what David had said sometime before Abigail went to him.

nothing was missed of all that belonged to him

This can be stated positively and in active form. Alternate translation: "he still has everything that was his"

1 Samuel 25:22

May God do so to the enemies of David ... belong to him

The reader needs to understand that David had said these things before he said, "Every man strap on his sword" in 1 Samuel 25:13.

May God do so to the enemies of David

Many modern English translations read, "May God do so to David." This follows the reading in some ancient manuscripts and translations, as well as the more common wording of such statements.

all who belong

"all the people who belong to him" or "those in his family"

1 Samuel 25:23

Connecting Statement:

The writer has finished giving background information, so he continues the story.

lay before David facedown and bowed herself to the ground

Abigail was being humble and showing that she would obey David because he was a powerful leader.

1 Samuel 25:24

listen to

"hear"

my master ... your servant ... words of your servant

"David ... me ... my words." Abigail speaks of herself and David as if they are two other people, to show that she respects David.

1 Samuel 25:25

Connecting Statement:

Abigail continues to advise David not to take revenge.

Let not my master regard ... I your servant ... the young men of my master

Abigail speaks of herself and David as if they are other people to show that she respects David. Alternate translation: "Do not regard ... I ... your young men"

But I ... did not see ... whom you sent

You may need to make explicit what Abigail would have done. Alternate translation: "But if I ... had seen ... whom you sent, I would have given them food"

1 Samuel 25:26

Connecting Statement:

Abigail continues to advise David not to take revenge.

my master ... my master

Abigail speaks of David as if he is another person to show that she respects David. Alternate translation: "David ... you"

bloodshed

murder

avenging yourself with your own hand

The hand is a metonym for what a person does with the hand. Abigail assumes that David should allow Yahweh to take vengeance for him. Alternate translation: "taking vengeance yourself instead of letting Yahweh do it"

let your enemies ... be like Nabal

Abigail speaks as if Yahweh has already punished Nabal. Alternate translation: "I hope that Yahweh will punish your enemies ... as he will punish Nabal"

1 Samuel 25:27

Connecting Statement:

Abigail continues to tell David not to be angry.

let this present that your servant has brought to my master be given to the young men

Abigail uses the passive to show her respect for David. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "please give this present, which your servant has brought to my master, to the young men" or "please let my master give this present, which your servant has brought to my master, to the young men"

this present

"these gifts." The "present" was actually many different things.

your servant has ... my master ... my master

Abigail speaks of herself and David as if they are two other people to show that she respects David. Alternate translation: "I have ... you ... you"

1 Samuel 25:28

Connecting Statement:

Abigail continues to reason with David.

the trespass of your servant ... my master ... my master is

Abigail speaks of herself and David as if they are two other people, to show that she respects David. Alternate translation: "my trespass ... you ... you are"

Yahweh will certainly make my master a sure house

Here "house" is an idiom used for "descendants." Alternate translation: "Yahweh will ensure that my master always has a descendant who serves as king"

fighting the battles of Yahweh

"fighting against Yahweh's enemies"

evil will not be found in you

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "no one will ever see you do any evil thing" or "you will never do anything evil"

1 Samuel 25:29

Connecting Statement:

Abigail continues to reason with David.

pursue

chase and try to catch

the life of my master will be bound in the bundle of the living by Yahweh your God

Abigail speaks of David's life as if it were a long and thin object that a person could put with other long and thin objects and then tie together into a bundle with a rope. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh your God will bind the life of my master in the bundle of the living" or "Yahweh your God will keep you alive with those who are alive"

the life of my master

Abigail speaks of herself and David as if they are two different people to show that she respects David. Alternate translation: "your life"

he will sling away the lives of your enemies, as from the pocket of a sling

Abigail speaks of David's enemies' lives as if they were small objects like a stone that could be put in a sling and shot a long distance. Alternate translation: "he will kill your enemies as easily as a man slings a stone a long distance"

a sling

a piece of animal skin with long cords at both ends in which a person can put a stone or other small, hard object and throw it a long distance

1 Samuel 25:30

Connecting Statement:

Abigail continues to reason with David.

my master

Abigail speaks of David as if he is another person, to show that she respects David. Alternate translation: "you"

1 Samuel 25:31

Connecting Statement:

Abigail finishes reasoning with David.

This will not cause grief or a troubled heart to my master—that you have poured out innocent blood, or because my master attempted to rescue himself

The word "This" refers to David's actions. This implies that if David were to pour out blood needlessly or attempt to avenge himself, he would

feel grief and have a troubled heart. But since he will not do those things, he will not feel grief and have a troubled heart. Alternate translation: "Your action will not cause you the grief or the troubled heart that pouring out blood needlessly or trying to avenge yourself would cause you."

This will not cause grief or a troubled heart to my master

A troubled heart is a metonym for feelings of guilt. Alternate translation: "Your action will not give you sorrow or guilty feelings" or "You will not do something that causes you to regret what you did and to feel guilty"

that you have poured out innocent blood

Pouring out blood is a metonym for killing people. Alternate translation: "that you have killed innocent people" or "that you have killed people needlessly"

my master ... my master ... himself ... my master ... your servant

Abigail speaks of herself and David as if they are two other people, to show that she respects David. Alternate translation: "you ... you ... yourself ... you ... me"

when Yahweh will do good for my master

That is, when Yahweh actually makes him king after Saul's reign is over.

1 Samuel 25:32

General Information:

David accepts Abigail's counsel and gifts.

May Yahweh ... be blessed, he who

This can be translated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) "I praise Yahweh ... who" or 2) "May all people praise Yahweh ... who."

1 Samuel 25:33

Your wisdom is blessed and you are blessed, because

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "I thank Yahweh because he has blessed you by making you wise and because"

bloodshed

murder. The same word appears in 1 Samuel 25:26.

with my own hand

The word "hand" here is a metonym for the action taken by the hand. Alternate translation: "by my own actions"

1 Samuel 25:34

General Information:

David accepts Abigail's gifts and agrees to do as she has advised him.

there would certainly have not been left to Nabal so much as one male baby

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "I would not have left to Nabal even one male baby"

1 Samuel 25:35

received from her hand

This is an idiom. Abigail did not unload all gifts from the donkeys herself. Alternate translation: "accepted all the gifts that she had brought"

have listened to your voice

The word "voice" is a metonym for the message the person speaks and a synecdoche for the person who speaks. Alternate translation: "have listened to what you have told me" or "will do as you have advised me"

1 Samuel 25:36

morning light
dawn

Nabal's heart was merry within him
Nabal was very happy

1 Samuel 25:37

General Information:

Yahweh's judgment on Nabal

the wine had gone out of Nabal

Nabal was no longer drunk and so was no longer feeling happy.

his heart died within him

Nabal was unable to move because was so afraid that he was no longer physically healthy, probably because he had suffered a stroke.

1 Samuel 25:38

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 25:39

General Information:

David offers to protect Abigail by marrying her.

May Yahweh be blessed

This can be translated in active form. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 25:32]

has avenged the scorn I have received from the hand of Nabal

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "has defended me after Nabal insulted me"

has kept back his servant from doing wrong

David speaks as if he were another person to show his respect for Yahweh. Alternate translation: "has kept me from doing evil deeds"

has turned Nabal's evil action back on his own head

The abstract noun "action" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "has done to Nabal what Nabal planned to do to me"

on his own head

The head is a synecdoche for the person. Alternate translation: "on him"

sent and spoke to Abigail, to take her to himself as wife

You may make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "sent men to speak to Abigail and tell her that David wanted to take her to be his wife"

1 Samuel 25:40

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 25:41

She arose, bowed herself

Abigail responded by bowing. The reader should understand that she was probably already standing when the men were talking to her in [1 Samuel 25:40]

See, your female servant is a servant to wash the feet of the servants of my master

Abigail speaks as if she were another person to show that she is humble. She shows that she desires to be David's new wife by offering to wash the feet of David's servants. Alternate translation: "See, I will serve you, the servants of my master David, by washing your feet"

1 Samuel 25:42

hurried and arose, and rode

You may need to make explicit what Abigail did after she arose and before she rode. Alternate translation: "quickly did what she needed to do to prepare for the journey, and then she rode"

five servant girls of hers who followed her

Abigail was riding a donkey, but the servant girls were walking.

1 Samuel 25:43

Now David had also taken Ahinoam

This event took place before David married Abigail.

Ahinoam

This is the name of a woman.

1 Samuel 25:44

Saul had given Michal

This event took place before David married Abigail.

Michal

This is the name of a woman.

Paltiel ... Laish

These are names of men.

Gallim

This is a town north of Jerusalem.

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 25:3

What kind of man was Nabal in his dealings?

He was harsh and evil.

What was Nabal's wife Abigail like?

She was intelligent and beautiful in appearance.

1 Samuel 25:4

Who did David send to greet Nabal while he was shearing his sheep?

David sent ten young men to greet Nabal.

1 Samuel 25:7

Why did David think that Nabal would help him and his ten young men?

David's group had protected Nabal's shepherds when they were with David's group.

1 Samuel 25:8

What did David's young men ask Nabal to give them?

They asked Nabal to give them and David whatever he has in hand for a festive day.

1 Samuel 25:9

What was Nabal's response to David's young men?

Nabal said that he did not know David and he needed all he had for his shearers.

1 Samuel 25:10

What was Nabal's response to David's young men?

Nabal said that he did not know David and he needed all he had for his shearers.

1 Samuel 25:11

What was Nabal's response to David's young men?

Nabal said that he did not know David and he needed all he had for his shearers.

1 Samuel 25:13

What did David tell his men to do when he heard about Nabal's response?

David ordered his men to strap on their swords.

1 Samuel 25:14

When the young man spoke to Abigail, how did he say that David and his men treated them in the fields?

He said they were good to Nabal's shepherds while they were with them in the field.

1 Samuel 25:15

When the young man spoke to Abigail, how did he say that David and his men treated them in the fields?

He said they were good to Nabal's shepherds while they were with them in the field.

1 Samuel 25:17

Why did the young man go to Abigail instead of to Nabal?

Nabal was such a worthless fellow that no one could reason with him.

1 Samuel 25:18

What did Abigail do after hearing about her husband's response.

Abigail hurriedly gathered provisions and told her young men to go before her, but she did not tell Nabal.

1 Samuel 25:19

What did Abigail do after hearing about her husband's response.

Abigail hurriedly gathered provisions and told her young men to go before her, but she did not tell Nabal.

1 Samuel 25:20

Who came toward Abigail as she rode her donkey bringing the provisions?

David and his men came toward Abigail and she met them.

1 Samuel 25:21

What had David said that he planned to do after guarding Nabal's possessions in vain?

David planned to kill all the men who belonged to Nabal.

1 Samuel 25:22

What had David said that he planned to do after guarding Nabal's possessions in vain?

David planned to kill all the men who belonged to Nabal.

1 Samuel 25:23

What did Abigail do when when she met David?

Abigail hurriedly got down from her donkey, lay before David face down and asked to speak to David as his servant.

1 Samuel 25:24

What did Abigail do when when she met David?

Abigail hurriedly got down from her donkey, lay before David face down and asked to speak to David as his servant.

1 Samuel 25:25

What did Abigail hope to prevent by talking to David?

She hoped to stop the bloodshed of those with Nabal.

1 Samuel 25:26

What did Abigail hope to prevent by talking to David?

She hoped to stop the bloodshed of those with Nabal.

1 Samuel 25:27

What does Abigail hope to accomplish by giving David and his young men the provisions?

Abigail hoped that David would forgive Nabal's sins.

1 Samuel 25:28

What does Abigail hope to accomplish by giving David and his young men the provisions?

Abigail hoped that David would forgive Nabal's sins.

Who does Abigail tell David will make his home sure and without evil?

Abigail says that Yahweh will make David's home sure.

1 Samuel 25:29

Who will sling away the lives of David's enemies, as from the pocket of a sling?

Yahweh will protect David even though men rise up to take his life.

1 Samuel 25:32

Who does David say sent Abigail to meet him?

David said that Yahweh sent Abigail.

1 Samuel 25:33

Why does David say that Abigail and her wisdom are blessed?

Because of Abigail's quick action, David kept from shedding blood and avenging himself.

1 Samuel 25:34

Who has kept David from killing all the males in Nabal's household by sending Abigail quickly?

Yahweh, the God of Israel, kept David from killing the males in Nabal's household.

1 Samuel 25:36

Why did Abigail not talk to Nabal when she returned from seeing David?

Nabal was holding a feast and was very drunk.

1 Samuel 25:37

What happened to Nabal in the morning when Abigail talked to him?

His heart died and he became like stone, and ten days later Yahweh attacked Nabal and he died.

1 Samuel 25:38

What happened to Nabal in the morning when Abigail talked to him?

His heart died and he became like stone, and ten days later Yahweh attacked Nabal and he died.

1 Samuel 25:39

What did David do when he heard that Nabal was dead?

David sent his servants to ask Abigail to become his wife.

1 Samuel 25:40

What did David do when he heard that Nabal was dead?

David sent his servants to ask Abigail to become his wife.

1 Samuel 25:42

What did Abigail do when she heard David wanted to marry her?

Abigail hurriedly arose and went by donkey following David's messengers to become his wife.

1 Samuel 25:44

What happened to David's wife, Michal?

Saul gave her to another man as his wife.

Chapter 26

¹ The Ziphites came to Saul at Gibeah and said, "Is not David hiding in the hill of Hakilah, which is before Jeshimon?" ² Then Saul arose and went down to the wilderness of Ziph, having three thousand chosen men of Israel with him, to seek David in the wilderness of Ziph. ³ Saul camped on the hill of Hakilah, which is before Jeshimon, by the road. But David was staying in the wilderness, and he saw that Saul was coming after him into the wilderness. ⁴ So David sent out spies and learned that Saul had indeed come. ⁵ David arose and went to the place where Saul had camped; he saw the place where Saul lay, and Abner son of Ner, the general of his army; Saul lay in the camp, and the people were camped around him, all asleep.

⁶ Then David said to Ahimelek the Hittite, and to Abishai son of Zeruiah, the brother of Joab, "Who will go down with me to Saul in the camp?" Abishai said, "I! I will go down with you." ⁷ So David and Abishai went to the army by night. Saul was there sleeping inside the camp with his spear stuck in the ground beside his head. Abner and his soldiers lay around him. ⁸ Then Abishai said to David, "Today God has put your enemy into your hand. Now please let me pin him to the ground with the spear with just one blow. I will not strike him a second time." ⁹ David said to Abishai, "Do not destroy him; for who can extend his hand against Yahweh's anointed one and be guiltless?" ¹⁰ David said, "As Yahweh lives, Yahweh will kill him, or his day will come to die, or he will go into battle and perish. ¹¹ May Yahweh forbid that I should extend my hand against his anointed one; but now, I beg you, take the spear that is at his head and the jar of water, and let us go." ¹² So David took the spear and the jar of water from Saul's head, and they got away. No one saw them or knew about it, nor did anyone wake up, for they were all asleep, because a deep sleep from Yahweh had fallen on them.

¹³ Then David went over to the other side and stood on the top of the mountain far off; a great distance was between them. ¹⁴ David shouted out to the people and to Abner son of Ner; he said, "Do you not answer, Abner?" Then Abner answered and said, "Who are you who is shouting to the king?" ¹⁵ David said to Abner, "Are not you a courageous man? Who is like you in Israel? Why then have you not kept watch over your master the king? For someone came in to destroy the king your master. ¹⁶ This thing you have done is not good. As Yahweh lives, you deserve to die because you have not kept watch over your master, Yahweh's anointed one. Now see where the king's spear is and the jar of water that was near his head!"

¹⁷ Saul recognized David's voice and said, "Is that your voice, my son David?" David said, "It is my voice, my master, king." ¹⁸ He said, "Why does my master pursue his servant? What have I done? What evil is in my hand? ¹⁹ Now therefore, I beg you, let my master the king listen to the words of his servant. If it is Yahweh who has stirred you up against me, may he be pleased with an offering; but if it is human beings, may they be cursed in the sight of Yahweh, for they have today driven me out, that I should not cling to the inheritance of Yahweh; they have said to me, 'Go worship other gods.' ²⁰ Now therefore, do not let my blood fall to the earth away from Yahweh's presence; for the king of Israel has come out to search for the one flea as when one hunts a partridge in the mountains."

²¹ Then Saul said, "I have sinned. Return, David, my son; for I will harm you no more, because my life was precious in your eyes today. See, I have played the fool and have made a very bad mistake." ²² David answered and said, "See, your spear is here, king! Let one of the young men come over and get it and bring it to you. ²³ May Yahweh pay each man for his righteousness and his faithfulness; because Yahweh put you into my hand today, but I would not strike his anointed. ²⁴ See, as your life was precious in my eyes today, so may my life be much valued in the eyes of Yahweh, and may he rescue me out of all trouble." ²⁵ Then Saul said to David, "May you be blessed, David my son! You will certainly do great things and you will succeed in them." So David went his way, and Saul returned to his place.

1 Samuel 26 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Vengeance

David has another opportunity to kill Saul but he refuses to kill the one God had chosen as king. This contrasts with Saul, who tried to find David and kill him. Saul came to admit that David was more righteous than he was because he did not kill his enemy. (See: elect and righteous)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical question

David put his reason for not killing Saul in a rhetorical question: "Do not destroy him; for who can extend his hand against Yahweh's anointed one and be guiltless?"

1 Samuel 26:1

Is not David hiding ... Jeshimon?

This rhetorical question can be translated as an exclamation. Alternate translation: "David is hiding ... Jeshimon!"

before Jeshimon

"from which we can see Jeshimon"

Jeshimon

This is the name of a desert area near the Dead Sea. It can also be translated as "the Judean Wilderness" or "the wasteland." See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 23:19]

1 Samuel 26:2

Then Saul arose and went

The word "arose" is an idiom for taking action. Alternate translation: "Then Saul took action and he went"

three thousand
3,000

chosen men

men whom he had chosen because of their superior military abilities

1 Samuel 26:3

before Jeshimon

"from which they could see Jeshimon"

Jeshimon

This is the name of a desert area near the Dead Sea. It can also be translated as "the Judean Wilderness" or "the wasteland." See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 23:19]

1 Samuel 26:4

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 26:5

David arose and went

"David took action and he went"

Abner ... Ner

These are the names of men.

1 Samuel 26:6

Ahimelek ... Abishai

These are the names of men.

Zeruiah

These are the names of women.

go down ... to

David and his men were probably on higher ground than Saul.

I! I will go down

"I want to be the one who goes down"

1 Samuel 26:7

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 26:8

God has put your enemy into your hand

Abishai speaks as if the enemy were a small object that God had put into David's hand. The word "hand" is a metonym for the power the hand can wield. Alternate translation: "God has given you complete control over your enemy"

pin him to the ground with the spear

This is a metonym that refers to "kill with a spear"

I will not strike him a second time

"I will kill him the first time I strike him" or "I will not need to strike him a second time"

1 Samuel 26:9

who can extend his hand against Yahweh's anointed one and be guiltless?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. This can also be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "No one can strike Yahweh's anointed one and be without guilt." or "Anyone who strikes Yahweh's anointed one will be guilty of murder."

1 Samuel 26:10

As Yahweh lives

"as certainly as Yahweh lives" or "as surely as Yahweh lives"

his day will come to die

"he will die a natural death"

1 Samuel 26:11

extend my hand against

The hand is a metonym for the harm a hand can do.
Alternate translation: "do anything to harm"

let us go

David includes Abishai, so the word "us" here is inclusive.

1 Samuel 26:12

a deep sleep from Yahweh had fallen on them
Yahweh had caused them to sleep deeply.

1 Samuel 26:13

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 26:14

Do you not answer, Abner?

David uses a question to shame Abner into answering. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Answer me, Abner!"

David shouted

"David spoke as loudly as he could" so Saul and his men could hear him

1 Samuel 26:15

Are not you a courageous man?

David uses a question to rebuke Abner for not guarding Saul. Alternate translation: "You are a very brave man."

Who is like you in Israel?

David uses a question to rebuke Abner for not guarding Saul. Alternate translation: "You are the greatest soldier in Israel."

Why then have you not kept watch over your master the king?

Possible meanings are 1) this is a real question and David wants Abner to answer him or 2) this is a rhetorical question and David is rebuking Abner. Alternate translation: "Therefore you should have kept watch over your master the king!"

to destroy the king

The word "destroy" here is hyperbole for "kill."
Alternate translation: "to kill the king"

1 Samuel 26:16

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 26:17

my son

Saul was not David's true father. Saul speaks as if he were David's father to show David that he wants David to trust and respect him as David would trust and respect his own father.

1 Samuel 26:18

Why does my master pursue his servant?

Possible meanings are 1) David really does want Saul to answer the question or 2) this rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "My master has no reason to pursue his servant."

Why does my master pursue his servant?

Here David speaks of Saul in third person calling him "my master," and he speaks of himself in third person calling himself "his servant." David speaks this way to show respect to Saul. Alternate translation: "Why are you, my master, pursuing me, your servant?" or "Why are you pursuing me?"

What have I done?

Possible meanings are 1) David really does want Saul to answer the question or 2) this rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You know that I have done nothing to harm you."

What evil is in my hand?

This speaks of evil as if it were an object that is held in the hand. Here "hand" represents a person acting or doing something. Possible meanings are 1) David really does want Saul to answer the question. Alternate translation: "What have I done wrong?" or 2) this rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I have done nothing wrong!"

1 Samuel 26:19

you, let my master the king listen to the words of his servant

David speaks as if he and the king were other people to show respect to Saul. Alternate translation: "you my king, listen to my words"

stirred you up against me

"caused you to be angry with me"

may he be pleased with an offering

You may need to make explicit the reason he will give an offering. Alternate translation: "I will give him an offering and hope he will accept it so he will no longer cause you to be angry with me"

may they be cursed in the sight of Yahweh

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "may Yahweh decide to punish them"

for they have today driven me out, that I should not cling to the inheritance of Yahweh; they have said to me, 'Go worship other gods.'

"for they have today driven me out. It is as if they want me to stop clinging to the inheritance of Yahweh. It is as if they have said to me, 'Go worship other gods.'"

that I should not cling to the inheritance of Yahweh
"so that I will no longer trust that Yahweh will give me what he has promised me"

1 Samuel 26:20

the king of Israel has
David speaks as if the king was another person to show respect to Saul. Alternate translation: "you have"

do not let my blood fall to the earth
This is a polite way of saying "do not kill me."

the one flea
David uses the word "flea" as a metaphor for a person, himself, who cannot do any great harm. Alternate translation: "this single flea" or "me, and I cannot harm you any more than one flea can"

as when one hunts a partridge in the mountains
Saul is chasing David as if he were hunting a valuable wild bird.

1 Samuel 26:21

Return
Possible meanings are 1) "Return to serve me in my palace" or "Return to your home."

my son
Saul was not David's true father. Saul speaks as if he were David's father to show David that he wants David to trust and respect him as David would trust and respect his own father.

my life was precious in your eyes today
Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: "today you have considered my life to be very valuable" or "today you showed me that you really do respect me"

played the fool
"been very foolish"

1 Samuel 26:22

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 26:23

Yahweh put you into my hand today
The word "hand" is a metonym for the person's power. "Yahweh gave me an opportunity to attack you today" or "Yahweh placed me where I could easily have killed you"

pay each man
"give what is proper to each man"

his anointed
David speaks as if Saul were another person to show that he respects Saul because Saul is king. Alternate translation: "the one he has chosen to be king"

1 Samuel 26:24

your life was precious in my eyes today
Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. See how you translated similar words in [1 Samuel 26:21]

so may my life be much valued in the eyes of Yahweh
Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: "so may Yahweh consider my life very valuable as well" or "so may Yahweh value my life as much as I have valued your life"

1 Samuel 26:25

May you be blessed
This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "May Yahweh bless you"

my son
Saul was not David's true father. Saul speaks as if he were David's father to show David that he wants David to trust and respect him as David would trust and respect his own father.

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 26:2

Who did Saul take with him to seek David in the wilderness of Ziph?
Saul took three thousand chosen men of Israel.

1 Samuel 26:4

How did David know that Saul was coming after him into the wilderness?
David had sent out spies and learned from them that Saul was coming.

1 Samuel 26:5

Where did David go after learning that Saul had come?
David arose and went to the place where Saul camped.

1 Samuel 26:6

What did Joab's brother want to do when he and David saw Saul sleeping inside the camp?
Joab's brother wanted to kill Saul with his spear.

1 Samuel 26:7

What did Joab's brother want to do when he and David saw Saul sleeping inside the camp?
Joab's brother wanted to kill Saul with his spear.

1 Samuel 26:9

Why did David not want Joab's brother to kill Saul?
David said no one could extend his hand against Yahweh's anointed one and be guiltless.

1 Samuel 26:10

How does David say Saul must die?
Yahweh will kill Saul, or he will die on his own, or he will die in battle.

1 Samuel 26:11

What did David take from Saul?
David took the spear and the jar of water from near Saul's head.

1 Samuel 26:12

What did David take from Saul?
David took the spear and the jar of water from near Saul's head.

1 Samuel 26:13

What did David go after left Saul's camp?
He went over to the other side and stood on the top to the mountain far off.

1 Samuel 26:15

Why did David say Abner, the man who was to watch over Saul, deserved to die?
He did not keep watch after his master Saul when someone came to kill him.

1 Samuel 26:16

Why did David say Abner, the man who was to watch over Saul, deserved to die?
He did not keep watch after his master Saul when someone came to kill him.

1 Samuel 26:17

What question did David ask Saul?
David asked why Saul was pursuing David and what evil David had done.

1 Samuel 26:18

What question did David ask Saul?
David asked why Saul was pursuing David and what evil David had done.

1 Samuel 26:19

What did David want to happen to human beings that stirred Saul up against David?
David wants them to be cursed in the sight of Yahweh.

1 Samuel 26:21

What did Saul say to David?
Saul said that he had sinned and would harm David no more.

1 Samuel 26:22

What did David tell Saul to do about his spear?
He told Saul to send one of his young men over to get it.

1 Samuel 26:24

What value did David show that he had for Saul's life?
Saul's life was precious in David's eyes.

Chapter 27

¹ David said in his heart, "I will now perish one day by Saul's hand; there is nothing better for me than to escape into the land of the Philistines; Saul will give up looking for me any more within all the borders of Israel; in this way I will escape out of his hand." ² David arose and passed over, he and the six hundred men who were with him, to Achish son of Maok, the king of Gath. ³ David lived with Achish at Gath, he and his men, each man with his own household, and David with his two wives, Ahinoam the Jezreelite woman, and Abigail the Carmelite woman, Nabal's wife. ⁴ Saul was told that David had fled to Gath, so he looked for him no longer.

⁵ David said to Achish, "If I have found favor in your eyes, let them give me a place in one of the cities in the country, that I may live there. Why should your servant live in the royal city with you?" ⁶ So that day Achish gave him Ziklag; that is why Ziklag belongs to the kings of Judah to this very day. ⁷ The number of days that David lived in the land of the Philistines was a full year and four months.

⁸ David and his men attacked various places, making raids on the Geshurites, the Girzites, and the Amalekites; for those nations were the inhabitants of the land, as you go to Shur, as far as the land of Egypt. They had been living there in the land from ancient times. ⁹ David attacked the land and saved neither man nor woman alive. He took away the sheep and cattle, the donkeys, the camels, and the clothing. Then he returned and went back to Achish. ¹⁰ Achish would say, "Against whom have you made a raid today?" David would answer, "Against the south of Judah," or "Against the south of the Jerahmeelites," or "Against the south of the Kenites." ¹¹ David would keep neither man nor woman alive to bring them to Gath, saying, "So that they cannot say about us, 'David did such and such.'" This was what he did all the while he was living in the country of the Philistines. ¹² Achish believed David, saying, "He has made his people Israel utterly abhor him; he will therefore be my servant forever."

Footnotes

27:8 ^[1]Instead of

1 Samuel 27 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This begins a section about David living with the Philistines.

Special concepts in this chapter

David's move

David is afraid Saul will someday catch him and kill him, so he moves to the Philistine city of Gath. This is a type of exile David creates for himself out of fear. It is caused by his lack of trust in God. This is the same reason his descendants would come to be exiled. (See: trust)

1 Samuel 27:1

David said in his heart

Here "his heart" is a metonym that means to himself. Alternate translation: "David thought to himself"

escape out of his hand

The word "hand" is a synecdoche for the person. Alternate translation: "escape from him"

1 Samuel 27:2

David arose and passed over

"David took action; he passed over"

passed over

"passed over the border between Israel and Philistia"

six hundred men

600

Achish

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 21:10]

Maok

This is the name of a man.

1 Samuel 27:3

Ahinoam

This is the name of a woman. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 14:50]

Abigail

This is the name of a woman. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 25:3]

Nabal

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 25:3]

1 Samuel 27:4

Saul was told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone told Saul" or "Saul heard"

1 Samuel 27:5

If I have found favor in your eyes

Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 20:3]

let them give me a place

Since Achish was the one who would "give," this is a metonym for "please give me a place."

one of the cities in the country

"one of the outlying towns" or "one of the towns outside the city"

Why should your servant live in the royal city with you?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I do not need to live in the city with you." or "I am not important enough to live here with you in the royal city."

your servant

David speaks as if he were another person to show that he respected Achish.

1 Samuel 27:6

Ziklag

This is the name of a city in the southwest part of Judah.

1 Samuel 27:7

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 27:8

making raids on

attacking and taking property many times

Girzites

A people group who apparently lived somewhere between Philistia and Egypt.

as you go to Shur

Here "you" is being used as an indefinite pronoun that refers to anyone. Alternate translation: "on the way most people travel to Shur"

Shur

region on the northeast border of Egypt

1 Samuel 27:9

Achish

the king of Gath

1 Samuel 27:10

Achish

the king of Gath

Jerahmeelites

a clan from the tribe of Judah

Kenites

a people group who lived in the land of Midian

1 Samuel 27:11

Gath

one of five Philistine city-states.

1 Samuel 27:12

Achish

the king of Gath

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 27:1

Why did David think that he needed to escape into the land of the Philistines?

David felt that was the only way he could escape Saul.

1 Samuel 27:4

What made Saul no longer look for David?

Saul heard that David and those with him had fled to Gath.

1 Samuel 27:5

What did David ask and get from Achish the Philistine?

David asked for a place in one of the cities in the country, and Achish gave him Ziklag.

1 Samuel 27:6

What did David ask and get from Achish the Philistine?

David asked for a place in one of the cities in the country, and Achish gave him Ziklag.

1 Samuel 27:8

What did David and his men do with the men and women, animals and clothing from their raids?

They killed the people and took the animals and clothing and then returned to Achish.

1 Samuel 27:9

What did David and his men do with the men and women, animals and clothing from their raids?

They killed the people and took the animals and clothing and then returned to Achish.

1 Samuel 27:10

How did David tell Achish he had been when he returned from raids?

David said that he raided the south of Judah, so Achish thought he attacked Israel.

1 Samuel 27:11

Why did David keep no one alive and bring them to Gath?

David killed everyone so that they would be unable to tell what David had done.

1 Samuel 27:12

Why did Achish think that David has made his people of Israel utterly hate David?

Achish believed David's lies that he had raided the people of Israel.

Chapter 28

¹ It came about in those days that the Philistines gathered their armies together for battle to fight with Israel. Achish said to David, "Know for certain that you will go out with me in the army, you and your men." ² David said to Achish, "That being the case, you will know what your servant can do." Achish said to David, "Then I will make you my bodyguard all your days."

³ Now Samuel had died, and all Israel had lamented him and buried him in Ramah, in his own city. Also, Saul had banned sorcerers and spiritists from the land. ⁴ Then the Philistines gathered themselves together and came and camped at Shunem; and Saul gathered all Israel together, and they camped at Gilboa. ⁵ When Saul saw the army of the Philistines, he was afraid, and his heart trembled very much. ⁶ Saul prayed to Yahweh for help, but Yahweh did not answer him—neither by dreams, nor by Urim, nor by prophets. ⁷ Then Saul said to his servants, "Find me a woman who is a sorceress, so that I may go to her and seek her advice." His servants said to him, "See, there is a woman in Endor who is a sorceress."

⁸ So Saul disguised himself, putting on other clothing and went, he and two men with him. They went to the woman by night. He said, "Divine for me by a spirit and bring up for me the one I name." ⁹ The woman said to him, "See, you know what Saul has done, how he has banned sorcerers and spiritists from the land. So why are you setting a trap for my life, to make me die?" ¹⁰ Saul swore to her by Yahweh and said, "As Yahweh lives, no punishment will happen to you for this thing." ¹¹ Then the woman said, "Whom should I bring up to you?" Saul said, "Bring up Samuel for me." ¹² When the woman saw Samuel, she cried with a loud voice and spoke to Saul, saying, "Why have you deceived me? For you are Saul." ¹³ The king said to her, "Do not be afraid. What do you see?" The woman said to Saul, "I see a god coming up out of the earth." ¹⁴ He said to her, "What does he look like?" She said, "An old man is coming up; he is clothed with a robe." Then Saul knew it was Samuel, and he bowed with his face to the ground and showed him respect.

¹⁵ Samuel said to Saul, "Why have you disturbed me and brought me up?" Saul answered, "I am very distressed, for the Philistines are waging war against me, and God has left me and does not answer me any more, neither by prophets, nor by dreams. Therefore I have called you, that you may make known to me what I will do." ¹⁶ Samuel said, "What then do you ask me, since Yahweh has left you, and he has become your enemy?" ¹⁷ Yahweh has done to you what he said he would. Yahweh has torn the kingdom out of your hand and he has given it to someone else—to David. ¹⁸ Because you did not obey the voice of Yahweh and did not carry out his fierce wrath on Amalek, he has therefore done this today to you. ¹⁹ Yahweh will give Israel along with you into the hand of the Philistines, and tomorrow you and your sons will be with me. Yahweh will also give the army of Israel into the hand of the Philistines."

²⁰ Then Saul immediately fell his full length on the ground and was very afraid because of the words of Samuel. There was no strength in him, for he had eaten no food all that day, neither that whole night. ²¹ The woman came to Saul and saw that he was very troubled, She said to him, "See, your woman servant has listened to your voice; I have put my life in my hand and have listened to the words that you said to me. ²² Now therefore, I beg you, listen also to the voice of your woman servant, and let me set a little food in front of you. Eat so that you may gain strength for when you go on your way." ²³ But Saul refused and said, "I will not eat." But his servants, together with the woman, compelled him, and he listened to their voice. So he rose from the ground and sat on the bed. ²⁴ The woman had a fattened calf in the house; she hurried and killed it; she took flour, kneaded it, and baked unleavened bread with it. ²⁵ She brought it before Saul and his servants, and they ate. Then they got up and left that night.

1 Samuel 28 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Talking to the dead

Talking to the dead was against the law of Moses. God or the Holy Spirit left Saul because of his sin and would not help him. (See: death, lawofmoses and holyspirit and sin)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical question

Samuel uses a rhetorical question to say it was useless to ask his advice since there was no way Saul could be successful with God against him: "What then do you ask me, since Yahweh has left you, and he has become your enemy?"

1 Samuel 28:1

to fight with Israel

"to fight against Israel"

1 Samuel 28:2

That being the case, you will know ... "Then I will make

The phrases "That being the case" and "Then" show that the speaker agrees with what the other person has just said. Alternate translation: "Very well, I will go with you so that you will know ... Very well, I will make"

you will know what your servant can do

David probably wanted Achish to think that David would kill many Israelites, but "what your servant can do" could also mean that David was planning to kill Philistines instead. Try to translate so that the reader can see both of these possible meanings.

your servant

David speaks as if he is another person so that Achish will think David respects him. Alternate translation: "I"

make you

The word "you" refers to David and so is singular.

bodyguard

a person who protects another person

1 Samuel 28:3

Now Samuel ... spiritists

The writer provides background information to prepare the reader for the events that follow.

banned ... from the land

He had officially removed them from the country or region, or prevented from entering. Alternate translation: "expelled ... from Israel"

sorcerers and spiritists

"those who talked with the dead and those who talked with spirits." If your language has one word for those who talk with the dead and one word for those who talk with spirits, or if your language has only one word for those who talk with the dead and with spirits, you should use those words here.

1 Samuel 28:4

Then the Philistines gathered

after David and Achish spoke (1 Samuel 28:2)

gathered all Israel together

"gathered all his armies in Israel together"

Shunem ... Gilboa

these are names of places

1 Samuel 28:5

he was afraid, and his heart trembled very much

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of his fear. Here Saul is referred to by his "heart." Alternate translation: "he was terrified"

1 Samuel 28:6

Urim

The high priest carried the sacred lots called Urim and Thummin in his breastplate, in a marked pouch, next to his heart.

1 Samuel 28:7

Endor

This is the name of a place.

1 Samuel 28:8

Saul disguised himself ... and went ... to the woman by night

Saul disguised himself because the way from Gilboa (1 Samuel 28:4) to Endor ([1 Samuel 28:7](#)) was through land that the Philistines were living in. He traveled all day and reached the woman after the sun had gone down.

disguised

changed his usual appearance so no one would know who he was

Divine for me by a spirit

Saul was requesting that the woman call on the familiar spirit she used to contact the dead and have that spirit call up the spirit of the dead person Saul would name.

1 Samuel 28:9

sorcerers and spiritists

"those who talked with the dead and those who talked with spirits." If your language has one word for those who talk with the dead and one word for those who talk with spirits, or if your language has only one word for those who talk with the dead and with spirits, you should use those words here. See how you translated similar words in 1 Samuel 28:3.

my life

The word "life" represents the person. Alternate translation: "me"

1 Samuel 28:10

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 28:11

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 28:12

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 28:13

a god

Other possible meanings are 1) "one like God" or 2) "a judge" (1 Samuel 7:15).

1 Samuel 28:14

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 28:15

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 28:16

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 28:17

torn the kingdom out of your hand

Samuel speaks as if the kingdom were a physical object that could be held in the hand and grabbed out by another person. Alternate translation: "made you so you are no longer king" or "made another person king in your place"

1 Samuel 28:18

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 28:19

Yahweh will give Israel along with you into the hand of the Philistines

Samuel speaks as if the people of Israel were a small object that Yahweh would give to the Philistines, whom he speaks of as if they were one person. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will allow the Philistines to do whatever they want to do to you and the people of Israel"

will be with me

This is a polite way to say that Saul will die. Alternate translation: "will be dead"

Yahweh will also give the army of Israel into the hand of the Philistines

Samuel speaks as if the army of Israel were a small object that Yahweh would give to the Philistines, whom he speaks of as if they were one person. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will allow the Philistines to do whatever they want to do to the army of Israel"

1 Samuel 28:20

he had eaten no food all that day, neither that whole night

Saul had not eaten during the night before he traveled from Gilboa (1 Samuel 28:4) to Endor ([1 Samuel 28:7](#)), nor during the day as he journeyed, nor during the night on which he visited the woman.

1 Samuel 28:21

I have put my life in my hand and have listened

This is an idiom. "I could die because I listened" or "Someone could kill me because I listened"

1 Samuel 28:22

the voice of your woman servant

The woman speaks as if she is another person to show that she respects Saul. She refers to herself by her "voice" to emphasize what she says. Alternate translation: "my voice" or "me speak to you"

1 Samuel 28:23

Saul refused

"Saul would not do what they asked"

compelled him

"forced him"

1 Samuel 28:24

fatted calf

a calf that has been grown and fed to be available for a special feast

she ... kneaded it

She mixed flour and oil, working and rolling the mixture thoroughly with her hands to produce dough for baking.

1 Samuel 28:25

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 28:1

What did Achish want David to do when the Philistines gathered to fight Israel?

Achish wanted David to permanently be his bodyguard.

1 Samuel 28:2

What did Achish want David to do when the Philistines gathered to fight Israel?

Achish wanted David to permanently be his bodyguard.

1 Samuel 28:3

Who did Saul ban from the land after Samuel's death?

Saul banned all those who talked with the dead or with spirits.

1 Samuel 28:4

Which two countries gathered to fight?

The Philistines and Israel gathered.

1 Samuel 28:5

Why did Saul search for a woman who claimed to talk to the dead?

Saul was afraid of the Philistine army and did not hear from Yahweh.

1 Samuel 28:6

Why did Saul search for a woman who claimed to talk to the dead?

Saul was afraid of the Philistine army and did not hear from Yahweh.

1 Samuel 28:7

Why did Saul search for a woman who claimed to talk to the dead?

Saul was afraid of the Philistine army and did not hear from Yahweh.

1 Samuel 28:8

What was the women afraid of when the disguised Saul and two of his men went to talk to her?

She was afraid because Saul killed everyone who talked to the dead after Samuel's death.

1 Samuel 28:9

What was the women afraid of when the disguised Saul and two of his men went to talk to her?

She was afraid because Saul killed everyone who talked to the dead after Samuel's death.

1 Samuel 28:10

What did Saul promise to the woman?

Saul promised that she would not be punished if she helped Saul.

1 Samuel 28:11

How did the woman know that Saul was the man who asked for her to bring up Samuel?

She knew that she was deceived when she saw Samuel.

1 Samuel 28:12

How did the woman know that Saul was the man who asked for her to bring up Samuel?

She knew that she was deceived when she saw Samuel.

1 Samuel 28:13

What did the woman say Samuel looked like?

The woman saw a god coming out of the earth, an old man clothed with a robe.

1 Samuel 28:14

What did the woman say Samuel looked like?

The woman saw a god coming out of the earth, an old man clothed with a robe.

1 Samuel 28:15

Why did Saul bring up Samuel?

Saul was distressed because the Philistines are going to war with him and God has left Saul.

1 Samuel 28:16

What did Samuel say Yahweh had done with Saul's kingdom?

Yahweh had torn Saul's kingdom from him and given it to David.

1 Samuel 28:17

What did Samuel say Yahweh had done with Saul's kingdom?

Yahweh had torn Saul's kingdom from him and given it to David.

1 Samuel 28:19

How soon were Saul and his sons going to be dead with Samuel?

They would die the next day.

1 Samuel 28:22

What did the woman and Saul's servants urged him to do?

They urged him to eat and gain his strength.

1 Samuel 28:24

What did the woman bring to Saul and his servants to eat?

She killed a fatted calf and baked unleavened bread for them to eat.

1 Samuel 28:25

What did the woman bring to Saul and his servants to eat?

She killed a fatted calf and baked unleavened bread for them to eat.

Chapter 29

¹ Now the Philistines gathered together all their army at Aphek, and Israel camped by the spring that is in Jezreel. ² The princes of the Philistines passed on by hundreds and by thousands; David and his men passed on in the rear guard with Achish. ³ Then the princes of the Philistines said, "What are these Hebrews doing here?" Achish said to the other princes of the Philistines, "Is not this David, the servant of Saul, the king of Israel, who has been with me these days, or rather these years, and I have found no fault with him since he came away to me to this day?" ⁴ But the princes of the Philistines were angry with him and said, "Send the man back, that he may return to the place you assigned him. He will not go down with us into battle, for he will become our adversary during the fighting. For how else could he make himself acceptable to his master than by taking the heads of our own men?" ⁵ Is this not David of whom they sang one to another in dances, saying,

'Saul has killed his thousands,
and David his ten thousands?'

⁶ Then Achish called David and said to him, "As Yahweh lives, you have been good, and your going out and your coming in with me in the army is good in my view; for I have found nothing wrong with you since the day of your coming to me to this very day. Nevertheless, the princes are not favorable to you. ⁷ So now return and go in peace, so that you do not displease the princes of the Philistines." ⁸ David said to Achish, "But what have I done? What have you found in your servant as long as I have been before you to this day, that I may not go and fight against the enemies of my master the king?" ⁹ Achish answered and said to David, "I know that you are as blameless in my sight as an angel of God; nevertheless, the princes of the Philistines have said, 'He must not go up with us to the battle.'" ¹⁰ So now rise up early in the morning with the servants of your master who have come with you; as soon as you are up early in the morning and have light, go away." ¹¹ So David rose up early, he and his men, to leave in the morning, to return into the land of the Philistines. But the Philistines went up to Jezreel.

1 Samuel 29 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetic song in 29:5.

Other possible translation difficulties

It is unclear whether David wanted to go into battle with the Philistines. He would have been fighting against Saul, but he also would have been fighting against Israel's soldiers. It is probably best to see that David is conflicted over this issue, but some scholars believe that David planned on turning against the Philistines in the battle.

1 Samuel 29:1

spring

a small stream of water flowing naturally from the Earth

1 Samuel 29:2

passed on by hundreds and by thousands

"divided their men into groups; some groups had one hundred soldiers and some groups had one thousand soldiers"

hundreds ... thousands

100s ... 1,000s

David and his men passed on in the rear guard with Achish

The groups of hundreds and thousands passed on first, then Achish and his helpers, and then David, his men, and the other Philistine soldiers, who were guarding Achish.

1 Samuel 29:3

What are these Hebrews doing here?

Possible ways to translate this rhetorical question as a statement are Alternate translation: 1) "You

should not have allowed these Hebrews, our enemies, to be here with us." or 2) "Tell us who these Hebrews are."

Is not this David ... these years, and I have found ... this day?

Another possible translation is "Is not this David, ... these years? I have found ... this day." The rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should know that this is David ... these years. I have found ... this day."

I have found no fault with him

"I know of nothing that he has done wrong"

1 Samuel 29:4

He will not go down with us into battle

The person here is a synecdoche for the army he commands. Alternate translation: "Do not let his army join with our army against our enemies"

For how else could he make himself acceptable to his master than by taking the heads of our own men?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Here "taking the heads" is a metonym for killing. Alternate translation: "The best way for David to make peace with his master would be by killing our soldiers!"

1 Samuel 29:5

Is this not David of whom they sang one to another in dances, saying, 'Saul ... ten thousands'?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not trust David—he is the one of whom they sang one to another in dances, saying, 'Saul ... ten thousands!'"

thousands ... ten thousands

"1,000s ... 10,000s"

1 Samuel 29:6

As Yahweh lives

This is an idiom. "As certainly as Yahweh lives" or "This is a true statement"

your going out and your coming in with me in the army is good

"I am happy to have you go out and come in with me and my army" or "It is good that you go everywhere with me and my army"

1 Samuel 29:7

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 29:8

my master the king

David speaks as if Achish were another person so that Achish will think David respects him. Alternate translation: "you, my master and king"

1 Samuel 29:9

nevertheless, the princes

"even though that is true, this is more important: the princes" or "however, the princes"

1 Samuel 29:10

your master

The reader should understand that Achish is speaking of Saul.

have light

"can see with the morning sun"

1 Samuel 29:11

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 29:3

What did Achish say he had not found in David?

Achish said he had found no fault with David since he came to him.

1 Samuel 29:4

What were the princes of the Philistines afraid that David would do during the battle?

They feared that David would become an enemy to them in the battle.

1 Samuel 29:6

What did Achish tell David to do because the princes of the Philistines did not want David there?

He told David to peacefully return to his home.

1 Samuel 29:7

What did Achish tell David to do because the princes of the Philistines did not want David there?

He told David to peacefully return to his home.

1 Samuel 29:9

What was the final decision about David that Achish told David?

They said David must not go up with them to the battle.

1 Samuel 29:10

What did Achish tell David to do in the morning?

He told David to rise early, take the men that had come with him, and go away.

Chapter 30

¹ It came about, when David and his men had come to Ziklag on the third day, that the Amalekites had made a raid upon the Negev and on Ziklag. They attacked Ziklag, burned it, ² and captured the women and everyone who was in it, both small and great. They killed no one, but carried them off as they went on their way. ³ When David and his men came to the city, it was burned, and their wives, their sons, and their daughters were taken captive. ⁴ Then David and the people that were with him raised their voices and wept until they had no more power to weep. ⁵ David's two wives were taken captive, Ahinoam the Jezreelite woman, and Abigail the wife of Nabal the Carmelite. ⁶ David was greatly distressed, for the people were talking about stoning him, for all the people were bitter in spirit, each man for his sons and daughters; but David strengthened himself in Yahweh, his God.

⁷ David said to Abiathar son of Ahimelek, the priest, "I beg you, bring the ephod here for me." Abiathar brought the ephod to David. ⁸ David prayed to Yahweh for direction, saying, "If I pursue after this troop, will I overtake them?" Yahweh answered him, "Pursue, for you will certainly overtake them, and you will surely recover everything." ⁹ So David went, he and the six hundred men who were with him; they came to the brook Besor, where those who were left behind stayed. ¹⁰ But David kept pursuing, he and four hundred men; for two hundred had stayed behind, who were so weak that they could not go over the brook Besor.

¹¹ They found an Egyptian in a field and brought him to David; they gave him bread, and he ate; they gave him water to drink; ¹² and they gave him a piece of a cake of figs and two clusters of raisins. When he had eaten, he gained strength again, for he had eaten no bread nor drunk any water for three days and three nights. ¹³ David said to him, "To whom do you belong? Where do you come from?" He said, "I am a young man of Egypt, servant to an Amalekite; my master left me because three days ago I fell sick. ¹⁴ We made a raid on the Negev of the Kerethites, and what belongs to Judah, and the Negev of Caleb, and we burned Ziklag." ¹⁵ David said to him, "Will you bring me down to this raiding party?" The Egyptian said, "Swear to me by God that you will not kill me or betray me up into the hands of my master, and I will bring you down to this raiding party."

¹⁶ When the Egyptian had brought David down, the raiders were spread out over all the ground, eating and drinking and celebrating because of all the booty they had taken out of the land of the Philistines and from the land of Judah. ¹⁷ David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. Not a man escaped except for four hundred young men, who rode on camels and fled. ¹⁸ David recovered all that the Amalekites had taken; and David rescued his two wives. ¹⁹ Nothing was missing, neither small nor great, neither sons nor daughters, neither booty, nor anything that the raiders had taken for themselves. David brought back everything. ²⁰ David took all the flocks and the herds, which the men drove ahead of the other livestock. They said, "This is David's booty."

²¹ David came to the two hundred men who had been too weak to follow him, the ones the others had made to stay at the brook Besor. These men went ahead to meet David and the people who were with him. When David came to these people, he greeted them. ²² Then all the wicked men and worthless fellows among those who had gone with David said, "Because these men did not go with us, we will not give them any of the booty that we have recovered. However, each man may lead away his wife and children and go." ²³ Then David said, "You must not act like this, my brothers, with what Yahweh has given to us. He has preserved us and given into our hand the marauding band that came against us. ²⁴ Who will listen to you in this matter? For as the share is for anyone who goes into battle, so also will the share be for anyone who waits by the baggage; they will share and share alike." ²⁵ It has been so from that day to this day, for David made it a statute and a decree for Israel.

²⁶ When David came to Ziklag, he sent some of the booty to the elders of Judah, to his friends, saying, "See, here is a present for you from the booty from Yahweh's enemies." ²⁷ He also sent some to the elders who were in Bethel, and to those who were in Ramoth of the South, and to those who were in Jattir, ²⁸ and to those who were in Aroer, and to those who were in Siphmoth, and to those who were in Eshtemoa. ²⁹ He also sent some to the elders who were in Rakal, and to those who were in the cities of the Jerahmeelites, and to those who were in the cities of the Kenites, ³⁰ and to those who were in Hormah, and to those who were in Bor Ashan, and to those who were in Athak, ³¹ and to those who were in Hebron, and to all the places where David himself and his men habitually went.

1 Samuel 30 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

David fights the Amalekites

When David and his men arrive home, they find the Amalekites have raided Ziklag and taken everything. They catch and destroy them and bring back all of their goods and families. Then David sends gifts to all the cities in Judah through which they had traveled.

1 Samuel 30:1

Ziklag

Ziklag is a city in the southern part of Judah. This was where David and his men kept their families.

1 Samuel 30:2

they

the Amalekites

both small and great

Possible meanings are 1) "both unimportant people and important people" or 2) "both physically small and physically large."

1 Samuel 30:3

their wives ... sons ... daughters

belonging to David and his men

it was burned, and their wives ... daughters were taken captive

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "they saw that someone had burned it and taken their wives ... captive"

1 Samuel 30:4

the people that were with him

These were mainly his army of men.

1 Samuel 30:5

General Information:

David finds strength in Yahweh after the raid.

Ahinoam the Jezreelite woman

"Ahinoam from Jezreel"

Nabal the Carmelite

"Nabal the man from Carmel"

Ahinoam ... Abigail

women's names

1 Samuel 30:6

distressed

suffering

all the people were bitter in spirit

The word "bitter" is a metaphor for the desire to rebel. The word "spirit" is a synecdoche for the person. Alternate translation: "all the people were ready to rebel against David" or "all the people were very unhappy"

David strengthened himself in Yahweh, his God

Possible meanings are 1) "David took courage because he knew Yahweh his God would help him" or 2) "Yahweh his God made David strong."

1 Samuel 30:7

General Information:

David seeks Yahweh's direction in dealing with the raid on his people.

1 Samuel 30:8

David prayed to Yahweh for direction

The abstract noun "direction" can be translated as a clause. Alternate translation: "David prayed that Yahweh would tell David what David should do"

pursue

chase and try to catch

1 Samuel 30:9

six hundred men

600 men

brook

small stream

1 Samuel 30:10

kept pursuing

"kept chasing them, trying to catch them"

four hundred men

400 men

two hundred

200 men

who were so weak

They were tired from their own raids and now in pursuit of the Amalekites. They no longer had the strength to continue.

1 Samuel 30:11

an Egyptian in a field

He was left there to die from the Amalekite raiding party.

1 Samuel 30:12

clusters of raisins

"clusters of dried grapes"

1 Samuel 30:13

David said to him

David questioned the Egyptian slave.

three days ago

"three days in the past"

three days

3 days

1 Samuel 30:14

a raid

an attack on a town to take property

1 Samuel 30:15

raiding party

a group of armed warriors who attack people or places unexpectedly

you will not ... betray me up into the hands of my master

Here "hands" refers to control. Alternate translation: "you will not ... violate the trust I have in you by allowing my master to control me again"

1 Samuel 30:16

booty

the goods they had stolen in the raid

1 Samuel 30:17

twilight

the time just after the sun goes down until the sky is dark

Not a man escaped except for four hundred young men

This double negative emphasizes that the four hundred young men were the only ones who escaped. Alternate translation: "The only ones who escaped were four hundred young men"

four hundred

400

1 Samuel 30:18

recovered ... rescued

"got back ... got back." These two words translate the same Hebrew word. Your language may also have a word for a person getting his own property back from the person who stole it that is different from the word for a person getting his wife back from those who have captured her.

rescued his two wives

"got his two wives back" or "saved his two wives from danger"

1 Samuel 30:19

Nothing was missing

"None of the items the Amalekites had stolen were lost"

neither small nor great

Possible meanings are 1) "neither unimportant people nor important people" or 2) "neither physically small nor physically large." See how you translated similar words in 1 Samuel 30:2.

booty

goods that the Amalekites had stolen. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 30:16.

1 Samuel 30:20

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 30:21

two hundred

200

the brook Besor

a small stream or creek named Besor. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 30:9]

greeted them

spoke to them in a friendly way

1 Samuel 30:22

the booty

the goods they had taken from the enemy in battle. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 30:16.

we have recovered

"we have regained" or "we have gotten back"

1 Samuel 30:23

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 30:24

Who will listen to you in this matter?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement: Alternate translation: "No one will listen to you in this matter."

as the share is for anyone who goes

The abstract noun "share" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "as what belongs to anyone who goes"

anyone who goes into battle

the warriors who actually fought the enemy in war

will share and share alike

"will make sure that all receive the same amount"

anyone who waits by the baggage

the people who supported the warriors by managing and guarding their supplies

baggage

belongings that the soldiers left behind when they went into battle

1 Samuel 30:25

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 30:26

Ziklag

This is the name of a town.

booty

goods that David had taken from the Amalekites after the battle. See how you translated this in 1 Samuel 30:16.

a present

"a gift"

1 Samuel 30:27

Connecting Statement:

The writer begins a list of towns whose elders received gifts from David.

Bethel ... Jattir

These are names of towns.

1 Samuel 30:28

Connecting Statement:

The writer continues the list that began in 1 Samuel 30:27 of towns whose elders received gifts from David.

Aroer ... Siphmoth ... Eshtemoa

These are names of towns.

1 Samuel 30:29

Connecting Statement:

The writer continues the list that began in 1 Samuel 30:27 of towns whose elders received gifts from David.

Rakal

This is the name of a town.

Jerahmeelites ... Kenites

These are the names of people groups.

1 Samuel 30:30

Connecting Statement:

The writer continues the list that began in 1 Samuel 30:27 of towns whose elders received gifts from David.

Hormah ... Bor Ashan ... Athak

These are names of towns.

1 Samuel 30:31

Connecting Statement:

The writer finishes the list that began in 1 Samuel 30:27 of towns whose elders received gifts from David.

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 30:1

What did David and his men find had happened to Ziklag while they were away?

The Amalekites had raided, attacked, burned it, and captured all the women and others and took them away.

1 Samuel 30:2

What did David and his men find had happened to Ziklag while they were away?

The Amalekites had raided, attacked, burned it, and captured all the women and others and took them away.

1 Samuel 30:3

How did David and his men react to what they found in Ziklag?

They raised their voices and wept until they could weep no more.

1 Samuel 30:4

How did David and his men react to what they found in Ziklag?

They raised their voices and wept until they could weep no more.

1 Samuel 30:5

Why was David distressed?

His two wives were taken captive, and the grieving people were talking about stoning him.

1 Samuel 30:6

Why was David distressed?

His two wives were taken captive, and the grieving people were talking about stoning him.

1 Samuel 30:8

What did David want to know when he prayed to Yahweh?

David wanted to know, if he pursued after the Amalekites, would he overtake them.

What was Yahweh's answer to David?

Yahweh told him to pursue the troop, be successful, and recover everything that had been taken.

1 Samuel 30:10

What happened to two hundred of David's men at the brook Besor?

They so weak that they had to stay behind.

1 Samuel 30:12

What was wrong with the Egyptian man that David and his men found as they were pursuing the Amalekites?

He had not eaten bread or drunk any water for three days and three nights.

1 Samuel 30:13

Why had the Egyptian's master left him?

He said he fell sick three days ago.

1 Samuel 30:15

What was the Egyptian's requirement before he would show David where the raiding party was?

He told David to swear that he would not kill him or betray him to his master.

1 Samuel 30:16

What were the raiders doing when David attacked them?

They were celebrating because of all the booty they had taken from the land of the Philistines and Judah.

1 Samuel 30:17

What were the raiders doing when David attacked them?

They were celebrating because of all the booty they had taken from the land of the Philistines and Judah.

1 Samuel 30:18

What did David recover after his attack on the raiders?

He recovered everything the Amalekites and raiders had taken.

1 Samuel 30:22

Why didn't the wicked men think that the recovered booty should be shared with those men that were left behind?

They said those left behind did not go and fight with them.

1 Samuel 30:23

Why did David tell the wicked men they should all share and share alike?

He said Yahweh had preserved them and had given them victory over the raiders that had come against them.

1 Samuel 30:24

Why did David tell the wicked men they should all share and share alike?

He said Yahweh had preserved them and had given them victory over the raiders that had come against them.

1 Samuel 30:26

What did David do with the booty from Yahweh's enemies when he came back to Ziklag?

David shared the booty with many elders of Judah and other places that he and his men frequently went.

Chapter 31

¹ Now the Philistines fought against Israel. The men of Israel fled from before the Philistines and fell down dead on Mount Gilboa. ² The Philistines closely pursued Saul and his sons. The Philistines killed Jonathan, Abinadab, and Malki-Shua, his sons. ³ The battle went heavily against Saul, and the archers overtook him. He was in severe pain because of them. ⁴ Then Saul said to his armor bearer, "Draw your sword and thrust me through with it. Otherwise, these uncircumcised will come and abuse me." But his armor bearer would not, for he was very afraid. So Saul took his own sword and fell on it. ⁵ When his armor bearer saw that Saul was dead, he fell on his sword in the same way and died with him. ⁶ So Saul died, his three sons, and his armor bearer—these men all died together that same day.

⁷ When the men of Israel who were on the other side of the valley, and those beyond the Jordan, saw that the men of Israel had fled, and that Saul and his sons were dead, they abandoned their cities and fled, and the Philistines came and lived in them. ⁸ It came about on the next day, when the Philistines came to strip the dead, that they found Saul and his three sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. ⁹ They cut off his head and stripped off his armor, and sent messengers into the land of the Philistines throughout to carry the news to their idols' temples and to the people. ¹⁰ They put his armor in the temple of the Ashtoreths, and they fastened his body to the city wall of Beth Shan. ¹¹ When the inhabitants of Jabesh Gilead heard of what the Philistines had done to Saul, ¹² all the fighting men arose and went all night and took the body of Saul and the bodies of his sons from the wall of Beth Shan. They went to Jabesh and burned them there. ¹³ Then they took their bones and buried them under a tamarisk tree in Jabesh, and fasted for seven days.

1 Samuel 31 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the end of the section on Saul, but the book continues in 2 Samuel 1.

Special concepts in this chapter

Saul's punishment

Saul receives his punishment from God: death for his disobedience and resisting the will of God. (See: willofgod)

1 Samuel 31:1

Now the Philistines fought against Israel

This battle was the result of the conflict between David and the Philistines in 1 Samuel 29:11. The writer has finished telling the story of David that began in 1 Samuel 30:1, and now he tells about the battle between the Israelites and the Philistines.

against Israel

"Israel" refers to the people who live there.
Alternate translation: "against the people of Israel"

Mount Gilboa

This is the name of a mountain

1 Samuel 31:2

closely pursued Saul and his sons

"chased Saul and three of his sons"

Abinadab, and Malki-Shua

These are names of men.

1 Samuel 31:3

The battle went heavily against Saul

This is an idiom. "Saul's army began to lose the battle"

1 Samuel 31:4

armor bearer

The armor bearer carried the large shield of his commanding officer and other weapons. He protected the commanding officer during a battle.

these uncircumcised

The nominal adjective "uncircumcised" can be translated as an adjective. Not being circumcised is a metonym for being foreigners. Alternate translation: "these men who have not been circumcised" or "these non-Israelite men"

would not

The ellipsis can be filled in. Alternate translation:
"would not do what Saul had told him to do"

took his own sword and fell on it

"killed himself with his own sword"

1 Samuel 31:5

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

1 Samuel 31:6

that same day

"on that one day"

1 Samuel 31:7

lived in them

lived in the cities the men of Israel had left

1 Samuel 31:8

strip the dead

take the armor and weapons off the dead Israelites'
bodies

Mount Gilboa

a mountain range overlooking the Valley of Jezreel
in northern Israel, south of Nazareth

1 Samuel 31:9

the land of the Philistines throughout

"all areas of the land of the Philistines"

to carry the news to their idols' temples and to the people

"to speak the news inside the temples and to the people"

their idols' temples

the buildings where they worshiped their idols

1 Samuel 31:10

Ashtoreths

ancient false goddesses and idols, also called
"Asherah" or "Astarte"

fastened

attached, probably with a large spike or nail

Beth Shan

the name of a city

1 Samuel 31:11

Jabesh

This is the name of a town. See how you translated
this in [1 Samuel 11:1]

what the Philistines had done to Saul

"how the Philistines had dishonored Saul"

1 Samuel 31:12

all night

"throughout the whole night"

1 Samuel 31:13

a tamarisk tree

This is a type of tree. See how you translated this in
[1 Samuel 22:6]

ULB Translation Questions

1 Samuel 31:1

What happened to the men of Israel when they fought the Philistines?

The men of Israel fled from the Philistines and fell dead.

1 Samuel 31:2

What happened to Saul's sons?

The Philistines killed his sons.

1 Samuel 31:3

What happened to Saul in the battle?

He was overtaken by the archers and was in severe pain.

1 Samuel 31:4

What did Saul ask his armor bearer to do because Saul was in severe pain and he was afraid his enemy would come and abuse him?

Saul asked him to draw his sword and kill him.

What did Saul do when his armor bearer was afraid and would not kill him?

Saul took his own sword and fell on it.

1 Samuel 31:5

What did the armor bearer do after he saw that Saul was dead?

He fell on his own sword and died.

1 Samuel 31:7

Why did the men of Israel from the other side of the valley and beyond the Jordan abandon their cities and flee?

They fled because they saw that the other men of Israel had fled and that Saul and his sons were dead.

1 Samuel 31:9

What did the Philistines do with Saul's body that they found when they came to strip the dead?

The Philistines cut off Saul's head and fastened his body to the city wall of Beth Shan.

1 Samuel 31:11

What did the fighting men of Jabesh Gilead do after its inhabitants heard what happened to Saul?

They went to Bethshan and took the bodies of Saul and his sons to Jabesh and burned them.

1 Samuel 31:12

What did the fighting men of Jabesh Gilead do after its inhabitants heard what happened to Saul?

They went to Bethshan and took the bodies of Saul and his sons to Jabesh and burned them.

1 Samuel 31:13

What did the inhabitants of Jabesh do with the bones of Saul and his sons?

They buried their bones under a terebinth tree in Jabesh and fasted for seven days.

ULB Translation Words

Aaron

Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the priests for the people of Israel.

(See also: [priest](#), [Moses](#), [Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:14
- Acts 07:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 01:05
- Numbers 16:45

Word Data:

- Strong's: H175, G2

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Aaron, Aaron's

Abiathar

Facts:

Abiathar was a high priest for the nation of Israel during the time of King David.

- When King Saul killed the priests, Abiathar escaped and went to David in the wilderness.
- Abiathar and another high priest named Zadok served David faithfully throughout his reign.
- After David's death, Abiathar helped Adonijah try to become king instead of Solomon.
- Because of this, King Solomon removed Abiathar from the priesthood.

(See also: [Zadok](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#), [David](#), [Solomon](#), [Adonijah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- 1 Kings 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:22-23
- 2 Samuel 17:15
- Mark 02:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H54, G8

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abiathar, Abiathar's

Abijah

Facts:

Abijah was a king of Judah who reigned from 915 to 913 B.C. He was a son of King Rehoboam. There were also several other men named Abijah in the Old Testament:

- Samuel's sons Abijah and Joel were leaders over the people of Israel at Beersheba. Because Abijah and his brother were dishonest and greedy, the people asked Samuel to appoint a king to rule them instead.
- Abijah was one of the temple priests during the time of King David.
- Abijah was one of King Jeroboam's sons.
- Abijah was also a chief priest who returned with Zerubbabel to Jerusalem from the Babylonian captivity.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:03
- 1 Samuel 08:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:02
- 2 Chronicles 13:19
- Luke 01:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H29, G7

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abijah, Abijah's

Abner

Facts:

Abner was a cousin of King Saul in the Old Testament.

- Abner was the chief commander of Saul's army, and introduced young David to Saul after David killed Goliath the giant.
- After King Saul's death, Abner appointed Saul's son Ishbosheth as king in Israel, while David was appointed king in Judah.
- Later, Abner was treacherously killed by David's chief commander, Joab.

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:26-28
- 1 Kings 02:5-6
- 1 Kings 02:32
- 1 Samuel 17:55-56
- 2 Samuel 03:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H74

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Abner, Abner's

Ahijah

Facts:

Ahijah was the name of several different men in the Old Testament. The following are some of these men:

- Ahijah was the name of a priest in the time of Saul.
- A man named Ahijah was a secretary during the reign of King Solomon.
- Ahijah was the name of a prophet from Shiloh who predicted that the nation of Israel would be divided into two kingdoms.
- The father of King Baasha of Israel was also named Ahijah.

(See also: [Baasha](#), [Shiloh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 21:21-22
- 1 Samuel 14:19
- 2 Chronicles 10:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H281

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ahijah, Ahijah's

Ai

Facts:

In Old Testament times, Ai was the name of a Canaanite town located just south of Bethel and about 8 km northwest of Jericho.

- After defeating Jericho, Joshua led the Israelites in an attack of Ai. But they were easily defeated because God was not pleased with them.
- An Israelite named Achan had stolen plunder from Jericho, and God ordered that he and his family be killed. Then God helped the Israelites defeat the people of Ai.

(See also: [Bethel](#), [Jericho](#))

Bible References:

- Ezra 02:27-30
- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 13:3-4
- Joshua 07:03
- Joshua 08:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5857

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ai

Amalekite

Related Words:

Amalek

Facts:

The Amalekites were a nomadic people group who lived throughout the southern part of Canaan, from the Negev desert to the country of Arabia. This people group was descended from Amalek, the grandson of Esau.

- The Amalekites were bitter enemies of Israel from the time when Israel first came to live in Canaan.
- Sometimes the term "Amalek" is used figuratively to refer to all the Amalekites.
- In one battle against the Amalekites, when Moses held up his hands, the Israelites were winning. When he got tired and his hands came down, they started losing. So Aaron and Hur helped Moses keep his hands up until the Israelite army had defeated the Amalekites.
- Both King Saul and King David led military expeditions against the Amalekites.
- After one victory over the Amalekites, Saul disobeyed God by keeping some of the plunder and by not killing the Amalekite king as God had commanded him to do.

(See also: [Arabia](#), [David](#), [Esau](#), [Negev](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 04:43
- 2 Samuel 01:08
- Exodus 17:10
- Numbers 14:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6002, H6003

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Amalek, Amalekite, Amalekites

Ammon

Related Words:

Ammonite

Facts:

The "people of Ammon" or the "Ammonites" were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

- The term "Ammonitess" refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as "Ammonite woman."
- The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(See also: [curse](#), [Jordan River](#), [Lot](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- Ezekiel 25:02

- Genesis 19:38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:27
- Zephaniah 02:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5983, H5984, H5985

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites

Amorite

Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one," which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites," which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 02:09
- Ezekiel 16:03
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 09:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H567

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Amorite, Amorites, Amorites'

Arabah

Facts:

The Old Testament term "Arabah" often refers to a very large desert and plains region that includes the valley surrounding the Jordan River and extends south to the northern tip of the Red Sea.

- The Israelites traveled through this desert region on their journey from Egypt to the land of Canaan.
- The "Sea of the Arabah" could also be translated as "sea located in the Arabah desert region." This sea is often referred to as the "Salt Sea" or the "Dead Sea."
- The term "arabah" can also be a general reference to any desert region.

(See also: [desert](#), [Sea of Reeds](#), [Jordan River](#), [Canaan](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Egypt](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 23:24-25
- 2 Kings 25:4-5

- 2 Samuel 02:29
- Jeremiah 02:4-6
- Job 24:5-7
- Zechariah 14:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1026, H6160

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Arabah

Ashdod

Related Words:

Azotus

Facts:

Ashdod was one of the five most important cities of the Philistines. It was located in southwestern Canaan near the Mediterranean Sea, halfway between the cities of Gaza and Joppa.

- The temple of the Philistine's false god Dagon was located in Ashdod.
- God severely punished the people of Ashdod when the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant and put it in the pagan temple at Ashdod.
- "Azotus" was the Greek name for this city. It was one of the cities where the evangelist Philip preached the gospel.

(See also: [Ekron](#), [Gath](#), [Gaza](#), [Joppa](#), [Philip](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 05:1-3
- Acts 08:40
- Amos 01:8
- Joshua 15:45-47
- Zechariah 09:06

Word Data:

- Strong's: H795, G108

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ashdod, Azotus

Ashkelon

Facts:

In Bible times, Ashkelon was a major Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. It still exists in Israel today.

- Ashkelon was one of the five most important Philistine cities, along with Ashdod, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The Israelites did not completely conquer the people of Ashkelon, even though the kingdom of Judah occupied its hill country.
- Ashkelon remained occupied by the Philistines for hundreds of years.

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Canaan](#), [Ekron](#), [Gath](#), [Gaza](#), [Philistines](#), [the sea](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 06:17-18
- Amos 01:8
- Jeremiah 25:19-21
- Joshua 13:2-3
- Judges 01:18-19
- Zechariah 09:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H831

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ashkelon

Baal**Facts:**

"Baal" means "lord" or "master" and was the name of the primary false god that was worshiped by the Canaanites.

- There were also local false gods that had "Baal" as part of their names, such as "Baal of Peor." Sometimes all these gods together are referred to as "the Baals."
- Some people had names that included the word "Baal" in them.
- The worship of Baal included evil practices such as sacrificing children and using prostitutes.
- At different time periods throughout their history, the Israelites also became deeply involved in Baal worship, following the example of the pagan nations around them.
- During the reign of King Ahab, God's prophet Elijah set up a test to prove to the people that Baal does not exist and that Yahweh is the only true God. As a result, the prophets of Baal were destroyed and the people started worshiping Yahweh again.

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Asherah](#), [Elijah](#), [god](#), [prostitute](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:31
- 1 Samuel 07:3-4
- Jeremiah 02:7-8
- Judges 02:11
- Numbers 22:41

Word Data:

- Strong's: G896

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Baal, Baal's

Beersheba**Facts:**

In Old Testament times, Beersheba was a city located about 45 miles southwest of Jerusalem in a desert area that is now called the Negev.

- The desert surrounding Beersheba was the wilderness area where Hagar and Ishmael wandered after Abraham sent them away from his tents.

- The name of this city means "well of the oath." It was given this name when Abraham swore an oath to not punish King Abimelech's men for seizing control of one of Abraham's wells.

(See also: [Abimelek](#), [Abraham](#), [Hagar](#), [Ishmael](#), [Jerusalem](#), [oath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 03:20
- 2 Samuel 17:11
- Genesis 21:14-16
- Genesis 21:31
- Genesis 46:01
- Nehemiah 11:30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H884

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Beersheba

Benjamin

Related Words:

Benjamite

Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, "son of my right hand."

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The term "Benjamite" refers to a person who belonged to the tribe of Benjamin.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Paul](#), [Rachel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 02:08
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:04
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G958

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Benjamin, Benjamin's, Benjamite, Benjamites

Beth Shemesh

Facts:

Beth Shemesh was the name of a Canaanite city approximately 30 kilometers west of Jerusalem.

- The Israelites captured Beth Shemesh during the time of Joshua's leadership.
- Beth Shemesh was a city that was set aside as a place for the Levite priests to live.
- When the Philistines were taking the captured ark of the covenant back to Jerusalem, Beth Shemesh was the first city where they stopped with it.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [Canaan](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Joshua](#), [Levi](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:09
- 1 Samuel 06:09
- Joshua 19:20-22
- Judges 01:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1053

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Beth Shemesh

Bethel

Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called "Luz."

- After receiving God's promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as "Bethel," which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
- This city did not have the name "Bethel" until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as "Luz (later called Bethel)" in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [altar](#), [Jacob](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 35:01
- Hosea 10:15
- Judges 01:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1008

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Bethel

Bethlehem

Facts:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as "Ephrathah," which was probably its original name.

- Bethlehem has been called the "city of David," since King David was born there.
- The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from "Bethlehem Ephrathah."
- Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
- The name "Bethlehem" means "house of bread" or "house of food."

(See also: [Caleb](#), [David](#), [Micah](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:16
- John 07:42
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 02:16
- Ruth 01:02
- Ruth 01:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H672, H1035, G965

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Bethlehem

Caleb

Facts:

Caleb was one of the twelve Israelite spies whom Moses sent to explore the land of Canaan.

- He and Joshua told the people to trust God to help them defeat the Canaanites.
- Joshua and Caleb were the only men of their generation who were allowed to enter the Promised Land of Canaan.
- Caleb requested that the land of Hebron be given to him and his family. He knew that God would help him defeat the people who lived there.

(See also: [Hebron](#), [Joshua](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 04:13
- Joshua 14:6-7
- Judges 01:12
- Numbers 32:10-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3612, H3614

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Caleb, Caleb's

Carmel

Related Ideas:

Carmelite, Mount Carmel

Facts:

"Mount Carmel" refers to a mountain range that was located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea just north of the Plain of Sharon. Its highest peak is 546 meters high.

- There was also a town called "Carmel" located in Judah, south of the Salt Sea.
- The wealthy landowner Nabal and his wife Abigail lived near the town of Carmel where David and his men helped guard Nabal's sheep shearers.
- On Mount Carmel, Elijah challenged the prophets of Baal to a contest in order to prove that Yahweh is the only true God.
- To make it clear that this wasn't just a single mountain, "Mount Carmel" could be translated as, "mountain on the Carmel mountain range" or "Carmel mountain range."

(See also: [Baal](#), [Elijah](#), [Judah](#), [Salt Sea](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 1 Samuel 15:12
- Jeremiah 46:18
- Micah 07:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3760, H3761, H3762

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Carmel, Carmelite, Mount Carmel

Dan

Related Words:

Danite

Facts:

Dan was the fifth son of Jacob and was one of the twelve tribes of Israel. The region settled by the tribe of Dan in the northern part of Canaan also was given this name.

- During the time of Abram, there was a city named Dan located west of Jerusalem.
- Years later, during the time the nation of Israel entered the promised land, a different city named Dan was located about 60 miles north of Jerusalem.
- The term "Danites" refers to the descendants of Dan, who were also members of his clan.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Jerusalem](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 12:35
- 1 Kings 04:25
- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 14:14
- Genesis 30:06

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1835, H1839, H2051

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Dan, Dan's, Danite, Danites

David**Facts:**

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(See also: [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 05:02
- 2 Timothy 02:08
- Acts 02:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 01:32
- Mark 02:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

Forms Found in the English ULB:

David, David's

Edom**Related Words:**

Edomite, Idumea

Facts:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as "Edom" and later, "Idumea." The "Edomites" were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it "Idumea."
- The name "Edom" means "red," which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.

- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(See also: [adversary](#), [birthright](#), [Esau](#), [Obadiah](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:30
- Genesis 32:03
- Genesis 36:01
- Isaiah 11:14-15
- Joshua 11:16-17
- Obadiah 01:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H123, H130, G2401

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Edom, Edom's, Edomite, Edomites, Idumea

Egypt

Related Words:

Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(See also: [Herod the Great](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Nile River](#), [patriarch](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- Acts 07:10
- Exodus 03:07
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 02:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4692, H4693, H4713, H4714, G124, G125

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Egypt, Egypt's, Egyptian, Egyptians, Egyptians'

Ekron**Related Words:**

Ekronite

Facts:

Ekron was a major city of the Philistines, located nine miles inland from the Mediterranean Sea.

- A temple of the false god Baal-zebub was located at Ekron.
- When the Philistines captured the ark of the covenant, they took it to Ashdod and then moved it to Gath and Ekron because God kept causing people to get sick and die in whatever city the ark was taken to. Finally the Philistines sent the ark back to Israel.
- When King Ahaziah fell through the roof of his house and injured himself, he sinned by trying to find out from the false god Baal-zebub of Ekron as to whether or not he would die from his injuries. Because of this sin, Yahweh said that he would die.

(See also: [Ahaziah](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [Ashdod](#), [Beelzebul](#), [god](#), [Gath](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 05:10
- Joshua 13:2-3
- Judges 01:18-19
- Zechariah 09:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6138, H6139

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ekron, Ekronites

Eleazar**Facts:**

Eleazar was the name of several men in the Bible.

- Eleazar was the third son of Moses' brother Aaron. After Aaron died, Eleazar became the high priest in Israel.
- Eleazar was also the name of one of David's "mighty men."
- Another Eleazar was one of Jesus' ancestors.

(See also: [Aaron](#), [high priest](#), [David](#), [mighty](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:03
- Judges 20:27-28
- Numbers 26:1-2
- Numbers 34:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H499, G1648

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Eleazar, Eleazar's

En Gedi

Facts:

En Gedi was the name of a city in the wilderness of Judah southeast of Jerusalem.

- En Gedi was located on the western bank of the Salt Sea.
- Part of its name means "fountain," referring to a spring of water that flows down from the city into the sea.
- En Gedi was known for having beautiful vineyards and other fertile land, probably due to the continual watering by the fountain of water.
- There were strongholds in En Gedi which David fled to when he was being chased by King Saul.

(See also: [David](#), [desert](#), [fountain](#), [Judah](#), [rest](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#), [stronghold](#), [vineyard](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 20:02
- Song of Solomon 01:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5872

Forms Found in the English ULB:

En Gedi

Ephraim

Related Words:

Ephraimite

Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel.
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to "the hill country of Ephraim" or "the mountains of Ephraim."

(See also: [kingdom of Israel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H669, H673, G2187

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ephraim, Ephraim's, Ephraimite, Ephraimites

Eve

Facts:

This was the name of the first woman. Her name means "life" or "living."

- God formed Eve from a rib that he took out of Adam.
- Eve was created to be Adam's "helper." She came alongside Adam to assist him in the work that God gave them to do.
- Eve was tempted by Satan (in the form of a snake) and was the first to sin by eating the fruit that God said not to eat.

(See also: [Adam](#), [life](#), [Satan](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 02:13
- 2 Corinthians 11:03
- Genesis 03:20
- Genesis 04:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2332, G2096

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Eve, Eve's

Gad

Related Words

Gadite

Facts:

Gad was one of the sons of Jacob. Jacob was also named Isreal.

- Gad's family became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.
- The names of the cities Baalgad and Migdalgad are each two words in the original text and are sometimes written "Baal Gad" and "Migdal Gad."
- A Gadite was a person from the tribe of Gad.

(See also: [census](#), [prophet](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:18
- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 30:11
- Joshua 01:12
- Joshua 21:38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1410, H1425, G1045

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gad, Gadite, Gadites, Gad's

Gath**Related Words:**

Gittite

Facts:

Gath was one of the five major cities of the Philistines. It was located north of Ekron and east of Ashdod and Ashkelon.

- The Philistine warrior Goliath was from the city of Gath.
- During the time of Samuel, the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant from Israel and took it to their pagan temple at Ashdod. It was then moved to Gath and later to Ekron. But God punished the people of those cities with disease, so they sent it back to Israel again.
- When David was escaping from King Saul, he fled to Gath and lived there awhile with his two wives and with six hundred men who were his loyal followers.
- A Gittite was a person from the city of Gath.

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Ashkelon](#), [Ekron](#), [Gaza](#), [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:39
- 1 Samuel 05:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 26:6-8
- Joshua 11:21-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1661, H1663

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gath, Gittite, Gittites

Gaza**Related Words**

Gazite

Facts:

During Bible times, Gaza was a prosperous Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 38 kilometers south of Ashdod. It was one of the Philistines' five major cities.

- Because of its location, Gaza was a key seaport where commercial activities took place between many different people groups and nations.
- Today, the city of Gaza is still an important seaport in the Gaza Strip, which is a region of land located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea bordered by Israel on the north and east, and by Egypt on the south.
- Gaza was the city that the Philistines took Samson to after they had captured him.
- Philip the evangelist was walking along the desert road to Gaza when he met an Ethiopian eunuch.
- A Gazite was a person from the city of Gaz.

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Philip](#), [Philistines](#), [Ethiopia](#), [Gath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:24-25
- Acts 08:26
- Genesis 10:19
- Joshua 10:40-41
- Judges 06:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5804, H5841, G1048

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gaza, Gazites

Geshur**Related Words:**

Geshurite

Facts:

During the time of King David, Geshur was a small kingdom located on the east side of the Sea of Galilee between the countries of Israel and Aram.

- King David married Maacah, the daughter of Geshur's king, and she bore him a son, Absalom.
- After murdering his half-brother Amnon, Absalom fled northeast from Jerusalem to Geshur, a distance of about 140 kilometers. He stayed there three years.
- A Geshurite was a person from the kingdom of Geshur.*

(See also: [Absalom](#), [Amnon](#), [Aram](#), [Sea of Galilee](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:23
- 2 Samuel 03:2-3
- Deuteronomy 03:14
- Joshua 12:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1650

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Geshur, Geshurites

Gibeah**Facts:**

Gibeah was a city located north of Jerusalem and south of Bethel.

- Gibeah was in the territory of the tribe of Benjamin.
- It was the site of a huge battle between the Benjamites and Israel.

(See also: [Benjamin](#), [Bethel](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:26-27
- 2 Samuel 21:06
- Hosea 09:09
- Judges 19:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1390

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gibeah

Gilead**Gileadite****Facts:**

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the "hill country of Gilead" or "Mount Gilead."
- "Gilead" was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.
- A Giliadite was a descendant of Gilead and a member of his clan.

(See also: [Gad](#), [Jephthah](#), [Manasseh](#), [Reuben](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:22
- 1 Samuel 11:01
- Amos 01:03
- Deuteronomy 02:36-37
- Genesis 31:21
- Genesis 37:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1568, H1569

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites

Gilgal**Facts:**

Gilgal was a town north of Jericho and was the first place that the Israelites camped after crossing the Jordan River to enter Canaan.

- At Gilgal, Joshua set up twelve stones taken from the dry river bed of the Jordan River that they had just crossed over.
- Gilgal was the city that Elijah and Elisha were leaving as they crossed the Jordan when Elijah was taken up to heaven.
- There were also several other places called "Gilgal" in the Old Testament.
- The word "gilgal" means "circle of stones," perhaps referring to a place where a circular altar was built.

- In the Old Testament, this name almost always occurs as "the gilgal." This may indicate that it was not a specific place name but rather was a description of a certain kind of place.

(See also: [Elijah](#), , [Elisha](#), [Jericho](#), [Jordan River](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 07:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:1-2
- Hosea 04:15
- Judges 02:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1537

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gilgal

God

Related Ideas:

the living God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as "Yahweh," which means "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
- The Bible also teaches about false "gods," which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "God" could include "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being."
- Other ways to translate "God" could be "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for "God" and "god."
- The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(See also: [create](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [god](#), [Son of God](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16

- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2623, H3069, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2312, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

Forms Found in the English ULB:

God, God's, the living God

Goliath

Facts:

Goliath was a very tall and very large soldier in the army of the Philistines who was killed by David.

- Goliath was between two and three meters tall. He is often referred to as a giant because of his great size.
- Although Goliath had better weapons and was much bigger than David, God gave David the strength and ability to defeat Goliath.
- The Israelites were declared victorious over the Philistines as a result of David's victory over Goliath.

(See also: [David](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 20:4-5
- 1 Samuel 17:4-5
- 1 Samuel 21:8-9
- 1 Samuel 22:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1555

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Goliath, Goliath's

Greek

Related Words:

Grecian

Facts:

The term "Greek" refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece. It is also a person from the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The term "Grecian" means "Greek-speaking."

- Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as "Greeks" in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.
- The phrase "Grecian Jews" referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the "Hebraic Jews" who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic.
- Other ways to translate "Grecian" could include, "Greek-speaking" or "culturally Greek" or "Greek."
- When referring to non-Jews, "Greek" could be translated as "Gentile."

(See also: [Aram](#), [Gentile](#), [Greece](#), [Hebrew](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 06:1
- Acts 09:29
- Acts 11:20
- Acts 14:1-2
- Colossians 03:11
- Galatians 02:3-5
- John 07:35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3125, G1672, G1673, G1674, G1675, G1676

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Greek, Greeks, Grecian

Ham**Related Words:**

Hamite

Facts:

Ham was the second of Noah's three sons.

- During the worldwide flood that covered the whole earth, Ham and his brothers were with Noah in the ark, along with their wives.
- After the flood, there was an occasion where Ham was very dishonoring to his father, Noah. As a result, Noah cursed Ham's son Canaan and all his descendants, who eventually became known as the Canaanites.

(See also: [ark](#), [Canaan](#), [dishonor](#), [Noah](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 05:32
- Genesis 06:10
- Genesis 07:13-14
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 10:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2526

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ham, Hamite, Hamites

Hannah

Facts:

Hannah was the mother of the prophet Samuel. She was one of two wives of Elkanah.

- Hannah was not able to conceive a child, which was a great grief to her.
- At the temple, Hannah earnestly prayed for God to give her a son, promising to dedicate him to serving God.
- God granted her request and when the boy Samuel was old enough, she brought him to serve at the temple.
- God also gave Hannah other children after that.

(See also: [conceive](#), [Samuel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 01:1-2
- 1 Samuel 02:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2584

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hannah, Hannah's

Hebrew

Facts:

The "Hebrews" were people who were descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob. Abraham is the first person in the Bible to be called a "Hebrew."

- The term "Hebrew" also refers to the language that the Hebrew people spoke. The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called "Jewish people" or "Israelites." It is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish authorities](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 26:12-14
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Genesis 40:15
- Genesis 41:12-13
- John 05:1-4
- John 19:13
- Jonah 01:8-10
- Philippians 03:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5680, G1445, G1446, G1447

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hebrew, Hebrews, Hebrews'

Hebron

Related Words:

Hebronite

Facts:

Hebron was a city located in the high, rocky hills about 20 miles south of Jerusalem.

- The city was built around 2000 BC during the time of Abram. It was mentioned many times in the historical accounts given in the Old Testament.
- Hebron had a very important role in King David's life. Several of his sons, including Absalom, were born there.
- The city was destroyed around AD 70 by the Romans.

(See also: [Absalom](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 02:10-11
- Genesis 13:18
- Genesis 23:1-2
- Genesis 35:27
- Genesis 37:12-14
- Judges 01:10
- Numbers 13:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2275, H2276

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hebron, Hebronites, Hebronites', Hebronite's, Hebron's

Hittite

Facts:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: [descendant](#), [Esau](#), [foreigner](#), [Ham](#), [mighty](#), [Solomon](#), [Uriah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8

- Genesis 23:11
- Genesis 25:10
- Joshua 01:4-5
- Nehemiah 09:08
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Hittite, Hittites

Israel

Related Ideas:

Israelite

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means "he struggles with God."

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Israel, Israel's, Israelite, Israelite's, Israelites, Israelites'

Jacob

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [deceive](#), [Esau](#), [Isaac](#), [Israel](#), [Rebekah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:11
- Acts 07:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G2384

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jacob, Jacob's

Jephthah

Facts:

Jephthah was a warrior from Gilead who served as a judge over Israel.

- In Hebrews 11:32, Jephthah is praised as an important leader who delivered his people from their enemies.
- He rescued the Israelites from the Ammonites and led his people to defeat the Ephraimites.
- Jephthah however, made a foolish, hasty vow to God which resulted in the sacrifice of his daughter.

(See also: [Ammon](#), [deliver](#), [Ephraim](#), [judge](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Hebrews 11:32-34
- Judges 11:1-3
- Judges 11:35
- Judges 12:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3316

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jephthah, Jephthah's

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), [David](#), [Jebus](#), [Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:05
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jerusalem, Jerusalem's

Jesse

Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

- Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
- He was an "Ephrathite," which means he was from the town of Ephrathah (Bethlehem).
- The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a "shoot" or "branch" that would come from the "root of Jesse" and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus, who was a descendant of Jesse.

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Boaz](#), [descendant](#), [fruit](#), [Jesus](#), [king](#), [prophet](#), [Ruth](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:12
- 1 Kings 12:16
- 1 Samuel 16:1

- Luke 03:32
- Matthew 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3448, G2421

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jesse, Jesse's

Jezreel

Related Words:

Jezreelite

Facts:

Jezreel was an important Israelite city in the territory of the Issachar tribe, located southwest of the Salt Sea. A Jezreelite is a person from this city.

- The city of Jezreel is one of the western points in the Plain of Megiddo, which is also called the "Valley of Jezreel."
- Several kings of Israel had their palaces in the city of Jezreel.
- Naboth's vineyard was located near King Ahab's palace in Jezreel. The prophet Elijah prophesied against Ahab there.
- Ahab's evil wife Jezebel was killed in Jezreel.
- Many other significant events happened in this city, including several battles.

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Elijah](#), [Issachar](#), [Jezebel](#), [palace](#), [Salt Sea](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:12
- 1 Samuel 25:43-44
- 2 Kings 08:28-29
- 2 Samuel 02:1-3
- Judges 06:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3157, H3158, H3159

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jezreel, Jezreelite

Joab

Facts:

Joab was an important military leader for King David throughout David's entire reign.

- Before David became king, Joab had already been one of his loyal followers.
- Later, during David's reign as king over Israel, Joab became the commander of King David's army.
- Joab was also King David's nephew, since his mother was one of David's sisters.
- When David's son Absalom betrayed him by trying to take over his kingship, Joab killed Absalom in order to protect the king.
- Joab was a very aggressive fighter and killed many people who were enemies of Israel.

(See also: [Absalom](#), [David](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
- 1 Kings 01:07
- 1 Samuel 26:6-8
- 2 Samuel 02:18
- Nehemiah 07:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3097

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Joab, Joab's

Joel

Facts:

Joel was a prophet who probably lived during the reign of King Joash of Judah. There were also several other men in the Old Testament named Joel.

- The book of Joel is one of twelve short prophetic books in the last section of the Old Testament.
- The only personal information we have about the prophet Joel is that his father's name was Pethuel.
- In his sermon at Pentecost, the apostle Peter quoted from the book of Joel.

(See also: [Joash](#), [Judah](#), [Pentecost](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:33-35
- 1 Samuel 08:1-3
- Acts 02:16
- Ezra 10:43
- Joel 01:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3100, G2493

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Joel, Joel's

Jonathan

Facts:

Jonathan was the name of at least ten men in the Old Testament. The name means "Yahweh has given."

- David's best friend, Jonathan, is the most well-known Jonathan in the Bible with this name. This Jonathan was King Saul's oldest son.
- Other Jonathans mentioned in the Old Testament include a descendant of Moses; a nephew of King David; several priests, including a son of Abiathar; and an Old Testament scribe in whose house the prophet Jeremiah was imprisoned.

(See also: [Abiathar](#), [David](#), [Moses](#), [Jeremiah](#), [priest](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#), [scribe](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:41-42

- 1 Samuel 14:1
- 1 Samuel 20:02
- 2 Samuel 01:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3083, H3129

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jonathan, Jonathan's

Joshua

Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Haggai](#), [Jericho](#), [Moses](#), [Promised Land](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 07:25-27
- Deuteronomy 03:21
- Exodus 17:10
- Joshua 01:03
- Numbers 27:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1954, H3091, G2424

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Joshua, Joshua's

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.

Judah

- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Jew](#), [Judah](#), [Judea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:09
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:02
- Luke 03:33
- Ruth 01:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3061, H3063

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Judah, Judah's

Judah

Facts:

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the twelve tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

- After King Solomon died, the nation of Israel was divided into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. The kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom, located west of the Salt Sea.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Judah was Jerusalem.
- Eight kings of Judah obeyed Yahweh and led the people to worship him. The other kings of Judah were evil and led the people to worship idols.
- Over 120 years after Assyria defeated Israel (the northern kingdom), Judah was conquered by the nation of Babylon. The Babylonians destroyed the city and the temple, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives.

(See also: [Judah](#), [Salt Sea](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 30:26-28
- 2 Samuel 12:08
- Hosea 05:14
- Jeremiah 07:33
- Judges 01:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4438, H3063, G2455

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Judah, kingdom of Judah, language of Judah

Kerethites

Facts:

The Kerethites were a people group who were probably part of the Philistines. Some versions write this name as "Cherethites."

- The "Kerethites and Pelethites" were a special group of soldiers from King David's army who were especially devoted to him as his bodyguards.
- Benaiah, son of Jehoiada, a member of David's administrative corps, was the leader of the Kerethites and Pelethites.
- The Kerethites remained with David when he had to flee Jerusalem because of Absalom's revolt.

(See also: [Absalom](#), [Benaiah](#), [David](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- Zephaniah 02:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3774

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Kerethites

Levi

Facts:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term "Levite" refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: [Matthew](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical, Levi's, Levite's, Levites'

Mizpah

Facts:

Mizpah is the name of several towns mentioned in the Old Testament. It means, "look-out point" or "watchtower."

- When David was being pursued by Saul, he left his parents in Mizpah, under the protection of the king of Moab.
- One city called Mizpah was located on the border between the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. It was a major military center.

(See also: [David](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Moab](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:20-22
- 1 Samuel 07:5-6
- 1 Samuel 07:10-11
- Jeremiah 40:5-6
- Judges 10:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4708, H4709

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mizpah

Moab

Facts:

Moab was the son of Lot's elder daughter. Moab also became the name of the land where Moab and his family lived. The term "Moabite" refers to a person who is descended from Moab or who lives in the country of Moab.

- The country of Moab was located east of the Salt Sea.
- Moab was southeast from the town of Bethlehem where Naomi's family lived.
- The people in Bethlehem called Ruth a "Moabite" because she was a woman from the country of Moab. This term could also be translated as "Moabite woman" or "woman from Moab."

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Judea](#), [Lot](#), [Ruth](#), [Salt Sea](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4124, H4125

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Moab, Moabite, Moabites, Moabite, Moab's

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(See also: [Miriam](#), [Promised Land](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:21
- Acts 07:30
- Exodus 02:10
- Exodus 09:01
- Matthew 17:04
- Romans 05:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Moses, Moses'

Negev

Facts:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means "the South," and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that the "South" is not located where the Negev Desert is today.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and become his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Beersheba](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Kadesh](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Simeon](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:09
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 24:62
- Joshua 03:14-16
- Numbers 13:17-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5045, H6160

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Negev

Paran

Facts:

Paran was a desert or wilderness area east of Egypt and south of the land of Canaan. There was also a Mount Paran, which may have been another name for Mount Sinai.

- The slave Hagar and her son Ishmael went to live in the wilderness of Paran after Sarah ordered Abraham to send them away.
- When Moses led the Israelites out of Egypt, they passed through the wilderness of Paran.
- It was from Kadesh-Barnea in the wilderness of Paran that Moses sent twelve men to spy out the land of Canaan and bring back a report.
- The wilderness of Zin was north of Paran and the wilderness of Sin was south of Paran.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [desert](#), [Egypt](#), [Kadesh](#), [Sinai](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:18
- 1 Samuel 25:1
- Genesis 21:19-21
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 13:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H364, H6290

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Paran

Pharaoh

Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as "Pharaoh."

(See also: [Egypt](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 07:13
- Acts 07:21
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 40:07
- Genesis 41:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4428, H4714, H6547, G5328

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Pharaoh, king of Egypt, Pharaoh's

Philistines

Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means "people of the sea."

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Ashkelon](#), [David](#), [Ekron](#), [Gath](#), [Gaza](#), [Goliath](#), [Salt Sea](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:04
- 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 056:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6429, H6430

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Philistines, Philistine, Philistines', Philistine's

Phinehas

Facts:

Phineas was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One of Aaron's grandsons was a priest named Phinehas, who strongly opposed the worship of false gods in Israel.
- Phineas saved the Israelites from a plague that Yahweh had sent to punish them for marrying Midianite women and worshiping their false gods.
- On several occasions Phinehas went with the Israelite army to destroy the Midianites.
- The other Phinehas mentioned in the Old Testament was one of the evil sons of Eli the priest during the time of the prophet Samuel.
- Phinehas and his brother Hophni were both killed when the Philistines attacked Israel and stole the Ark of the Covenant.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [Jordan River](#), [Midian](#), [Philistines](#), [Samuel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:04
- Ezra 08:02
- Joshua 22:13-14
- Numbers 25:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6372

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Phinehas, Phinehas'

Rachel**Facts:**

Rachel was one of Jacob's wives. She and her sister Leah were the daughters of Laban, Jacob's uncle.

- Rachel was the mother of Joseph and Benjamin, whose descendants became two of the tribes of Israel.
- For many years, Rachel was not able to have any children. Then God enabled her to give birth to Joseph.
- Years later, as she gave birth to Benjamin, Rachel died, and Jacob buried her near Bethlehem.

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Jacob](#), [Laban](#), [Leah](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:06
- Genesis 29:19-20
- Genesis 29:30
- Genesis 31:06
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Matthew 02:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7354, G4478

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Rachel, Rachel's

Ramah**Facts:**

Ramah was an ancient Israelite city located about 8 km from Jerusalem. It was in the region where the tribe of Benjamin lived.

- Ramah was where Rachel died after giving birth to Benjamin.
- When the Israelites were taken captive to Babylon, they were first brought to Ramah before being moved to Babylon.
- Ramah was the home of Samuel's mother and father.

(See also: [Benjamin](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:27
- 1 Samuel 02:11
- 2 Chronicles 16:1
- Jeremiah 31:15
- Joshua 18:25-28
- Matthew 02:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7414, G4471

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ramah

Ramoth

Facts:

Ramoth was an important city in the mountains of Gilead near the Jordan River. It was also called Ramoth Gilead.

- Ramoth belonged to the Israelite tribe of Gad and was designated as a city of refuge.
- King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah waged war against the king of Aram at Ramoth. Ahab was killed in that battle.
- Sometime later, King Ahaziah and King Joram tried to take the city of Ramoth from the king of Aram.
- Ramoth Gilead was where Jehu was anointed king over Israel.

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Ahaziah](#), [Aram](#), [Gad](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jehu](#), [Joram](#), [Jordan River](#), [Judah](#), [refuge](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:73
- 1 Kings 22:03
- 2 Chronicles 18:03
- 2 Kings 08:28-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7216, H7418, H7433

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ramoth

Samuel

Facts:

Samuel was a prophet and the last judge of Israel. He anointed both Saul and David as kings over Israel.

- Samuel was born to Elkanah and Hannah in the town of Ramah.
- Hannah had been barren, so she had prayed earnestly that God would give her a son. Samuel was the answer to that prayer.
- Hannah promised that if, in answer to her desperate prayer that God would give her a male child, her request was granted, she would dedicate her son to Yahweh.
- To fulfill her promise to God, when Samuel was a young boy, Hannah sent him to live with and help Eli the priest in the temple.
- God raised up Samuel to be a great prophet.

(See also: [Hannah](#), [judge](#), [prophet](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 01:19
- 1 Samuel 09:24
- 1 Samuel 12:17
- Acts 03:24

- Acts 13:20
- Hebrews 11:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8050, G4545

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Samuel, Samuel's

Saul

Facts:

Saul was an Israelite man whom God chose to become the first king of Israel.

- Saul was tall and handsome, and a powerful soldier. He was the kind of man that the Israelites wanted to be their king.
- Although he served God at first, Saul later became proud and disobeyed God. As a result, God appointed David to take Saul's place as king and allowed Saul to be killed in battle.
- In the New Testament, there was a Jew named Saul who was also known as Paul and who became an apostle of Jesus Christ.

(See also: [king](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Samuel 09:01
- 2 Samuel 01:1-2
- Acts 13:22
- Psalm 018:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7586, G4549

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Saul, Saul's

Shem

Facts:

Shem was one of Noah's three sons, all of whom went with him into the ark during the worldwide flood described in the book of Genesis.

- Shem was the ancestor of Abraham and his descendants.
- The descendants of Shem were known as "Semites"; they spoke "Semitic" languages such as Hebrew and Arabic.
- The Bible indicates that Shem lived nearly 600 years.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Arabia](#), [ark](#), [flood](#), [Noah](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 05:32
- Genesis 06:10
- Genesis 07:13-14
- Genesis 10:1

- Genesis 10:31
- Genesis 11:10
- Luke 03:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8035, G4590

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Shem, Shem's

Shiloh

Facts:

Shiloh was a walled Canaanite city that was conquered by the Israelites under the leadership of Joshua.

- The city of Shiloh was located west of the Jordan River and northeast of the city of Bethel.
- During the time that Joshua was leading Israel, the city of Shiloh was a meeting place for the people of Israel.
- The twelve tribes of Israel met together at Shiloh to hear Joshua tell them which portion of the land of Canaan had been assigned to each of them.
- Before any temple was built in Jerusalem, Shiloh was the place where the Israelites came to sacrifice to God.
- When Samuel was a young boy, his mother Hannah took him to live in Shiloh to be trained by the priest Eli to serve Yahweh.

(See also: [Bethel](#), [dedicate](#), [Hannah](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Jordan River](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [Samuel](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:26-27
- 1 Samuel 01:9-10
- Joshua 18:1-2
- Judges 18:30-31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7886, H7887

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Shiloh

Ur

Facts:

Ur was an important city along the Euphrates River in the ancient region of Chaldea, which was part of Mesopotamia. This region was located in what is now the modern-day country of Iraq.

- Abraham was from the city of Ur and it was from there that God called him to leave to go to the land of Canaan.
- Haran, the brother of Abraham and father of Lot, died in Ur. This was probably a factor that influenced Lot to leave Ur with Abraham.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Canaan](#), [Chaldeans](#), [Euphrates](#), [Haran](#), [Lot](#), [Mesopotamia](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 11:27-28

- Genesis 11:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H218

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ur

Yahweh

Related Ideas:

Yah

Facts:

The term "Yahweh" is God's personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

- The name "Yahweh" comes from the word that means to "be" or to "exist."
- The name "Yah" is short for "Yahweh."
- Possible meanings of "Yahweh" include, "he is" or "I am" or "the one who causes to be."
- This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term "LORD" or "the LORD" to represent "Yahweh." This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh's name and started saying "Lord" every time the term "Yahweh" appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write "LORD" with all capital letters to show respect for God's personal name and to distinguish it from "Lord" which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULB and UDB texts always translate this term as, "Yahweh," as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term "Yahweh" does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for "Lord" is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, God sometimes referred to himself as "I, Yahweh" and sometimes he referred to himself simply as "Yahweh." When he referred to himself simply as "Yahweh," the ULB and UDB add the pronoun "I" or "me" to show the reader that God was speaking about himself.

Translation Suggestions:

- "Yahweh" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "I am" or "living one" or "the one who is" or "he who is alive."
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how "Yahweh" is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term "Yahweh" and instead use the traditional rendering, "LORD." An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title "Lord." Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish "LORD" as a name (Yahweh) from "Lord" as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- When Yahweh referred to himself as Yahweh, you can make it clear that Yahweh was speaking by introducing the quote with something like, "This is what Yahweh says."

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:07
- Daniel 09:03
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:04

- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:04
- Isaiah 38:08
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 01:09
- Lamentations 01:05
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 03:04
- Micah 02:05
- Micah 06:05
- Numbers 08:11
- Psalm 124:03
- Ruth 01:21
- Zechariah 14:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Yah, Yahweh, Yahweh's

Yahweh of hosts

Related Ideas:

God of hosts, Lord of hosts, Lord of multitudes

Definition:

The terms "Yahweh of hosts" and "God of hosts" are titles that express God's authority over the thousands of angels who obey him.

- The term "host" or "hosts" is a word that refers to a large number of something, such as an army of people or the massive number of stars. It can also refer to all the many spirit beings, including evil spirits. The context makes it clear what is being referred to.
- Phrases similar to "host of the heavens" refer to all the stars, planets and other heavenly bodies.
- In the New Testament, the phrase, "Lord of hosts" means the same as "Yahweh of hosts" but it cannot be translated that way since the Hebrew word "Yahweh" is not used in the New Testament.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "Yahweh of hosts" could include, "Yahweh, who rules all the angels" or "Yahweh, the ruler over armies of angels" or "Yahweh, the ruler of all creation."
- The phrase "of hosts" in the terms "God of hosts" and "Lord of hosts" would be translated the same way as in the phrase "Yahweh of hosts" above.
- Certain churches do not accept the literal term "Yahweh" and prefer to use the capitalized word, "LORD" instead, following the tradition of many Bible versions. For these churches, a translation of the term "LORD of hosts" would be used in the Old Testament for "Yahweh of hosts."

(See also: [angel](#), [authority](#), [God](#), [lord](#), [lord](#), [Lord Yahweh Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Zechariah 13:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6635, G2962, G4519

Forms Found in the English ULB:

God of hosts, Lord of hosts, Lord of multitudes, Yahweh of hosts, the Lord of hosts

adversary**Related Ideas:**

enemy, hostile, hostility, opponent, oppose, opposition

Definition:

An "adversary" is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
- Adversary may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.
- Someone who is "hostile" wants to fight other people. Such a person has "hostile intent" or acts with "hostility."

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:14
- Isaiah 09:11
- Job 06:23
- Lamentations 04:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H340, H341, H6146, H6862, H6887, H6965, H7379, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G485, G498, G2189, G2190, G5227

Forms Found in the English ULB:

adversaries, adversary, enemies, enemies', enemy, enemy's, hostile, hostilities, hostility, opponent, opponents, oppose, opposed, opposes, opposition

afflict**Related Ideas:**

affliction, difficulty

Definition:

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To "be afflicted with" means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To afflict someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
- In certain contexts "afflict" could be translated as "happen to" or "come to" or "bring suffering."
- A phrase like "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
- When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
- Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress."
- The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See also: [leper](#), [plague](#), [suffer](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:06
- Amos 05:12
- Colossians 01:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H5221, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G1453, G2346, G2347, G2852, G3804, G4912

Forms Found in the English ULB:

afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions, difficulties

age**Related Ideas:**

aged, from ancient times, old age

Definition:

The term "age" refers to the length of time a person has lived. The term "aged" describes a person who is very old. The term "age" is also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Jesus refers to "this age" as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.
- Other words used to express an extended period of time include "era" and "season."
- The phrase "ancient times" refers to times long ago.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "age" could also be translated as "era" or "number of years old" or "time period" or "time."
- The phrase "at a very old age" could be translated as "when he was very old" or "when he had lived a very long time."
- The phrase "this present evil age" means "during this time right now when people are very evil."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:28
- 1 Corinthians 02:07

- Hebrews 06:05
- Job 05:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5769, H7872, G165, G166, G1074

Forms Found in the English ULB:

age, aged, ages, from ancient times, old age

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [god](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:09
- James 02:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 23:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

Forms Found in the English ULB:

altar, altars

amen

Related Ideas:

let it be so

Definition:

The term "amen" is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as "truly."

- When used at the end of a prayer, "amen" communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used "amen" to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by "and I say to you" to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses "amen" this way, some English versions (and the ULB) translate this as "verily" or "truly."

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, "amen" could be translated as "let it be so" or "may this happen" or "that is true."
- When Jesus says, "truly I tell you," this could also be translated as "Yes, I tell you sincerely" or "That is true, and I also tell you."
- The phrase "truly, truly I tell you" could be translated as "I tell you this very sincerely" or "I tell you this very earnestly" or "what I am telling you is true."

(See also: [fulfill](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 05:19
- Jude 01:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 01:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H543, G281

Forms Found in the English ULB:

amen, let it be so

angel

Related Ideas:

archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
- The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh," has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "angel" could include "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
- The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.

- The phrase "angel of Yahweh" should be translated using the words for "angel" and "Yahweh." This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include "angel from Yahweh" or "angel sent by Yahweh" or "Yahweh, who looked like an angel."

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), [messenger](#), [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 02:13
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 01:20
- Zechariah 01:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H4397, G32, G743, G2465

Forms Found in the English ULB:

angel, angels, archangel

anger

Related Ideas:

angry, indignant, indignation, quick-tempered

Definition:

To "be angry" or to "have anger" means to be very displeased, irritated, and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, they are often sinful and selfish, but sometimes they have righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God's anger (also called "wrath") expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase "provoke to anger" means "cause to be angry."
- A "quick-tempered" person becomes angry quickly and easily.
- To be "indignant" is to grieve to the point of anger or to be angry because someone has been arrogant.

(See also: [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- Ephesians 04:26
- Exodus 32:11
- Isaiah 57:16-17
- John 06:52-53
- Mark 10:14
- Matthew 26:08
- Psalms 018:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H599, H639, H1149, H1984, H2152, H2194, H2195, H2198, H2534, H2734, H2740, H2787, H3179, H3707, H3708, H3824, H4751, H4843, H5674, H5678, H6225, H7107, H7110,

H7266, H7307, H7852, G23, G1758, G2371, G2372, G3164, G3709, G3710, G3711, G3947, G3949, G3950, G4360, G5520

Forms Found in the English ULB:

anger, anger burned, angered, angry, burning anger, indignant, indignation, quick-tempered

anoint

Related Ideas:

perfume, sons of fresh olive oil

Definition:

The term "anoint" means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles "Messiah" (Hebrew) and "Christ" (Greek) mean "the Anointed (One)."
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "anoint" could be translated as "pour oil on" or "put oil on" or "consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on."
- To "be anointed" could be translated as "be consecrated with oil." or "be appointed" or "be consecrated."
- In some contexts the term "anoint" could be translated as "appoint."
- A phrase like "the anointed priest," could be translated as "the priest who was consecrated with oil" or "the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil."

(See also: [Christ](#), [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), [King of the Jews](#), [priest](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:20
- 1 John 02:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 04:27-28
- Amos 06:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 05:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1101, H1878, H3323, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, G218, G1472, G3462, G3464, G5545, G5548

Forms Found in the English ULB:

anoint, anointed, anointing, perfume, sons of fresh olive oil

appoint

Related Ideas:

appointment, direct, predetermine, put in place, reserve, select, set in place, set over, set up, set under

Definition:

The terms "appoint" and "appointed" refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To "be appointed" can also refer to being "chosen" to receive something, as in "appointed to eternal life." That people were "appointed to eternal life" means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase "appointed time" refers to God's "chosen time" or "planned time" for something to happen.
- The word "appoint" may also mean to "command" or "assign" someone to do something.
- To "predetermine" something is to decide beforehand that it will happen and make sure that it happens.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "appoint" could include "choose" or "assign" or "formally choose" or "designate."
- The term "appointed" could be translated as "assigned" or "planned" or "specifically chose."
- The phrase "be appointed" could also be translated as "be chosen."

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H977, H2163, H2706, H2708, H3198, H3245, H3259, H4150, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5258, H5414, H5975, H6485, H6680, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7761, H7896, G322, G606, G2525, G2749, G2820, G3724, G4296, G4384, G4400, G4929, G5021, G5083, G5087

Forms Found in the English ULB:

appoint, appointed, appointed by lot, appointment, appoints, area ... reserved, directed, predetermined, put ... in place, reserved, selected, selects, set ... in place, set ... over, set ... up, set under

archer

Definition:

The term "archer" refers to a man who is skilled at using a bow and arrow as a weapon.

- In the Bible, an archer is usually a soldier who uses a bow and arrow to fight in an army.
- Archers were an important part of the Assyrian military force.
- Some languages might have a term for this, such as "bow-man."

(See also: [Assyria](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 31:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 35:23-24
- Genesis 21:20

- Isaiah 21:16-17
- Job 16:13
- Proverbs 26:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1167, H1869, H2671, H3384, H7199, H7228

Forms Found in the English ULB:

archer, archers

ark**Related Ideas:**

chest

Definition:

The term "ark" literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

- In the English Bible, the word "ark" is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
- Ways to translate this term could include "very large boat" or "barge" or "cargo ship" or "large, box-shaped boat."
- The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as "basket."
- In the phrase "ark of the covenant," a different Hebrew word is used for "ark." This could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- When choosing a term to translate "ark," it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [basket](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:20
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 30:06
- Genesis 08:4-5
- Luke 17:27
- Matthew 24:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H727, H8392, G2787

Forms Found in the English ULB:

ark, chest

ark of the covenant**Related Ideas:**

ark of Yahweh, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of the covenant of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: [ark](#), [covenant](#), [atonement](#), [holy place](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 06:15
- Exodus 25:10-11
- Hebrews 09:05
- Judges 20:27
- Numbers 07:89
- Revelation 11:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H727, H1285, H3068, H5715

Forms Found in the English ULB:

ark of Yahweh, ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of the covenant of Yahweh

armor**Related Ideas:**

armory, body armor, weapon

Definition:

The term "armor" refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier's armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means "soldier gear" or "protective battle clothing" or "protective covering" or "weapons."

(See also: [faith](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [peace](#), [save](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 31:9-10
- 2 Samuel 20:8
- Ephesians 06:11
- Jeremiah 51:3-4
- Luke 11:22

- Nehemiah 04:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2290, H2488, H3627, H4055, H5402, H8302, G3696, G3833

Forms Found in the English ULB:

armor, armory, body armor, weapon, weapons

ash

Related Ideas:

powder

Definitions:

The term "ash" or "ashes" refers to the grey powdery substance that is left behind after wood is burned. It is sometimes used figuratively to refer to something that is worthless or useless.

- In the Bible sometimes the word "dust" is used when speaking about ashes. It can also refer to the fine, loose dirt that can form on dry ground.
- An "ash heap" is a pile of ashes.
- In ancient times, sitting in ashes was a sign of mourning or grieving.
- When grieving, it was the custom to wear rough, scratchy sackcloth and sit in ashes or sprinkle the ashes on the head.
- Putting ashes on the head was also a sign of humiliation or embarrassment.
- Striving for something worthless, is said to be like "feeding on ashes."
- When translating "ashes," use the word in the project language that refers to the burned-up remains after wood has burned.
- Note that an "ash tree" is a completely different term.

(See also: [fire](#), [sackcloth](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:10
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Psalms 102:09
- Psalms 113:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H80, H665, H6083, H6368, H7834, G2868, G4700, G5077, G5522

Forms Found in the English ULB:

ash, ashes, powder

asleep

Related Ideas:

sleep, sleeper

Definition:

These terms can have figurative meanings relating to death.

- To "sleep" or "be asleep" can be a metaphor meaning to "be dead."
- The expression "fall asleep" means start sleeping, or, figuratively, die.

- To "sleep with one's fathers" means to die, as one's ancestors have, or to be dead, as one's ancestors are.
- To "lie down" with others who have died means to die, as they have died, or to be dead, as they are dead.
- The word "lie" often appears in connection with the idea of sleep. This "lie" refers to lying down on a bed or other sleeping place, not to saying things that are untrue.

The phrases "lie with" and "sleep with," when referring to what a man and a woman do together, is a euphemism for them having sexual relations.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "fall asleep" could be translated as to "suddenly become asleep" or to "start sleeping" or to "die," depending on its meaning.
- Note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus had "fallen asleep" they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as "he died."
- Some project languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expressions "sleep" and "asleep" do not make sense.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:27-29
- 1 Thessalonians 04:14
- Acts 07:60
- Daniel 12:02
- Psalms 044:23
- Romans 13:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H3462, H3463, H7290, H7901, H8139, H8142, H8153, H8639, G879, G1852, G1853, G2518, G2837, G5258

Forms Found in the English ULB:

asleep, fallen asleep, fell asleep, sleep, lay down, lies down, sleeper, sleeping, sleeps, slept

assign

Related Ideas:

assignment, portion, reassign

Definitions:

The term "assign" or "assigned" refers to appointing someone to do a specific task or designating something to be provided to one or more people.

- The prophet Samuel foretold that King Saul would "assign" the best young men of Israel to serve in the military.
- Moses "assigned" to each of the twelve tribes of Israel a portion of the land of Canaan for them to live on.
- Under the Old Testament law, certain tribes of Israel were assigned to serve as priests, artists, singers and builders.
- Depending on the context, "assign" could be translated as "give" or "appoint" or "choose for the task of."
- The term "assigned" could be translated as "appointed" or "given the task."

(See also: [appoint](#), [Samuel](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:48
- Daniel 12:13
- Jeremiah 43:11
- Joshua 18:02
- Numbers 04:27-28
- Psalms 078:55

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1486, H2505, H2506, H2706, H3335, H4487, H4864, H4888, H4941, H5157, H5307, H5344, H5414, H5596, H5975, H6485, H7760, G3307

Forms Found in the English ULB:

assign, assigned, assigned portion, assigning, assignment, assignments, given ... portion, place assigned, portion, portions, reassign

avenge

Related Ideas:

avenger, revenge, see justice done, vengeance, vengefully

Definition:

To "avenge" or "take revenge" or "execute vengeance" is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is "vengeance."

- Usually "avenge" implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong.
- When referring to people, the expression "take revenge" or "get revenge" usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God "takes vengeance" or "executes vengeance," he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to "avenge" could also be translated as to "right a wrong" or to "get justice for."
- When referring to human beings, to "take revenge" could be translated as "pay back" or "hurt in order to punish" or "get back at."
- Depending on the context, "vengeance" could be translated as "punishment" or "punishment of sin" or "payment for wrongs done." If a word meaning "retaliation" is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, "take my vengeance," this could be translated by "punish them for wrongs done against me" or "cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me."
- When referring to God's vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: [punish](#), [justice](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 018:47
- Romans 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H3467, H5352, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G1556, G1557, G1558, G3709

Forms Found in the English ULB:

avenge, avenged, avenger, avenges, avenging, have revenge, revenge, see ... justice ... done, vengeance, vengefully

awe**Related Ideas:**

awesome

Definition:

The term "awe" refers to the sense of amazement and deep respect that comes from seeing something great, powerful, and magnificent.

- The term "awesome" describes someone or something that inspires a feeling of awe.
- The visions of the glory of God seen by the prophet Ezekiel were "awesome" or "awe-inspiring."
- Typical human responses showing awe of God's presence include: fear, bowing or kneeling down, covering the face, and trembling.

(See also: [fear](#), [glory](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 17:21
- Genesis 28:16-17
- Hebrews 12:28
- Psalm 022:23
- Psalms 147:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H366, H1481, H2865, H3372, H6206, H6342, H7227, G2124

Forms Found in the English ULB:

awe, awesome, awesome deeds

ax**Definition:**

An ax is tool used for cutting or chopping trees or wood.

- An ax usually has a long wooden handle with a large metal blade attached to the end.
- If your culture has a tool that is similar to an ax, the name of that tool could be used to translate "ax."
- Other ways to translate this term could include "tree-cutting tool" or "wooden tool with blade" or "long-handled wood-chopping tool."
- In one Old Testament event, the blade of an ax fell into a river, so it is best if the tool that is described has a blade that can come loose from the wooden handle.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:7-8
- 2 Kings 06:05
- Judges 09:48-49
- Luke 03:9
- Matthew 03:10
- Psalm 035:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1631, H2719, H7134, G513

Forms Found in the English ULB:

ax, axes

barren**Related Ideas:**

dried, faded, salt land, withered

Definition:

To be "barren" means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

Translation Suggestions:

- When "barren" is used to refer to land, it could be translated as "not fertile" or "unfruitful" or "without plants."
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as "childless" or "not able to bear children" or "unable to conceive a child."
- "Salt land" is barren because nothing can grow in salty soil.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:5
- Galatians 04:27
- Genesis 11:30
- Job 03:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H535, H1565, H2717, H3001, H4420, H5034, H6115, H6135, H6723, H7921, G692, G4723

Forms Found in the English ULB:

barren, dried, dry, fade, fades, fading, salt land, wither, withered, withers

bear**Related Ideas:**

bearer, bear with, birth, carry, childbirth, support, sustain, tolerate

Definitions:

The term "bear" literally means "carry" something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means "give birth to" a child.
- To "bear a burden" means to "experience difficult things." These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- To "bear with" someone means to be patient with them and their faults.
- A common expression in the Bible is "bear fruit," which means "produce fruit" or "have fruit."
- The expression "bear witness" means "testify" or "report what one has seen or experienced."

- The statement that "a son will not bear the iniquity of his father" means that he "will not be held responsible for" or "will not be punished for" his father's sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as "carry" or "be responsible for" or "produce" or "have" or "endure," depending on the context.

(See also: [burden](#), [Elisha](#), [endure](#), [fruit](#), [iniquity](#), [report](#), [sheep](#), [strength](#), [testimony](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- Lamentations 03:27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2032, H2232, H3201, H3205, H3211, H4138, H4853, H5375, H5445, H5449, H5582, H6030, H6403, H6509, H6779, H7617, G142, G430, G941, G1080, G1627, G2592, G3140, G4722, G4828, G5041, G5088, G5342, G5409, G5576

Forms Found in the English ULB:

bear, bearer, bearing, bearing with, bears, birth, bore, born, borne, carried, carry, carrying, childbirth, gave birth, give birth, given birth, gives birth, has ... borne, have ... borne, support, supported, supports, sustain, sustains, tolerate

bear

Definition:

A bear is a large, four-legged furry animal with dark brown or black hair, with sharp teeth and claws. Bears were common in Israel during Bible times.

- These animals live in forests and mountain areas; they eat fish, insects, and plants.
- In the Old Testament, the bear is used as a symbol of strength.
- While tending sheep, the shepherd David fought a bear and defeated it.
- Two bears came out of the forest and attacked a group of youths who had mocked the prophet Elisha.

(See also: [David](#), [Elisha](#))

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1677, G715

Forms Found in the English ULB:

bear, bears

beast

Related Ideas:

animal

Definitions:

In the Bible, the term "beast" is often just another way of saying "animal."

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term "livestock" is used to refer to this kind of animal.

- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God.
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include "creature" or "created thing" or "animal" or "wild animal," depending on the context.

(See also: [authority](#), [Daniel](#), [livestock](#), [nation](#), [power](#), [reveal](#), [Beelzebul](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 07:21
- Psalms 049:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H338, H929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H4806, G2226, G2341, G2342, G2934, G4968, G5074

Forms Found in the English ULB:

animal, animal's, animals, beast, beast's, beasts

beg

Related Ideas:

ask, beggar, needy

Definition:

The term "beg" means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don't know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A "beggar" is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, "plead" or "urgently ask" or "demand money" or "regularly ask for money."

(See also: [plead](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 16:20
- Mark 06:56
- Matthew 14:36
- Psalm 045:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H34, H577, H1245, H6035, H7592, G154, G1189, G1871, G2065, G3726, G3870, G4319, G4434

Forms Found in the English ULB:

ask, asking, asks, beg, beggar, begged, begging, needy

believe

Related Ideas:

be persuaded, belief, believer, have faith, persuade, persuasive

Definition:

The terms "believe" and "believe in" are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

- believe
 - To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
 - To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.
 - To persuade someone is to get that person to believe that something is true.
- believe in
 - To "believe in" someone means to "trust in" that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
 - When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
 - The phrase "have faith in" usually has the same meaning as "believe in."
 - To "believe in Jesus" means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

In the Bible, the term "believer" refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term "believer" literally means "person who believes."
- The term "Christian" eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

The term "unbelief" refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, "unbelief" refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one's Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an "unbeliever."

Translation Suggestions:

Translating "believe" and "believe in":

* To "believe" could be translated as to "know to be true" or "know to be right." * To "believe in" could be translated as "trust completely" or "trust and obey" or "completely rely on and follow."

Translating "believer":

* Some translations may prefer to say "believer in Jesus" or "believer in Christ." * This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means "person who trusts in Jesus" or "someone who knows Jesus and lives for him." * Other ways to translate "believer" could be "follower of Jesus" or "person who knows and obeys Jesus." * The term "believer" is a general term for any believer in Christ, while "disciple" and "apostle" were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.

Translating "unbelief" and "unbeliever": * Other ways to translate "unbelief" could include "lack of faith" or "not believing." * The term "unbeliever" could be translated as "person who does not believe in Jesus" or "someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior."

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), [Christian](#), [disciple](#), [faith](#), [trust](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:06
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41

- John 01:12
- Acts 06:05
- Acts 09:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 03:03
- 1 Corinthians 06:01
- 1 Corinthians 09:05
- 2 Corinthians 06:15
- Hebrews 03:12
- 1 John 03:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H3948, H6601, G544, G569, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103

Forms Found in the English ULB:

am persuaded, belief, believe, believed, believer, believers, believes, believing, has faith, persuade, persuaded, persuading, persuasiveness, were persuaded

betray**Related Ideas:**

betrayal, betrayer, give over, hand over, traitor, treacherous, treacherously, treachery, turn over

Definition:

The term "betray" means to act in a way that deceives a person and allows other people to harm that person. A "betrayer" is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

- Judas was "the betrayer" because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
- The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus' unjust death.
- "Betrayal" and "treachery" are two words for what happens when one person betrays another.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "betray" could be translated as "deceive and cause harm to" or "turn over to the enemy" or "treat treacherously."
- The term "betrayer" could be translated as "person who betrays" or "double dealer" or "traitor."

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [apostle](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:52
- John 06:64
- John 13:22
- Matthew 10:04
- Matthew 26:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H4042, H4603, H4604, H4820, H5462, H7411, G1560, G3860, G4273, G5483

Forms Found in the English ULB:

betray, betrayal, betrayed, betrayer, betrayers, betraying, betrays, give ... over, given ... over, hand ... over, handed ... over, traitor, traitors, treacherous, treacherously, treachery, turn ... over

blameless

Related Ideas:

blamelessly, faultless, without blame

Definition:

The term "blameless" literally means "without blame." It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being "blameless" behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is "one who fears God and turns away from evil."

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as "with no fault to his character" or "completely obedient to God" or "avoiding sin" or "keeping away from evil."

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:10
- 1 Thessalonians 03:11-13
- 2 Peter 03:14
- Colossians 01:22
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Philippians 02:15
- Philippians 03:06

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1368, H2135, H2136, H8535, H8549, G273, G274, G298, G299, G410, G423, G677

Forms Found in the English ULB:

blameless, blamelessly, faultless, without blame

bless

Related Ideas:

happier, happy

Definition:

To "bless" someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people "bless" God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term "bless" is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "bless" could also be translated as to "provide abundantly for" or to "be very kind and favorable toward."
- "God has brought great blessing to" could be translated as "God has given many good things to" or "God has provided abundantly for" or "God has caused many good things to happen to".

- "He is blessed" could be translated as "he will greatly benefit" or "he will experience good things" or "God will cause him to flourish."
- "Blessed is the person who" could be translated as "How good it is for the person who."
- Expressions like "blessed be the Lord" could be translated as "May the Lord be praised" or "Praise the Lord" or "I praise the Lord."
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as "thanked God for the food" or "praised God for giving them food" or "consecrated the food by praising God for it."

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H833, H835, H8055, H1288, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G3741

Forms Found in the English ULB:

bless, blessed, blesses, blessing, blessings, happier, happy

blood

Related Ideas:

bleeding

Definition:

The term "blood" refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person's skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person's entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal's life to pay for people's sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus' blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression "flesh and blood" refers to human beings.
- The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression "flesh and blood" could be translated as "people" or "human beings."
- Depending on the context, the expression "my own flesh and blood" could be translated as "my own family" or "my own relatives" or "my own people."
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate "flesh and blood."

(See also: [flesh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 02:20
- Acts 05:28
- Colossians 01:20
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 04:11
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

Forms Found in the English ULB:

bleeding, blood

bloodshed

Related Ideas:

bloodguilt

Definition:

The term "bloodshed" refers to the death of human beings due to murder, war, or some other violent act.

- This term literally means "shedding of blood," which refers to when blood comes out of a person's body from an open wound.
- The term "bloodshed" is often used to refer to widespread killing of people.
- It is also used as a general reference to the sin of murder.
- "Bloodguilt" is guilt for bloodshed.

Translation Suggestions:

- "The bloodshed" could be translated as "the killing of people" or "the many people who were killed."
- "Through bloodshed" could also be translated as, "by killing people."
- "Innocent bloodshed" could be translated as "killing innocent people."
- "Bloodshed follows bloodshed" could be translated as "they keep killing people" or "the killing of people goes on and on" or "they have killed many people and continue to do that" or "people keep killing other people."
- Another figurative use, "bloodshed will pursue you," could be translated as "your people will continue to experience bloodshed" or "your people will keep being killed" or "your people will continue to be at war with other nations and people will keep dying."

(See also: [blood slaughter](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 22:6-8
- Genesis 09:5-7
- Hebrews 09:21-22
- Isaiah 26:21
- Matthew 23:29-31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1818

Forms Found in the English ULB:

bloodguilt, bloodshed

boast**Related Ideas:**

boastful

Definition:

The term "boast" means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- Someone who is "boastful" talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for "boasting in" their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
- God urged the Israelites to instead "boast" or be proud about the fact that they know him.
- The apostle Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "boast" could include "brag" or "talk proudly" or "be proud."
- The term "boastful" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "full of prideful talk" or "prideful" or "talking proudly about oneself."
- In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as "take pride in" or "exalt in" or "be very glad about" or "give thanks to God about."
- Some languages have two words for "pride": one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in one's work, family, or country.

Translation Suggestions:

(See also: [proud](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:11
- 2 Timothy 03:1-4
- James 03:14
- James 04:15-17
- Psalms 044:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1984, H3235, H6286, G212, G213, G1461, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3166

Forms Found in the English ULB:

boast, boasted, boastful, boasting, boasts, reason for boasting

body**Related Ideas:**

bodily, body of Christ, carcass, corpse

Definition:

The term "body" literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term "body" refers to a dead person. Sometimes this is referred to as a "dead body" or a "corpse." The dead body of an animal is called a "carcass."
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, "This (bread) is my body," he was referring to his physical body that would be "broken" (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the "body of Christ." Just as a physical body has many parts, the "body of Christ" has many individual members. Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the "head" (leader) of the "body" of his believers. Just as a person's head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his "body."

Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say "spiritual body of Christ."
- When Jesus says, "This is my body," it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as "corpse" for a person or "carcass" for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- Ephesians 04:04
- Judges 14:08
- Numbers 06:6-8
- Psalm 031:09
- Romans 12:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H990, H1320, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5315, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4561, G4954, G4983

Forms Found in the English ULB:

bodies, bodily, body, carcass, carcasses, corpse, corpses

bow**Related Ideas:**

bend, bend the knee, bow down, fall down before, kneel

Note

For the weapon called a bow, [click here](#).

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To "bow down" means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include "bow the knee" (meaning to kneel) and "bow the head" (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is "bowed down" has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "bend forward" or "bend the head" or "kneel."
- The term "bow down" could be translated as "kneel down" or "prostrate oneself."
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:18
- Exodus 20:05
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:05
- Matthew 02:11
- Revelation 03:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H1288, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098, G4352, G4364

Forms Found in the English ULB:

are bent, bend, bend the knee, bow, bow down, bowed, bowed ... down, bowed ... down ... before, bowing, bowing down, bows, bows down, fall down, fell, fell down, has ... bent, have ... bent, kneel, kneeling, knelt, will bend

bread**Related Ideas:**

food, loaf of bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term "loaf" occurs by itself, it means "loaf of bread."
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
- Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called "unleavened bread" and was used for the Jews' passover meal.

- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general.
- The term "bread of the presence" referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as "bread showing that God lived among them."
- The figurative term "bread from heaven" referred to the special white food called "manna" that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
- Jesus also called himself the "bread that came down from heaven" and the "bread of life."
- When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
- Many times the term "bread" can be translated more generally as "food."

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), [yeast](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 09:13
- Mark 06:38
- Matthew 04:04
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

Forms Found in the English ULB:

bread, food, loaf of ... bread, loaves, loaves of ... bread

bribe

Related Ideas:

bribery, payoff

Definition:

To "bribe" means to give someone something of value, such as money, to influence that person to do something dishonest.

- The soldiers who guarded Jesus' empty tomb were bribed with money to lie about what happened.
- Sometimes a government official will be bribed to overlook a crime or to vote a certain way.
- The Bible forbids giving or taking bribes.
- The term, "bribe" could be translated as, "dishonest payment" or "payment for lying" or "price for breaking the rules."
- To "bribe" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, to "pay to influence (someone)" or to "pay to have a dishonest favor done" or to "pay for a favor."

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:1-3
- Ecclesiastes 07:7
- Isaiah 01:23
- Micah 03:9-11
- Proverbs 15:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3724, H4979, H7809, H7810, H7936, H7966, H8021, H8641, G5260

Forms Found in the English ULB:

bribe, bribed, bribery, bribes, payoffs

bride

Related Ideas:

bridal

Definition:

A bride is the woman in a wedding ceremony who is getting married to her husband, the bridegroom.

- The term "bride" is used as a metaphor for believers in Jesus, the Church.
- Jesus is metaphorically called the "bridegroom" for the Church.

(See also: [bridegroom](#), [church](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 22:16
- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 02:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3618, G3565

Forms Found in the English ULB:

bridal, bride, brides

bronze

Definition:

The term "bronze" refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers' armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called "casting."

(See also: [armor](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 07:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 02:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 01:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G5470, G5474, G5475

Forms Found in the English ULB:

bronze

brother**Related Ideas:**

brotherhood

Definition:

The term "brother" usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term "brothers" is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used "brothers" to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term "sister" when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to "a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing."

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when "brothers" is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include "relatives" or "clan members" or "fellow Israelites."
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as "brother in Christ" or "spiritual brother."
- If both males and females are being referred to and "brother" would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be "fellow believers" or "Christian brothers and sisters."
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2993, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

Forms Found in the English ULB:

brother, brother's, brotherhood, brothers, brothers'

burnt offering

Related Ideas:

offering by fire

Definition:

A "burnt offering" was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an "offering by fire."

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), [atonement](#), [cow](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 03:05
- Mark 12:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, G3646

Forms Found in the English ULB:

burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire, offering made by fire

call

Related Ideas:

appeal to, invite, summon

Definition:

The terms "call to" and "call out" mean to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. To "call" someone means to summon that person. There are also some other meanings.

- To "call out" to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, "call" has a meaning of "summon" or "command to come" or "request to come."
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their "calling."
- When God "calls" people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, "His name is called John," means, "He is named John" or "His name is John."
- To be "called by the name of" means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, "I have called you by name" means that God has specifically chosen that person.
- To appeal to someone is to ask someone to do something.

- To invite someone is to ask them to do something that they might like to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "call" could be translated by a word that means "summon," which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression "call out to you" could be translated as "ask you for help" or "pray to you urgently."
- When the Bible says that God has "called" us to be his servants, this could be translated as, "specially chose us" or "appointed us" to be his servants.
- "You must call his name" can also be translated as, "you must name him."
- "His name is called" could also be translated as, "his name is" or "he is named."
- To "call out" could be translated as, "say loudly" or "shout" or "say with a loud voice." Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression "your calling" could be translated as "your purpose" or "God's purpose for you" or "God's special work for you."
- To "call on the name of the Lord" could be translated as "seek the Lord and depend on him" or "trust in the Lord and obey him."
- To "call on" an official is to tell him to do what he is supposed to do as part of his job.
- To "call for" something could be translated by "demand" or "ask for" or "command."
- The expression "you are called by my name" could be translated as, "I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me."
- When God says, "I have called you by name," this could be translated as, "I know you and have chosen you."

(See also: [pray](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2199, H3259, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G1528, G1793, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G3870, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

Forms Found in the English ULB:

appeal to, appealed to, appealing to, call, called, called on, called out, calling, calling out, calls, calls out, invite, invited, summon, summoned, summoning

camel

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back.

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](#), [clean](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:21
- 2 Chronicles 09:1-2
- Exodus 09:1-4
- Mark 10:25
- Matthew 03:04
- Matthew 19:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1581, G2574

Forms Found in the English ULB:

camel, camel's, camels, camels'

captive

Related Ideas:

captivate, captivity, captor, capture, catch

Definition:

The terms "captive" and "captivity" refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to "take captive" is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, "carry you away captive" could also be translated as, "force you to live as captives" or "take you away to another country as prisoners."
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to "take captive" every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be "taken captive" by sin, which means he is "controlled by" sin.
- A "captor" is a person who captures another person or takes him captive.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be "held captive" could also be translated by, "not allowed to be free" or "kept in prison" or "forced to live in a foreign country."
- The expression, "led captive" or "taken captive" could be translated as, "captured" or "imprisoned" or "forced to go to a foreign land."
- The term "captives" could also be translated as, "people who were captured" or "enslaved people."
- Depending on the context, "captivity" could also be translated as, "imprisonment" or "exile" or "forced stay in a foreign country."

(See also: [Babylon](#), [exile](#), [prison](#), [seize](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:05
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 43:03
- Luke 04:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H270, H631, H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H3920, H3947, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221, G4084

Forms Found in the English ULB:

captivate, captivated, captive, captives, captivity, captor, captors, capture, captured, captures, carried away captive, catch, caught, held captive, taken ... captive

chariot

Related Ideas:

charioteer

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.
- A "charioteer" was a person who drove a chariot.

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 08:29
- Acts 08:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G716, G4480

Forms Found in the English ULB:

chariot, charioteer, charioteers, chariots

cherubim

Related Ideas:

cherub

Definition:

The term "cherub," and its plural form "cherubim," refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. Cherubim have wings and can fly. Ezekiel also called them "living creatures" and described them as having four faces: the faces of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.

- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "cherubim" could be translated as "creatures with wings" or "guardians with wings" or "winged spiritual guardians" or "holy, winged guardians."
- A "cherub" should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, "creature with wings" or "winged spiritual guardian," for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of "angel."
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [angel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:06
- 1 Kings 06:23-26
- 2 Samuel 22:11
- Exodus 25:15-18
- Ezekiel 01:05-14
- Ezekiel 09:03
- Ezekiel 10:15
- Genesis 03:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3742, G5502

Forms Found in the English ULB:

cherub, cherubim

chief

Related Ideas:

finest, first of all, important, prominent

Definition:

The term "chief" refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, "chief musician," "chief priest," "chief tax collector" and "chief ruler."
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as "chiefs" of their family clans. In this context, the term "chief" could also be translated as "leader" or "head father."
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as "leading" or "ruling," as in "leading musician" or "ruling priest."

(See also: [chief priests](#), [priest](#), [tax](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:02
- Psalm 004:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H117, H441, H3629, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G3175, G4410, G4413, G5506

Forms Found in the English ULB:

chief, chiefs, finest, first of all, important, most important, prominent

children

Related Ideas:

child, childhood, childless

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "child" is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. * The word "childhood" refers to the time that a person is a child. * The word "childless" describes a person who has no children. * The word "children" is the plural form of "child."

The words "child" and "children" also have several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
- Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
- The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, "children of God" refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."
- If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
- When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
- The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: [descendant](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), [beloved](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:28
- 3 John 01:04
- Galatians 04:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5953, H6185, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G4690, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5207, G5388

Forms Found in the English ULB:

child, childhood, childless, children

circumcise**Related Ideas:**

circumcision, uncircumcision

Definition:

The term "circumcise" means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God's covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham's descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, "circumcision of the heart" refers figuratively to the "cutting away" or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, "the circumcised" refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term "uncircumcised" refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms "uncircumcised" and "uncircumcision" refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the "uncircumcised," he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an "uncircumcised heart" or who are "uncircumcised in heart." This is a figurative way of saying that these people are not God's people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, "uncircumcised" could be translated as "not circumcised."
- The expression "the uncircumcision" could be translated as "people who are not circumcised" or "people who do not belong to God," depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include "not God's people" or "rebellious like those who don't belong to God" or "people who have no sign of belonging to God."
- The expression "uncircumcised in heart" could be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to believe." However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, "cut around" or "cut in a circle" or "cut off the foreskin."
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.

- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of "male."

(See also: [Abraham](#), [covenant](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48
- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 05:03
- Judges 15:18
- 2 Samuel 01:20
- Jeremiah 09:26
- Ezekiel 32:25
- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:03
- Acts 15:01
- Acts 11:03
- Romans 02:27
- Galatians 05:03
- Ephesians 02:11
- Philippians 03:03
- Colossians 02:11
- Colossians 02:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, G203, G564, G1986, G4059, G4061

Forms Found in the English ULB:

circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

clan

Related Ideas:

ancestral clan

Definition:

The term "clan" refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
- Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
- Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses' father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
- Clan could be translated as "family group" or "extended family" or "relatives."

(See also: [family](#), [Jethro](#), [tribe](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:33-35
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 36:15-16
- Genesis 36:29-30
- Genesis 36:40
- Joshua 15:20
- Numbers 03:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H441, H504, H1004, H4940

Forms Found in the English ULB:

ancestral clan, ancestral clans, clan, clans

clean**Related Ideas:**

cleanness, cleanse, unclean, uncleanness, wash

Definition:

The term "clean" literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, words like "clean" and "washed" are often used figuratively to mean, "pure," "holy," "free from sin," or "innocent".

- "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
- Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

Translating "clean": * This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty). * Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God." * "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify." * Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.

Translating "unclean": * The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled." * When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled." * The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [defile](#), [demon](#), [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 07:02
- Genesis 07:08
- Deuteronomy 12:15

- Psalms 051:07
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27
- Luke 05:13
- Acts 08:07
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- James 04:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H1351, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6663, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514, G2839, G2840

Forms Found in the English ULB:

clean, cleaned, cleanness, cleans, cleanse, cleansed, cleanses, cleansing, purge, unclean, uncleanness, wash, washed, washes, washing

clothed

Related Ideas:

cloth, clothe, cover, dressed, garment, put on, unclothed, wardrobe, wear

Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, "clothed with" means to be endowed or equipped with something. To "clothe" oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is outside your body and is visible to all, when you are "clothed" with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To "clothe yourself with kindness" means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be "clothed with power from on high" means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as "clothed with shame" or "clothed with terror."
- All of the clothes a person wears is called his "wardrobe."

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, "clothe yourselves with." Another way to translate this could be "put on" if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate "clothed with" could be "showing" or "manifesting" or "filled with" or "having the quality of."
- The term "clothe yourself with" could also be translated as "cover yourself with" or "behave in a way that shows."

Bible References:

- Luke 24:49

Word Data:

- Strong's: H155, H899, H2290, H3680, H3736, H3801, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4254, H4374, H5526, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1562, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2224, G2439, G2440, G4016, G4749, G5409, G5509

Forms Found in the English ULB:

cloth, clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, cover, covered, coverings, coverings for their loins, covers, dressed, garment, garments, put ... on, putting ... on, unclothed, wardrobe, wear, wearing, worn

command**Related Ideas:**

commandment, forbid, order, requirement, solemn command

Definition:

The term to "command" means to order someone to do something. A "command" or "commandment" is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, "commandment" often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
- A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
- To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.
- To "forbid" is to command that someone not do something.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
- Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), [law](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H560, H565, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3245, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4687, H4931, H5713, H5749, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3143, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4487, G5506

Forms Found in the English ULB:

command, commanded, commanding, commandment, commandments, commands, forbid, forbidden, forbidding, give ... solemn command, given ... solemn commands, given an order, given orders, order, ordered, orders, requirement, solemn commands

commander**Related Ideas:**

captain, leader, military officer, one who leads

Definition:

The term "commander" refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate "commander" could include, "leader" or "captain" or "officer."
- The term to "command" an army could be translated as to "lead" or to "be in charge of."

(See also: [command](#), [ruler](#), [centurion](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 11:11-12
- Daniel 02:14
- Mark 06:21-22
- Proverbs 06:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H1368, H2710, H2951, H1169, G4755, H5057, H5257, H6260, H6346, H7101, H7262, H7218, H7227, H7229, H7860, H7990, H8269, G758, G2233, G4291, G5506

Forms Found in the English ULB:

captain, captains, commander, commanders, leader, leaders, leading, military officers, one who leads

commit**Related Ideas:**

commitment

Definition:

The terms "commit" and "commitment" refer to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being "committed" to doing it.
- To "commit" to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has "committed" (or "given") to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- To "commit" something to someone is to give that thing completely to that person.
- To "commit" someone to another person is to put someone either in the care of or under the guard of that other person.
- The terms "commit" and "committed" also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as "commit a sin" or "commit adultery" or "commit murder."
- The expression "committed to him the task" could also be translated as "gave him the task" or "entrusted to him the task" or "assigned the task to him."
- The term "commitment" could be translated by, "task that was given" or "promise that was made," depending on the context.

(See also: [adultery](#), [faithful](#), [promise](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 28:07
- 1 Peter 02:21-23
- Jeremiah 02:12-13
- Matthew 13:41
- Psalm 058:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G264, G2038, G2716, G3429, G3431, G3860, G3872, G3908, G4102, G4203

Forms Found in the English ULB:

commit, commitment, commits, committed, committing

compassion

Related Ideas:

compassionate, deal gently with, pity, sympathy

Definition:

The term "compassion" refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A "compassionate" person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word "compassion" usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul's letter to the Colossians, he tells them to "clothe themselves with compassion." He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.
- To have "sympathy" for someone is to understand how that person feels and to want to help him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal meaning of "compassion" is "bowels of mercy." This is an expression that means "mercy" or "pity." Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating "compassion" could include, "a deep caring for" or "helpful mercy."
- The term "compassionate" could also be translated as, "caring and helpful" or "deeply loving and merciful."

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 05:9-11
- Jonah 04:1-3
- Mark 01:41
- Romans 09:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2550, H2580, H2603, H5150, H5162, H5164, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

Forms Found in the English ULB:

compassion, compassionate, compassions, deal gently with, pitied, pity, sympathy

conceive

Related Ideas:

conception

Definition:

The terms "conceive" and "conception" usually refer to becoming pregnant with a child. It can also be used for animals that become pregnant.

- The phrase "conceive a child" could be translated as, "become pregnant" or some other term that is an acceptable way of referring to this.
- The related term "conception" could be translated as, "beginning of a pregnancy" or "moment of becoming pregnant."
- These terms can also refer to creating something or thinking of something, such as an idea, a plan, or a task. Ways to translate this could include, "think of" or "plan" or "create," depending on the context.
- Sometimes this term can be used figuratively as in, "when sin is conceived" which means "when sin is first thought of" or "at the very start of a sin" or "when a sin first begins."

(See also: [create](#), [womb](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:1-4
- Hosea 02:4-5
- Job 15:35
- Luke 01:24-25
- Luke 02:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2029, H2030, H2032, H2232, H2254, H2803, H3179, G1080, G2602, G2845, G4815

Forms Found in the English ULB:

conceive, conceived, conceives, conception

confirm**Related Ideas:**

carry out, cause someone to believe firmly, confirmation, guarantee

Definition:

The terms "confirm" and "confirmation" refer to stating or assuring that something is true or sure or trustworthy.

- In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will "confirm" his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
- When a king is "confirmed" it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to say that what was written is true.
- The "confirmation" of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath "as confirmation" means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate "confirm" could include, "state as true" or "prove to be trustworthy" or "agree with" or "assure" or "promise," depending on the context.
- To "carry out" a promise is to do what one has promised to do.

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [trust](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 01:21

- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 06:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G950, G951, G3315, G4741, G4972

Forms Found in the English ULB:

carry out, cause ... to believe firmly, confirm, confirmation, confirmed, confirms, guaranteed

courage

Related Ideas:

brave, courageous, discourage, discouragement, encourage, encouragement

Definitions:

The term "courage" refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, "courageous" describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression "take courage" means, "don't be afraid" or "be assured that things will turn out well."
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be "strong and courageous."
- The term "courageous" could also be translated as "brave" or "unafraid" or "bold."
- Depending on the context, to "have courage" could also be translated as, "be emotionally strong" or "be confident" or "stand firm."
- To "speak with courage" could be translated as, "speak boldly" or "speak without being afraid" or "speak confidently."

The terms "encourage" and encouragement" refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is "exhort," which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term "discourage" refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "encourage" could include "urge" or "comfort" or "say kind things" or "help and support."
- The phrase "give words of encouragement" means "say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered."

(See also: [confidence](#), [exhort](#), [fear](#), [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 01:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25
- Matthew 09:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 07:13

- Acts 05:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 03:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H533, H553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G2114, G2115, G2174, G2292, G2293, G2294, H2865, G3870, G3874, G3954, G4389, G4837, G5111

Forms Found in the English ULB:

brave, bravest, courage, courageous, dare, dared, discourage, discouraged, discouragement, discouraging, encourage, encouraged, encouragement, encouraging, take courage

covenant

Related Ideas:

agreed, contract, new covenant, will

Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements or contracts, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts of those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.

- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:12
- Genesis 17:07
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 01:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 07:08
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 03:06
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H1697, H2319, H2374, G1242, G4934

Forms Found in the English ULB:

agreed, contract, covenant, covenants, new covenant, will

covenant faithfulness

Related Ideas:

covenant loyalty, loving kindness, steadfast love, unfailing love

Definition:

This term is used to describe God's commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to his people.

- God made promises to the Israelites in formal agreements called "covenants."
- The "covenant faithfulness" or "covenant loyalty" of Yahweh refers to the fact that he keeps his promises to his people.
- God's faithfulness to keep his covenant promises is an expression of his grace toward his people.
- The term "loyalty" is another word that refers to being committed and dependable, to do and say what has been promised, and what will benefit someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- The way this term is translated will also depend on how the terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, "faithful love" or "loyal, committed love" or "loving dependability."

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [grace](#), [Israel](#), [people of God](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Ezra 03:11
- Numbers 14:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2617

Forms Found in the English ULB:

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, steadfast love, unending love

COW**Related Ideas:**

bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen

Definition:

The terms "cow," "bull," "heifer," "ox," and "cattle" all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a "cow," the male is a "bull," and their offspring is a "calf."
- In the Bible, cattle were among the "clean" animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A "heifer" is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An "ox" is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is "oxen." Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to "be under a yoke" became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [yoke](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:03
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 01:09
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:05
- Hebrews 09:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H504, H929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8450, G1016, G1151, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G5022

Forms Found in the English ULB:

bull, bull's, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, cow, cows, fattened calves, heifer, heifer's, ox, oxen

CROSS**Definition:**

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb "cross" that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as "execution post" or "tree of death."
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [crucify](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:17
- Colossians 02:15
- Galatians 06:12
- John 19:18
- Luke 09:23
- Luke 23:26
- Matthew 10:38
- Philippians 02:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4716

Forms Found in the English ULB:

cross

cry**Related Ideas:**

outcry, raised his voice, scream, shout, speak out, speak loudly

Definition:

The terms "cry" or "cry out" often mean to say something loudly and urgently. Someone can "cry out" in pain or in distress or in anger.

- The phrase "cry out" also means to shout or call out, often with the intent to ask for help.
- This term could also be translated as "exclaim loudly" or "urgently ask for help," depending on the context.
- An expression such as, "I cry out to you" could be translated as, "I call to you for help" or "I urgently ask you for help."

(See also: [call](#), [plead](#))

Bible References:

- Job 27:09
- Mark 05:5-6
- Mark 06:48-50
- Psalm 022:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8643, H8663, G310, G349, G400, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

Forms Found in the English ULB:

cried, cried for help, cried out, cries, cries of distress, cries out, cry, cry ... for help, cry aloud, cry of distress, cry out, crying, crying out, outcries, outcry, raised ... voice, scream, screams, shout, shout out loud, shouted, shouting, shouting out, shouts, speak out, spoke loudly

curse

Related Ideas:

accursed, speak evil

Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
- "Cursed be the day I was born" could also be translated as, "I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10
- Galatians 03:14
- Genesis 03:14
- Genesis 03:17

- James 03:10
- Numbers 22:06
- Psalms 109:28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2194, H2778, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672

Forms Found in the English ULB:

accursed, curse, cursed, curses, cursing, speaks evil

cut off

Related Ideas:

chop down, cut down, cut in two, pluck out, shear, tear off

Definition:

The expression "cut off" literally means to use a sharp instrument to remove a part of something. This can refer to, for example, removing a limb from a tree or an arm or leg from a person, or to chopping a tree completely down.

The expression "cut off" is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

The metaphor "cut off" refers to people or God separating a person from his nation or community either by driving him away or by killing him.

To "shear" is to cut the hair off of an animal.

To "pluck" is to separate a part of something from the rest by pulling it off or out.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God's commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God's people and from his presence.
- God also said he would "cut off" or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.

Picture of Cut Off From People:

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression "be cut off" could be translated as "be banished" or "be sent away" or "be separated from" or "be killed" or "be destroyed."
- Depending on the context, to "cut off" could be translated as, to "destroy" or to "send away" or to "separate from" or to "destroy."
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as "were stopped" or "were caused to stop flowing" or "were divided."

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:06
- Proverbs 23:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1497, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581, G1807

Forms Found in the English ULB:

chop ... down, chopped ... down, cut ... down, cut ... off, cut ... out of, cut in two, cut off, cuts ... off, cutting ... off, eliminate, pluck ... out, shear, sheared, tear ... off

darkness**Related Ideas:**

dark, darken, gloom

Definition:

The terms "darkness" and "gloom" literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of these terms:

- As a metaphor, "darkness" means "impurity" or "evil" or "spiritual blindness."
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression "dominion of darkness" refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term "darkness" can also be used as a metaphor for death.
- People who do not know God are said to be "living in darkness," which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as "outer darkness."
- The term "gloom" can be used as a metaphor for sadness.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, "darkness of night" (as opposed to "light of day") or "not seeing anything, like at night" or "evil, like a dark place".

(See also: [corrupt](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:06
- 1 John 02:08
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 01:13
- Isaiah 05:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 08:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, H6751, H6937, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4654, G4655, G4656

Forms Found in the English ULB:

dark, darken, darkened, darker, darkness, gloom, thick darkness, turned dark

day**Related Ideas:**

daily, daytime, morning, today

Definition:

The term "day" literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days."
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of "day" could include, "time" or "season" or "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: [judgment day](#), [last day](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 20:06
- Daniel 10:04
- Ezra 06:15
- Ezra 06:19
- Matthew 09:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H3119, H6242, G2250, G4594

Forms Found in the English ULB:

daily, day, day's, days, days', daytime, morning, today

death**Related Ideas:**

breathed their last, dead, deadly, deadness, deathly, die, lethal, mortal, stop breathing

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person's spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.
- The words "deadly" and "lethal" describe something that causes someone to die.
- Something that is "mortal" can die; it does not live forever.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate the words "die," "death," and "dead," it is usually best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death. This is true both when "death" refers to physical death and when it refers to spiritual death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died."
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10
- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H7819, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

Forms Found in the English ULB:

about to die, breathed ... last, causes ... death, dead, deady, deadness, death, deathly, deaths, die, die with, died, dies, dying, fatal, lethal, mortal, stop breathing, stops breathing

deceive

Related Ideas:

lie, deal falsely, deceit, deception, deceptive, delusion, entice, error, false, falsehood, flatter, illusion, trick

Definition:

The word "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true.

- The words "deceit" and "deception" can refer to an act or habit of deceiving others or to a message that is not truthful.
- A "deceiver" is someone who causes others to believe something that is not true. For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.

declare

- The words “deceitful” and “deceptive” can describe people who deceive others or to messages or actions that are meant to deceive others.
- To “entice” someone is to deceive him into thinking that he will enjoy doing something evil.
- To “defraud” someone is to use deceit to get from him something that he would not give if he knew the truth.
- To “flatter” someone is to praise him falsely so that he will do what the speaker wants him to do.
- To “lie” to someone or to tell a “lie” is not the same as to lie down to go to sleep.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “deceive” could be translated as “lie to,” “mislead,” “trick,” or “fool.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H2505, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4604, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7723, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1818, G3884, G4105, G2296, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423, G5571

Forms Found in the English ULB:

a lie, deal falsely, deceit, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deceive, deceived, deceiver, deceivers, deceives, deceiving, deception, deceptive, defraud, defrauded, delusion, entice, error, false, falsehood, falsely, flatter, flattering, flatters, flattery, illusions, liar, liars, lies, trick

declare

Related Ideas:

announce, declaration, proclaim, proclamation, pronounce

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.

- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term "proclaim" can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "declare" could be translated as "proclaim" or "publicly state" or "strongly say" or "emphatically state."
- The term "declaration" could be translated as "statement" or "proclamation."
- The term "proclaim" could be translated as "announce" or "openly preach" or "publicly declare."
- The term "proclamation" could be translated as "announcement" or "public preaching."
- The phrase "this is Yahweh's declaration" could be translated as "this is what Yahweh declares" or "this is what Yahweh says."

(See also: [preach](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H262, H816, H874, H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H6963, H7121, H7150, H7440, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G518, G591, G669, G1229, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1861, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3004, G3140, G3142, G3670, G3724, G3870, G3955, G4135, G4296, G5335

Forms Found in the English ULB:

announce, announced, announces, declaration, declarations, declare, declared, declares, declaring, proclaim, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclaims, proclamation, proclamations, pronounces

decree

Related Ideas:

prohibition

Definition:

A decree is a proclamation or law that is publicly declared to all the people.

- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- Like laws and commands, decrees must be obeyed.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.
- To decree something, or to "issue a decree," means to give an order that must be obeyed. This could be translated as to "order" or to "command" or to "formally require" or to "publicly make a law."
- Something that is "decreed" to happen means that this "will definitely happen" or "has been decided upon and will not be changed" or "declared absolutely that this will happen."
- A "prohibition" is a decree that tells people that they cannot do something they would otherwise do.

(See also: [command](#), [declare](#), [law](#), [preach](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
- 1 Kings 08:57-58
- Acts 17:5-7
- Daniel 02:13
- Esther 01:22
- Luke 02:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H633, H1697, H5715, H1504, H1510, H1881, H1882, H1696, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2711, H2782, H2852, H2941, H2942, H3791, H3983, H4055, H4406, H4687, H4941, H5407, H5713, H6599, H6600, H6680, H7010, H7761, H8421, G1378, G3724

Forms Found in the English ULB:

decree, decreed, decrees, prohibition

delight

Related Ideas:

delicacy, delicious, delightful, please, pleasant, pleasure

Definition:

A "delight" is something that pleases someone greatly or causes much joy.

- To "delight in" something means to "take joy in" or "be happy about" it.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called "delightful."
- If a persons delight is in something it means that he enjoys it very much.
- The expression "my delight is in the law of Yahweh" could be translated as "the law of Yahweh gives me great joy" or "I love to obey the laws of Yahweh" or "I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands."
- The phrases "take no delight in" and "have no delight in" could be translated as "not at all pleased by" or "not happy about."
- The phrase "delight himself in" means "he enjoys doing" something or "he is very happy about" something or someone.
- The term "delights" refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as "pleasures" or "things that give joy."
- An expression such as "I delight to do your will" could also be translated as "I enjoy doing your will" or "I am very happy when I obey you."
- The word "delicacies" refers to delicious foods that are very expensive or prepared only on special occasions.
- Food that is "delicious" tastes very good.

Bible References:

- Proverbs 08:30
- Psalm 001:02
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Solomon 01:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H2895, H2896, H3190, H3955, H4261, H4574, H5276, H5278, H5730, H5965, H6026, H6027, H6148, H7306, H7381, H7522, H8055, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597, G2106, G2107

Forms Found in the English ULB:

am pleased, delicacies, delicacy, delicious, delight, delighted, delightful, delights, good pleasure, is pleased, pleasant, pleasantness, pleased, pleases, pleasing, pleasure, take ... pleasure, takes ... pleasure, took ... pleasure, very pleased, well pleased

deliver

Related Ideas:

defend, deliverance, deliverer, escape, relieve, rescue, rescuer

Definition:

To "deliver" someone means to rescue that person. The term "deliverer" refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term "deliverance" refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called "judges" and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a "deliverer." Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term "deliver over to" or "deliver up to" has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term "deliver" can be translated as "rescue" or "liberate" or "save."
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, "deliver over" can be translated as "betray to" or "hand over" or "give over."
- The word "deliverer" can also be translated as "rescuer" or "liberator."
- When the term "deliverer" refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as "governor" or "judge" or "leader."

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:10
- Acts 07:35
- Galatians 01:04
- Judges 10:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4498, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5437, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7378, H7611, H7725, H7804, H8199, H8668, G325, G525, G629, G1080, G1325, G1659, G1807, G1929, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

Forms Found in the English ULB:

be rescued, defend, defended, deliver, deliverance, delivered, delivered ... over, deliverer, deliverers, delivering, delivers, escape, escaped, permit ... to escape, relieve, rescue, rescued, rescuer, rescues

descendant

Related Ideas:

descend, posterity

Definition:

A "descendant" is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob's descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase "descended from" is another way of saying "a descendant of" as in "Abraham was descended from Noah." This could also be translated as "from the family line of."
- A person's "posterity" is all of his descendants.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [father](#), [Jacob](#), [Noah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H1004, H1121, H1247, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6631, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G3624, G4690

Forms Found in the English ULB:

clans descended, descend, descendant, descendants, descended, posterity

destroy

Related Ideas:

break down, bring ... to nothing, destruction, remove, cut to pieces, demolish, destroyer, destructive, downfall, overthrow, pass away, put an end to, shatter, spoil, throw down, waste away

Definition:

To destroy something is to completely make an end to it, so that it no longer exists.

- The term "destroyer" literally means "person who destroys."
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.
- The word "overthrown" is a metaphor that speaks of a ruler or a great city as if it were a person sitting or standing on a high place whom another person has pushed off of the high place and who is now lying helpless.

(See also: [angel](#), [Egypt](#), [firstborn](#), [Passover](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Judges 16:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H622, H398, H1104, H1197, H1760, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H2865, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H3832, H4191, H4229, H4288, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5486, H5487, H5493, H5595, H5642, H5674, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7112, H7701, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8213, H8552, G355, G396, G622, G853, G684, G1311, G1842, G2049, G2506, G2507, G2647, G2704, G3089, G3639, G3645, G4199, G5351, G5356

Forms Found in the English ULB:

an end is put to, be destroyed, break ... down, breaking ... down, breaks ... down, bring ... to nothing, broke to pieces, broken, broken to pieces, brought ... down, brought ... to nothing, complete destruction, completely destroy, completely destroyed, crashing sound, cut ... to pieces, cut into pieces, cuts ... into pieces, demolish, destroy, destroy ... completely, destroyed, destroyer, destroyers, destroying, destroys, destruction, destructive, downfall, overthrew, overthrown, pass away, put an end to, shatter, shattered, shattering, spoil, throw down, throws ... down, thrown down, wasting away

disgrace**Related Ideas:**

disgraceful, vile

Definitions:

The term "disgrace" refers to a loss of honor and respect.

- When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- The term "disgraceful" is used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame.
- For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- Ways to translate "disgrace" could include "shame" or "dishonor."
- Ways to translate "disgraceful" could include "shameful" or "dishonoring."

(See also: [dishonor](#), [honor](#), [shame](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:07
- Genesis 34:07
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 022:06

Word Data:

- Strong's: H954, H1984, H2490, H2617, H2659, H2781, H2865, H3637, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6031, H7036, G149, G150, G819, G3680, G3856

Forms Found in the English ULB:

disgrace, disgraced, disgraceful, disgraceful thing, disgraces, vile

dishonor**Related Ideas:**

dishonorable, lightly esteemed

Definition:

The term "dishonor" means to do something that is disrespectful to someone. This can also cause that person shame or disgrace.

- The term "dishonorable" describes an action that is shameful or that causes someone to be dishonored.
- Sometimes "dishonorable" is used to refer to objects that are not useful for anything important.
- Children are commanded to honor and obey their parents. When children disobey, they dishonor their parents. They are treating their parents in a way that does not honor them.
- The Israelites dishonored Yahweh when they worshiped false gods and practiced immoral behavior.
- The Jews dishonored Jesus by saying that he was possessed by a demon.
- This could be translated as to "not honor" or to "treat with no respect."
- The noun "dishonor" could be translated as "disrespect" or "loss of honor."
- Depending on the context, "dishonorable" could also be translated as "not honorable" or "shameful" or "not worthwhile" or "not valuable."
- A person who is "lightly esteemed" is dishonored by people who refuse to give him the honor he deserves.

(See also: [disgrace](#), [honor](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:10
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Corinthians 06:8-10
- Ezekiel 22:07
- John 08:48
- Leviticus 18:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1540, H2490, H2781, H3637, H3639, H5006, H5034, H6173, H7034, H7036, H7043, G818, G819, G820, G2617

Forms Found in the English ULB:

dishonor, dishonorable, dishonored, dishonors, lightly esteemed

disobey**Related Ideas:**

disobedient

Definition:

The term "disobey" means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being "disobedient."

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.

- The term "disobedient" is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term "disobedience" means "the act of not obeying" or "behavior that is against what God wants."
- A "disobedient people" could be translated by "people who keep on disobeying" or "people who do not do what God commands."

(See also: [authority](#), [evil](#), [sin](#), [obey](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 13:21
- Acts 26:19
- Colossians 03:07
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 06:49
- Psalms 089:30-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4784, H5674, G506, G543, G544, G545, G3847, G3876

Forms Found in the English ULB:

disobedience, disobedient, disobey, disobeyed, disobeying, disobeys

divination

Related Ideas:

divine, diviner, enchantment, interpret omens, soothsayer, spells

Definition:

The terms "divination" and "soothsaying" refer to the practice of trying to get information from spirits in the supernatural world. A person who does this is sometimes called a "diviner" or "soothsayer."

- In Old Testament times, God commanded the Israelites to not practice divination or soothsaying.
- God did permit his people to seek information from him using the Urim and Thummim, which were stones that he had designated to be used by the high priest for that purpose. But he did not allow his people to seek information through the help of evil spirits.
- Pagan diviners used different methods of trying to find out information from the spirit world. Sometimes they would examine the inside parts of a dead animal or throw animal bones on the ground, looking for patterns that they would interpret as messages from their false gods.
- A person who "interprets omens" seeks supernatural knowledge from such things as tea leaves and animal organs and the weather.
- An "enchantment" or "spell" is a set of words that people believe have magic power.
- In the New Testament, Jesus and the apostles also rejected divination, sorcery, witchcraft, and magic. All these practices involve using the power of evil spirits and are condemned by God.

(See also: [apostle](#), [god](#), [magic](#), [sorcery](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 06:1-2
- Acts 16:16
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Genesis 44:05
- Jeremiah 27:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1870, H3049, H4738, H5172, H6049, H7080, H7081, G4436

Forms Found in the English ULB:

divination, divinations, divine, diviner, diviners, divining, enchantments, interpret omens, interprets omens, practice ... divination, soothsayer, soothsaying, spells

divine**Related Ideas:**

deity, divine nature

Definition:

The term "divine" refers to anything pertaining to God.

- Some ways this term is used include "divine authority," "divine judgment," "divine nature," "divine power," and "divine glory."
- In one passage in the Bible, the term "divine" is used to describe something about a false deity.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term "divine" could include "God's" or "from God" or "pertaining to God" or "characterized by God."
- For example, "divine authority" could be translated as "God's authority" or "authority that comes from God."
- The phrase "divine glory" could be translated as "God's glory" or "the glory that God has" or "glory that comes from God."
- Some translations may prefer to use a different word when describing something that pertains to a false god.

(See also: [authority](#), [god](#), [glory](#), [God](#), [judge](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:3-4
- 2 Peter 01:04
- Romans 01:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2303, G2304, G2305, G2316

Forms Found in the English ULB:

deity, divine, divine nature

donkey**Related Ideas:**

mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:32-34
- 1 Samuel 09:04
- 2 Kings 04:21-22
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G3678, G3688, G5268

Forms Found in the English ULB:

donkey, donkey's, donkeys, mule, mules, wild donkey

dream

Related Ideas:

dreamer

Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: [vision](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:16-17
- Daniel 01:17-18
- Daniel 02:01
- Genesis 37:06
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Matthew 02:13
- Matthew 02:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G1797, G1798, G3677

Forms Found in the English ULB:

dream, dreamed, dreamer, dreamers, dreaming, dreams

drunk

Related Ideas:

intoxicated, drink much, drunkard, drunkenness

Definitions:

The term "drunk" means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A "drunkard" is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an "alcoholic."
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God's Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate "drunk" could include "inebriated" or "intoxicated" or "having too much alcohol" or "filled with fermented drink."

(See also: [wine](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 07:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5433, H5435, H7301, H7686, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G3178, G3182, G3183, G3184, G3630, G3632

Forms Found in the English ULB:

be ... intoxicated, became drunk, become drunk, drank freely, drink much, drunk, drunkard, drunkards, drunkenness, get drunk

earth

Related Ideas:

clay, dust, earthen, earthly, ground, land, soil

Definition:

The term "earth" refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- "Earth" can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth.
- The expressions "let the earth be glad" and "he will judge the earth" are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term "earthly" usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.
- The term "earthen" describes something that is made of clay

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, "earth" could also be translated as "world" or "land" or "dirt" or "soil" or "clay."
- When used figuratively, "earth" could be translated as "people on the earth" or "people living on earth" or "everything on earth."
- Ways to translate "earthly" could include "physical" or "things of this earth" or "visible."

(See also: [spirit](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 06:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 06:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H80, H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2868, G2886, G3625, G5517, G5522

Forms Found in the English ULB:

clay, dust, earth, earth's, earthen, earthly, ground, land, lands, soil

elder

Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
- Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

Forms Found in the English ULB:

elder, elders

elect

Related Ideas:

Chosen One, choice, choose, election

Definition:

The term "the elect" literally means "chosen ones" or "chosen people" and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. "Chosen One" or "Chosen One of God" is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term "choose" means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be "chosen" means to be "selected" or "appointed" to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called "the chosen (ones) or "the elect."
- The term "chosen one" is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God's chosen people.
- The phrase "the elect" is an older term that literally means "the chosen ones" or "the chosen people." This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term "elect" is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for "chosen one(s)." More modern versions use "elect" only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as "chosen ones."

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate "elect" with a word or phrase that means "chosen ones" or "chosen people." This could also be translated as "people whom God chose" or "the ones God appointed to be his people."
- The phrase "who were chosen" could also be translated as "who were appointed" or "who were selected" or "whom God chose."
- "I chose you" could be translated as "I appointed you" or "I selected you."
- In reference to Jesus, "Chosen One" could also be translated as "God's chosen One" or "God's specially appointed Messiah" or "the One God appointed (to save people)."

(See also: [appoint](#), [Christ](#))

Bible References:

- 2 John 01:01
- Colossians 03:12
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:07
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 08:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H972, H977, H1262, H1305, H3045, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G3724, G4400, G4401, G4899, G5500

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Chosen One, choice, choose, chooses, chose, chosen, chosen one, chosen ones, chosen people, elect, election

ephod**Definition:**

An ephod was an apron-like garment worn by the Israelite priests. It had two parts, front and back, that were joined together at the shoulders and tied around the waist with a cloth belt.

- One kind of ephod was made of plain linen and was worn by the ordinary priests.
- The ephod worn by the high priest was specially embroidered with gold, blue, purple, and red yarn.

- The breastpiece of the high priest was attached to the front of the ephod. Behind the breastpiece were stored the Urim and Thummim, which were stones used for asking God what his will was in certain matters.
- The judge Gideon foolishly made an ephod out of gold and it became something that the Israelites worshiped as an idol.

(See also: [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:18-19
- Exodus 28:4-5
- Hosea 03:04
- Judges 08:27
- Leviticus 08:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H641, H642, H646

Forms Found in the English ULB:

ephod

evil

Related Ideas:

deal violently, displeasing, evil actions, evil deeds, evil plans, fraudulent, harm, harmful, violate, violence, violent, wicked, wicked deeds, wickedly, wickedness, wretched, wretchedly

Definition:

The terms "evil" and "wicked" both refer to anything that is opposed to God's holy character and will.

- While "evil" may describe a person's character, "wicked" may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term "wickedness" refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms "evil" and "wicked" can be translated as "bad" or "sinful" or "immoral."
- Other ways to translate these could include "not good" or "not righteous" or "not moral."
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), [demon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12

- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1100, H1431, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2554, H2555, H5765, H2162, H2248, H2254, H3238, H3399, H3415, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5771, H5807, H5999, H6090, H6184, H6293, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, H7701, H8133, G92, G93, G94, G932, G983, G984, G987, G988, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G4550, G5337

Forms Found in the English ULB:

deal violently, deal worse, displeasing, do ... evil, do ... violence, done ... violence, evil, evil actions, evil deeds, evil plans, evils, fraudulent, harm, harmful, violate, violated, violates, violence, violent, wicked, wicked deeds, wickedly, wickedness, wretched, wretchedly, wretches

exalt

Related Ideas:

exaltation, high position, leadership position, lifted up

Definition:

To exalt is to lift up. Often exalt means to praise or honor someone or something. It can also mean to put someone in an honored position of leadership.

- In the Bible, the term "exalt" is most often used for honoring God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he thinks about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "exalt" could include "highly praise" or "honor greatly" or "extol" or "speak highly of."
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means "put in a higher position" or "give more honor to" or "talk about proudly."
- "Do not exalt yourself" could also be translated as "Do not think of yourself too highly" or "Do not brag about yourself."
- "Those that exalt themselves" could also be translated as "Those who think proudly about themselves" or "Those who boast about themselves."

(See also: [praise](#), [worship](#), [glory](#), [boast](#), [proud](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 05:31
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 018:46

Word Data:

- Strong's: H11361, H11362, H11364, H4791, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

Forms Found in the English ULB:

exalt, exaltation, exalted, exalting, exalts, high position, leadership positions, lifted up, lofty

face**Related Ideas:**

before, facedown, facial, presence, surface

Definition:

The word "face" literally refers to the front part of a person's head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression "your face" is often a figurative way of saying "you." Similarly, the expression "my face" often means "I" or "me."
- In a physical sense, to "face" someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To "face each other" means to "look directly at each other."
- Being "face to face" means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus "steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem," it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To "set one's face against" people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression "face of the land" refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a "famine covering the face of the earth" refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression "do not hide your face from your people" means "do not reject your people" or "do not desert your people" or "do not stop taking care of your people."

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to "face" could be translated as to "turn toward" or to "look at directly" or to "look at the face of."
- The expression "face to face" could be translated as "up close" or "right in front of" or "in the presence of."
- Depending on the context, the expression "before his face" could be translated as "ahead of him" or "in front of him" or "before him" or "in his presence."
- The expression "set his face toward" could be translated as "began traveling toward" or "firmly made up his mind to go to."
- The expression "hide his face from" could be translated as "turn away from" or "stop helping or protecting" or "reject."
- To "set his face against" a city or people could be translated as "look at with anger and condemn" or "refuse to accept" or "decide to reject" or "condemn and reject" or "pass judgment on."
- The expression "say it to their face" could be translated as "say it to them directly" or "say it to them in their presence" or "say it to them in person."
- The expression "on the face of the land" could also be translated as "throughout the land" or "over the whole earth" or "living throughout the earth."

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H600, H639, H2122, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

Forms Found in the English ULB:

before, face, faced, facedown, faces, facial, facing, presence, surface

faith

Definition:

In general, the term "faith" refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To "have faith" in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To "have faith in Jesus" means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes "faith" refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression "the truths of the faith."
- In contexts such as "keep the faith" or "abandon the faith," the term "faith" refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, "faith" can be translated as "belief" or "conviction" or "confidence" or "trust."
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb "believe."
- The expression "keep the faith" could be translated by "keep believing in Jesus" or "continue to believe in Jesus."
- The sentence "they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith" could be translated by "they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught."
- The expression "my true son in the faith" could be translated by something like "who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus" or "my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus."

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:07
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G4103

Forms Found in the English ULB:

faith

faithful

Related Ideas:

faithfully, faithfulness, reliable

Definition:

To be "faithful" to God means to consistently live according to God's teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is "faithfulness."

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term "unfaithful" describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is "unfaithfulness."

- The people of Israel were called "unfaithful" when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is "unfaithful" to his or her spouse.
- God used the term "unfaithfulness" to describe Israel's disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

Translating "faithful" and "faithfulness" * In many contexts, "faithful" can be translated as "loyal" or "dedicated" or "dependable." * In other contexts, "faithful" can be translated by a word or phrase that means "continuing to believe" or "persevering in believing and obeying God." * Ways that "faithfulness" could be translated could include "persevering in believing" or "loyalty" or "trustworthiness" or "believing and obeying God."

Translating "unfaithful" and "unfaithfulness" * Depending on the context, "unfaithful" could be translated as "not faithful" or "unbelieving" or "not obedient" or "not loyal." * The phrase "the unfaithful" could be translated as "people who are not faithful (to God)" or "unfaithful people" or "those who disobey God" or "people who rebel against God." * The term "unfaithfulness" could be translated as "disobedience" or "disloyalty" or "not believing or obeying." * In some languages, the term "unfaithful" is related to the word for "unbelief."

(See also: [adultery](#), [believe](#), [disobey](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H2181, H2616, H2623, H4603, H4820, G569, G4102, G4103

Forms Found in the English ULB:

faithful, faithful one, faithful people, faithfully, faithfulness, reliable, show ... self ... faithful

family

Related Ideas:

family line, genealogical record

Definition:

The term "family" refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. It often also includes other relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- The Hebrew family was a religious community passing on traditions through worship and instruction.
- Usually the father was the major authority of the family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as "clan" or "household" that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The term "family" is also used to refer to people who are related spiritually, such as people who are part of God's family because they believe in Jesus.
- A "genealogy" is a record of a person's family that tells who his ancestors were.

(See also: [clan](#), [father](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 01:21
- Joshua 02:12-13
- Luke 02:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H3188, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, H8435, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

Forms Found in the English ULB:

families, family, family line, genealogical record, genealogical records, genealogies, genealogy, recorded in ... genealogies, recorded in ... genealogy

fast**Definition:**

The term to "fast" means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to "fast" can also be translated as to "refrain from eating" or to "not eat."
- The noun "fast" could be translated as "time of not eating" or "time of abstaining from food."

(See also: [Jewish authorities](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:03
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 03:4-5
- Luke 05:34
- Mark 02:19
- Matthew 06:18
- Matthew 09:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G3521, G3522

Forms Found in the English ULB:

fast, fasted, fasting, fastings, fasts

father

Related Ideas:

ancestor, ancestral, beget, fatherless, forefather, grandfather, orphan

Definition:

When used literally, the term "father" refers to a person's male parent. * A "grandfather" is someone's father's father or someone's mother's father. * A "forefather" is one of a person's male ancestors, such as his grandfather's grandfather. * An "ancestral household" is a social unit of those people who are descended from one ancestor. * A person who is "fatherless" does not have a father. * An "orphan" is a person who has no parents. In Bible times widows were often not able to care for their children, so a child with a mother but no father could also be thought of as an orphan. * To "beget" someone is to become that person's father.

There are also several figurative uses of the term "father."

- The term "fathers" often refers to a person's male ancestors, such as his grandfather's grandfather.
- The term "father" can refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 "the father of all who live in tents" could mean, "the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents."
- The apostle Paul called himself the "father" of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- "God the Father" should also be translated using the usual, common word for "father."
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as "ancestors" or "ancestral fathers."
- Sometimes the word "father" can be translated as "clan leader."
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as "spiritual father" or "father in Christ."
- The phrase "father of all lies" could be translated as "source of all lies" or "the one from whom all lies come."

(See also: [God the Father](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09

- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H539, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

Forms Found in the English ULB:

ancestor, ancestor's, ancestors, ancestors', ancestral, beget, begot, father, father's, fathered, fathering, fatherless, fathers, fathers', forefather, forefathers, grandfather, orphan, orphans

favor

Related Ideas:

favorable, favoritism, privilege, request for favor, show favor

Definition:

To "favor" is to prefer. When someone favors a person, he regards that person positively and does more to benefit that person than he does to benefit others.

- The term "favoritism" means the attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.
- Jesus grew up "in favor with" God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression "find favor" with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person's request and grants it.
- A "favor" can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term "favor" could include, "blessing" or "benefit" or "credit."
- The "favorable year of Yahweh" could be translated as "the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing."
- The term "favoritism" could be translated as "partiality" or "being prejudiced" or "unjust treatment." This word is related to the word "favorite," which means "the one who is preferred or loved best."

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:07
- 2 Corinthians 01:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2604, H2617, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7522, H7965, H8467, G1184, G3685, G3982, G4380, G4382, G5485, G5486

Forms Found in the English ULB:

favor, favorable, favored, favoritism, favors, privilege, request for favor, seek ... favor, seeking the favor, show favor, shown favor, sought ... favor

fear**Related Ideas:**

afraid, alarmed, anxiety, coward, dismay, dread, fainthearted, fearful, fearlessly, fearsome, frighten, timid, unafraid

Definition:

The terms "fear" and "afraid" refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term "fear" can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase "fear of Yahweh," as well as related terms "fear of God" and "fear of the Lord," refer to a deep respect of God and the showing of that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.
- "Anxiety" is fear about the future, what is going to happen.
- To be "alarmed" is to be surprised and afraid because something bad has suddenly happened.
- "Dread" is great fear.
- Someone who is "timid" is afraid to act because something bad might happen as a result.
- Someone who is "unafraid" is not afraid.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to "fear" can be translated as to "be afraid" or to "deeply respect" or to "revere" or to "be in awe of."
- The term "afraid" could be translated as "terrified" or "scared" or "fearful."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" could be translated as "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- Note that the phrase "fear of Yahweh" does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase "fear of the Lord" or "fear of the Lord God" is used instead.

(See also: [amazed](#), [awe](#), [lord](#), [power](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H928, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7390, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1568, G1630, G1719, G2125, G5398, G5399, G5401

Forms Found in the English ULB:

afraid, alarmed, anxiety, cowards, dismay, dismayed, dread, dreaded, fainthearted, fear, feared, fearful, fearful thing, fearlessly, fears, fearsome, frighten, frightened, timid, unafraid

feast**Related Ideas:**

dinner

Definition:

The term "feast" refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action to "feast" means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called "feasts."
- In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
- The term to "feast" could also be translated as to "eat lavishly" or to "celebrate by eating lots of food" or to "eat a special, large meal."
- Depending on the context, "feast" could be translated as "celebrating together with a large meal" or "a meal with a lot of food" or "a celebration meal."

(See also: [festival](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G1173, G1859, G2165, G4910

Forms Found in the English ULB:

dinner, feast, feasting, feasts

fig**Definition:**

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.

- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 03:17
- James 03:12
- Luke 13:07
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 07:17
- Matthew 21:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

Forms Found in the English ULB:

fig, figs

fir

Definition:

A fir tree is a kind of tree that stays green all year and has cones that contain seeds.

- Fir trees are also referred to as "evergreen" trees.
- In ancient times, the wood of fir trees was used for making musical instruments and for building structures such as boats, houses, and the temple.
- Some examples of fir trees mentioned in the Bible are pine, cedar, cypress, and juniper.

(See also: [cedar](#), [cypress](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 27:4-5
- Isaiah 37:24-25
- Isaiah 41:19-20
- Isaiah 44:14
- Isaiah 60:12-13
- Psalms 104:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H766, H1265, H1266

Forms Found in the English ULB:

fir, firs

fire

Related Ideas:

blazing, fiery, firebrands, inflame, kindle

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- A fire that is "blazing" is very hot and has large flames.
- A "fire brand" is a piece of burning wood.
- To "set on fire" or "set fire to" something is to make it start burning with fire.
- To "inflamm" something is to make it start burning.
- To "kindle" a fire is to start that fire burning.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.

The word "fire" and ideas related to fire are also used figuratively. * The term "fire" can refer to judgment or purification. * The phrase "baptize with fire" could also be translated as "cause to experience suffering in order to be purified." * Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.

(See also: [pure](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:08
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:06
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:12
- Nehemiah 01:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H1814, H2734, H2740, H3341, H3857, H4168, H5135, H6315, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G2618, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

Forms Found in the English ULB:

blazing, fiery, fire, firebrands, fires, flaming, kindle, kindled, kindles, set fire to, set ... on fire, sets ... on fire

firstborn**Related Ideas:**

first issue

Definition:

The term "firstborn" refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, "firstborn" usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God's firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God's firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.
- The phrase "first issue of the womb" is another way of saying "firstborn."

Translation Suggestions:

- When "firstborn" occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as "firstborn male" or "firstborn son," since that is what is implied.
- Other ways to translate this term could include "the son who was born first" or "the eldest son" or "the number one son."
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the son who has authority over everything" or "the Son who is first in honor."
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](#), [sacrifice](#), [son](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 02:6-7
- Revelation 01:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, H6363, G4416, G5207

Forms Found in the English ULB:

first ... issue, firstborn

flesh**Related Ideas:**

fleshly, human, living creatures, meat, physical

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "flesh" literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term "flesh" in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term "flesh" can be used to talk about something that is associated with being human. For example, to decide something according to the flesh means to decide something according to human standards.
- In the New Testament, the term "flesh" can be used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression "flesh and blood" can also refer to a person's ancestors or descendants.
- The expression "one flesh" refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal's body, "flesh" could be translated as "body" or "skin" or "meat."
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as "living beings" or "everything that is alive."
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as "people" or "human beings" or "everyone who lives."
- The expression "flesh and blood" could also be translated as "relatives" or "family" or "kinfolk" or "family clan." There may be contexts where it could be translated as "ancestors" or "descendants."
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to "flesh and blood."

- The expression "become one flesh" could be translated as "unite sexually" or "become as one body" or "become like one person in body and spirit." The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. . It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who "become one flesh" literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H120, H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4561

Forms Found in the English ULB:

flesh, fleshly, human, humans, living creatures, meat, physical

flock

Related Ideas:

herd

Definition:

In the Bible, "flock" refers to a group of sheep or goats and "herd" refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term "herd" can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term "flock" in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to "flocks and herds" it may be better to add "of sheep" or "of cattle" for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: [goat](#), [cow](#), [pig](#), [sheep](#),)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H504, H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7473, H7716, H7462, H7794, G34, G4167, G4168

Forms Found in the English ULB:

flock, flocking, flocks, herd, herds

flute**Related Ideas:**

pipe, wind instrument

Definition:

In Bible times, pipes were musical instruments made of bone or wood with holes to allow the sound to come out. A flute was a kind of pipe.

- Most pipes had reeds made out of a kind of thick grass that vibrated as air was blown over it.
- A pipe without any reeds was often called a "flute."
- A shepherd played a pipe to calm his flocks of sheep.
- Pipes and flutes were used for playing sad or joyful music.

(See also: [flock](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:07
- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- Daniel 03:3-5
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 09:23
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4953, H5748, H2485, H2490, G832, G834, G836

Forms Found in the English ULB:

flute, flutes, pipe, pipes, wind instruments

fool**Related Ideas:**

folly, foolish, foolishly, foolishness, insane, insanity, out of his mind, senseless, stupid, thoughtless, unwise

Definition:

The term "fool" refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term "foolish" describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term "fool" usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term "folly" refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God's will. Often "folly" also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.
- A person who is "insane" or suffering from "insanity" is unable to know truth from error, right from wrong, or good from evil and often acts without knowing what he is doing.
- Something that is hollow has nothing on its inside.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "fool" could be translated as "foolish person" or "unwise person" or "senseless person" or "ungodly person."
- Ways to translate "foolish" could include "lacking understanding" or "unwise" or "senseless."

(See also: [wise](#))

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:17
- Ephesians 05:15
- Galatians 03:03
- Genesis 31:28
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 25:08
- Proverbs 13:16
- Psalms 049:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H191, H196, H200, H1197, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5014, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8604, G453, G454, G781, G801, G877, G878, G2757, G3150, G3154, G3471, G3472, G3473, G3474, G3912, G3913

Forms Found in the English ULB:

act of disgraceful folly, acted ... foolishly, disgraceful folly, folly, fool, foolish, foolishness, fools, insane, insanity, out of ... mind, senseless, spoken ... foolishly, stupid, thoughtless, unwise

forgive

Related Ideas:

forgiven, forgiveness, pardon

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: [guilt](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Psalms 025:11
- Psalms 025:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:02
- Luke 05:21
- Acts 08:22
- Ephesians 04:31-32
- Colossians 03:12-14
- 1 John 02:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, G859, G863, G2433, G5483

Forms Found in the English ULB:

forgave, forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, forgives, pardon, pardoned

found

Related Ideas:

establish, foundation, founder

Definition:

The verb "found" means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase "founded on" means supported by or based on. A "foundation" is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term "foundation" can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A "foundation stone" was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.
- To "establish" something is for a person to start or make or create something that he wants to endure for a long time.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase "before the foundation of the world" could be translated as "before the creation of the world" or "before the time when the world first existed" or "before everything was first created."
- The term "founded on" could be translated as "securely built on" or "firmly based on."
- Depending on the context, "foundation" could be translated as "strong base" or "solid support" or "beginning" or "creation."

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:37-38

- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H134, H553, H787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H3559, H3772, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H5975, H7760, H8356, G747, G950, G1457, G2310, G2311, G2602

Forms Found in the English ULB:

established, establishes, found, foundation, foundations, founded, founder, founds, lay ... foundation, lay ... foundations

free

Related Ideas:

freedom, freeman, liberty, volunteer, without cost, without paying for it

Definition:

The terms "free" or "freedom" refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for "freedom" is "liberty."

- The expression to "set someone free" or to "free someone" means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having "liberty" or "freedom" can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.
- To "volunteer" is to freely and willingly agree to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "free" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "not bound" or "not enslaved" or "not in slavery" or "not in bondage."
- The term "freedom" or "liberty" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the state of being free" or "the condition of not being a slave" or "not being bound."
- The expression to "set free" could be translated as to "cause to be free" or to "rescue from slavery" or to "release from bondage."
- A person who has been "set free" has been "released" or "taken out of" bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26
- Galatians 05:01
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 06:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6340, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G558, G629, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G3089, G3955, G4506, G5483

Forms Found in the English ULB:

free, freed, freedom, freeing, freely, freely gave, freeman, frees, liberty, set ... free, volunteer, volunteered, without cost, without paying for it

fulfill

Related Ideas:

carry out, fill to the limit, finish, fulfillment, in full, make something full

Definition:

The term "fulfill" means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "fulfill" could be translated as "accomplish" or "complete" or "cause to happen" or "obey" or "perform."
- The phrase "has been fulfilled" could also be translated as "has come true" or "has happened" or "has taken place."
- Ways to translate "fulfill," as in "fulfill your ministry," could include "complete" or "perform" or "practice" or "serve other people as God has called you to do."

(See also: [prophet](#), [Christ](#), [minister](#), [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:21
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1214, H4390, H5487, H7999, G378, G4135, G4137, G4138, G5048, G5055

Forms Found in the English ULB:

carried out, fill up ... to the limit, finishing, fulfill, fulfilled, fulfillment, fulfills, in full, make ... full

gate

Related Ideas:

doorkeeper, entrance, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Definition:

A "gate" is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city.

- A "gate bar" is a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.
- A "gatekeeper" was a person who was responsible to control who could go through the gateway.
- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.

- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "gate" could be "door" or "wall opening" or "barrier" or "entranceway."
- The phrase "bars of the gate" could be translated as "gate bolts" or "wooden beams to lock the gate" or "metal locking rods of the gate."

Bible References:

- Acts 09:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:01
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 07:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4259, G4439, G4440, G2377

Forms Found in the English ULB:

entrance, gate, gate bars, gateposts, gates, gateway, gateways

gift

Related Ideas:

give, gracious gift

Definition:

The term "gift" refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called "gifts."
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term "gifts" is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for "gift" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "something that is given."
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term "gift from the Spirit" could be translated as "spiritual ability" or "special ability from the Holy Spirit" or "special spiritual skill that God gave."

(See also: [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:01
- 2 Samuel 11:08

- Acts 08:20
- Acts 10:04
- Acts 11:17
- Acts 24:17
- James 01:17
- John 04:9-10
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 08:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5379, H7810, H7964, H8641, G331, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5485, G5486

Forms Found in the English ULB:

gift, gifts, give, gracious gift

gird**Definition:**

The term "gird" means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to wrapping a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The phrase "gird up the loins" refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean "get ready to work" or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The phrase "gird the sword" means to tuck the sword into one's belt in order to carry it.

Picture of Girding a sword:**Translation Suggestions**

- The expression "gird up the loins" could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated as "prepare yourself for action" or "get yourself ready."
- The term "girded with" could be translated as "encircled by" or wrapped with" or "belted with."

(See also: [loins](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:13
- Job 38:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H640, H247, H2290, H2296, H5401, H8151, G328, G1241, G2224, G4024

Forms Found in the English ULB:

gird, girded, girding, girds

glory**Related Ideas:**

beautiful, beauty, glorify, glorious, take pride

Definition:

In general, the term "glory" means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be "glorious."

- Sometimes "glory" refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression "glory of the shepherds" refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression to "glory in" means to boast about or take pride in something.

The term "glorify" means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means to "give glory to."

- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
- They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
- When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son's perfection, splendor, and greatness.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "glory" could include "splendor" or "brightness" or "majesty" or "awesome greatness" or "extreme value."
- The term "glorious" could be translated as "full of glory" or "extremely valuable" or "brightly shining" or "awesomely majestic."
- The expression "give glory to God" could be translated as "honor God's greatness" or "praise God because of his splendor" or "tell others how great God is."
- The expression "glory in" could also be translated as "praise" or "take pride in" or "boast about" or "take pleasure in."
- "Glorify" could also be translated as "give glory to" or "bring glory to" or "cause to appear great."
- The phrase "glorify God" could also be translated as "praise God" or "talk about God's greatness" or "show how great God is" or "honor God (by obeying him)."
- The term "be glorified" could also be translated as, "be shown to be very great" or "be praised" or "be exalted."

(See also: [exalt](#), [obey](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28
- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:19
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:05
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16

- Revelation 15:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H1342, H1926, H1927, H1935, H1984, H2896, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H5278, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8231, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2570, G2744, G4888

Forms Found in the English ULB:

beautiful, beauty, glories, glorified, glorifies, glorify, glorifying, glorious, glory, take pride

goat

Related Ideas:

goatskins, kid, scapegoat, young goat

Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a "kid."

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
- Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
- The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
- Sheep usually like to stay with their flocks, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herds.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people's sins.

(See also: [flock](#), [sacrifice](#), [sheep](#), [righteous](#), [wine](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:3-4
- Genesis 30:32
- Genesis 31:10
- Genesis 37:31
- Leviticus 03:12-14
- Matthew 25:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H689, H1423, H1429, H3277, H3629, H5795, H5796, H6260, H6629, H6842, H7716, H8163, H8166, H8495, G122, G2055, G2056, G5131

Forms Found in the English ULB:

goat, goats, goats', goatskins, kid, kids, scapegoat, young goat

god

Related Ideas:

disgusting figure, false god, goat idols, goddess, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term "goddess" refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God's people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as "idolatrous" if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An "idolatrous kingdom" means a "kingdom of people who worship idols" or a "kingdom of people who worship earthly things."
- The term "idolatrous figure" is another word for a "carved image" or an "idol."

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for "god" or "false god" in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term "idol" could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case "g" is used to refer to false gods, and upper case "G" is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), [Asherah](#), [Baal](#), [Molech](#), [demon](#), [image](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:02
- Exodus 32:01
- Psalms 031:06
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 02:22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 01:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1140, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

Forms Found in the English ULB:

disgusting figure, disgusting figures, false god, goat idols, god, goddess, gods, idol, idol's, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry, idols, idols'

gold**Related Ideas:**

golden, goldsmith, purest gold

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term "golden" or "gold-covered" or "gold-overlaid" could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as "gold-colored," which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.
- A "goldsmith" is a person who takes gold and makes it into useful things like jewelry.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [god](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:07
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:15
- Acts 03:06
- Daniel 02:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6337, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

Forms Found in the English ULB:

gold, golden, goldsmith, goldsmiths, purest gold

good**Related Ideas:**

best, better, fair, good things, goodness, improved, prefer, proper, well

Definition:

The word "good" has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is "good" could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is "good" could be called "fertile" or "productive."

- A "good" crop could be a "plentiful" crop.
- A person can be "good" at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, "a good farmer."
- In the Bible, the general meaning of "good" is often contrasted with "evil."
- The term "goodness" usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.
- Actions that are "proper" are those that are good and right for the situation in which they are done.
- "Goods" are good things, valuable possessions.
- To "prefer" something is to think it is better than other things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for "good" in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "kind" or "excellent" or "pleasing to God" or "righteous" or "morally upright" or "profitable."
- "Good land" could be translated as "fertile land" or "productive land"; a "good crop" could be translated as a "plentiful harvest" or "large amount of crops."
- The phrase "do good to" means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as "be kind to" or "help" or "benefit" someone.
- To "do good on the Sabbath" means to "do things that help others on the Sabbath."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term "goodness" could include "blessing" or "kindness" or "moral perfection" or "righteousness" or "purity."

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), [profit](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H155, H410, H1580, H1926, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3787, H3966, H4399, H5232, H6743, H7225, H7368, H7399, H7999, H8231, H8232, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1342, G1380, G1832, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2140, G2163, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2986, G3140, G4147, G4632, G4851, G5224, G5358, G5543, G5544, G5623

Forms Found in the English ULB:

best, better, do ... good, fair, good, good things, goodness, goods, improved, made ... better, prefer, proper, seemed good, well

grace

Related Ideas:

generous, gracious, graciously

Definition:

The word "grace" refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term "gracious" describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God's grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.

- The expression to "find grace" is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that "grace" could be translated include "divine kindness" or "God's favor" or "God's kindness and forgiveness for sinners" or "merciful kindness."
- The term "gracious" could be translated as "full of grace" or "kind" or "merciful" or "mercifully kind."
- The expression "he found grace in the eyes of God" could be translated as "he received mercy from God" or "God mercifully helped him" or "God showed his favor to him" or "God was pleased with him and helped him."

Bible References:

- Acts 04:33
- Acts 06:08
- Acts 14:04
- Colossians 04:06
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:07
- John 01:16
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, G5485, G5543

Forms Found in the English ULB:

act of grace, generous, grace, gracious, graciously, graciously given

grain

Related Ideas:

grainfields, standing grain

Definition:

The term "grain" usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word "corn" to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, "corn" only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 42:03
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 06:02
- Mark 02:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G248, G2590, G2848, G3450, G4621, G4719

Forms Found in the English ULB:

grain, grainfields, grains, standing grain

guilt**Related Ideas:**

guilty, accountable, reason for a penalty

Definition:

The term "guilt" refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To "be guilty" means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of "guilty" is "innocent."

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate "guilt" as "the weight of sin" or "the counting of sins."
- Ways to translate to "be guilty" could include a word or phrase that means, to "be at fault" or "having done something morally wrong" or "having committed a sin."

(See also: [innocent](#), [iniquity](#), [punish](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 06:07
- James 02:10-11
- John 19:04
- Jonah 01:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6140, H816, H817, H818, H819, H2398, H5352, H5355, H5771, H7561, H7563, G338, G1777, G5267

Forms Found in the English ULB:

cause ... to become guilty, find guilty, guilt, guilty, held accountable, reason for ... penalty

guilt offering**Definition:**

A guilt offering was an offering or sacrifice that God required an Israelite to make if he had accidentally did something wrong such as disrespect God or damage another person's property.

- This offering involved the sacrifice of an animal and the payment of a fine, with silver or gold money.
- In addition, the person at fault was responsible to pay for any damage that was done.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#), [sin offering](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 06:03
- 2 Kings 12:16
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Numbers 06:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817

Forms Found in the English ULB:

guilt offering, guilt offerings

hand

Related Ideas:

handbreadth, handful, lay a hand on

Definition:

There are several figurative ways that "hand" is used in the Bible:

- To "hand" something to someone means to put something into that person's hands.
- The term "hand" is often used in reference to God's power and action, such as when God says "Has not my hand made all these things?"
- Expressions such as "hand over to" or "deliver into the hands of" refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Some other figurative uses of "hand" include:
- To "lay a hand on" means to "harm."
- To "save from the hand of" means to stop someone from harming someone else.
- The position of being "on the right hand" means "on the right side" or "to the right."
- The expression "by the hand of" someone means "by" or "through" the action of that person. For example, "by the hand of the Lord" means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term "laying on of hands" refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service or to pray for healing.
- When Paul says "written by my hand," it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression "handed him the scroll" could also be translated as "gave him the scroll" or "put the scroll in his hand." It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When "hand" refers to the person, such as in "the hand of God did this," it could be translated as "God did this."
- An expression such as "delivered them into the hands of their enemies" or "handed them over to their enemies," could be translated as, "allowed their enemies to conquer them" or "caused them to be captured by their enemies" or "empowered their enemies to gain control over them."
- To "die by the hand of" could be translated as "be killed by."
- The expression "on the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of."

hang

- In regard to Jesus being "seated at the right hand of God," if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: "on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority."

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), [captive](#), [honor](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: G710, G1188, G2176, G2902, G4084, G5495, G5496, G5497, H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8042, H8168

Forms Found in the English ULB:

by the hand of, fist, from the hand of, hand, handbreadth, handed, handful, handfuls, handing, hands, lay a hand on, lays his hand on

hang

Definition:

The term "hang" means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

- Death by hanging typically is done by tying a rope that is tied around a person's neck and sustaining him from an elevated object, like a tree limb. Judas killed himself by hanging.
- Although Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross, there was nothing around his neck: the soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
- To hang someone always refers to the way of killing someone by hanging them with a rope around their neck.

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 17:23
- Acts 10:39
- Galatians 03:13
- Genesis 40:22
- Matthew 27:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2614, H3363, H8518, G519

Forms Found in the English ULB:

hang, hanged, hanging, hangings, hangs, hung

hard

Related Ideas:

hardly, hardness, hardship

Definition:

The term "hard" has several different meanings, depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- An object that is "hard" is solid and firm. It is not easily broken, bent, dented, or pierced.
- Work that is "hard" is difficult to do.
- When a person works "hard", he does that work diligently and with a lot of effort to do it well.
- A person who "hardly" does something either does not do it completely or does it rarely.
- A person who goes through "hardship" is suffering or does not have what he needs.

The term "hard" can be used figuratively * A person who has a "hard heart" is stubborn. He continues to disobey God and will not repent. * A person whose heart is hardened has become stubbornly disobedient.

Translation Suggestions

- The terms "hardness" or "hardness of heart" or "hard heart" could be translated as "stubbornness" or "persistent rebellion" or "rebellious attitude" or "stubborn disobedience" or "stubbornly not repenting."
- The term "hardened" could also be translated as "stubbornly unrepentant" or "refusing to obey."
- "Do not harden your heart" could be translated as "do not refuse to repent" or "do not stubbornly keep disobeying."
- Other ways to translate "hard-hearted" could include "stubbornly disobedient" or "continuing to disobey" or "refusing to repent" or "always rebelling."
- In expressions such as "work hard" or "try hard," the term "hard" could be translated as "with perseverance" or "diligently."
- The expression "press hard against" could also be translated as "shove with force" or "push strongly against."
- To "oppress people with hard labor" could be translated as "force people to work so hard that they suffer" or "cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work."
- A different kind of "hard labor" is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [heart](#), [labor pains](#), [stiff-necked](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:23
- Deuteronomy 15:07
- Exodus 14:04
- Hebrews 04:07
- John 12:40
- Matthew 19:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4164, H4165, H4522, H4751, H4784, H4843, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H7185, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8513, H8631, G917, G1421, G1422, G1423, G2205, G2478, G2553, G2872, G2873, G3425, G3433, G4053, G4183, G4456, G4457, G4641, G4642, G4643, G4645, G4912

Forms Found in the English ULB:

hard, harden, hardened, hardening, hardens, harder, hardest, hardly, hardness, hardship, hardships

harp**Related Ideas:**

harpist, lyre

Definition:

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, that usually consists of a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Players of harps and lyres would hold them in the hands and play them by strumming or plucking while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul, to soothe the king's troubled spirit.
- A lyre looks like a small harp, having strings strung across an open frame.

(See also: [David](#), [fir](#), [psalm](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Picture of a Harp:**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 15:16-18
- Amos 05:23-24
- Daniel 03:05
- Psalm 033:1-3
- Revelation 05:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H7030, G2788, G2789, G2790

Forms Found in the English ULB:

harp, harpist, harpists, harps, lyre, lyres

harvest**Related Ideas:**

harvester

Definition:

The term "harvest" refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a "Festival of Harvest" or "Festival of Ingathering" to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In a figurative sense, the word "harvest" can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person's spiritual growth.
- The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, "time of gathering in" or "crop gathering time" or "fruit picking time."
- The verb to "harvest" could be translated as, to "gather in" or to "pick up" or to "collect."

(See also: [firstfruit](#), [festival](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 05:7-8
- Leviticus 19:09
- Matthew 09:38
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H7105, H7114, G270, G1081, G2326, G4863

Forms Found in the English ULB:

harvest, harvested, harvester, harvesters, harvesting, harvests

head**Definition:**

In the Bible, the word "head" is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to a ruler or to someone who has authority over people, as in "you have made me the head over nations."
- Jesus is called the "head of the church." Just as a person's head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his "body," the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the "head" or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The term "head" can also represent the whole person, as in "this gray head," referring to an elderly person, or as in "the head of Joseph," which refers to Joseph.
- The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means "he will never cut or shave his hair."
- The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top parts of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, as in the "head of the street."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "ruler" or "the one who leads and directs" or "the one who is responsible for."
- The expression "head of" can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person's name. For example, "the head of Joseph" could simply be translated as "Joseph."
- The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "beginning" or "source" or "ruler" or "leader" or "top."

(See also: [grain](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H441, H1538, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

Forms Found in the English ULB:

head, heads

heal

Related Ideas:

cure, healer, health, healthy, make fresh, make well, recover, unhealthy

Definition:

The terms "heal" and "cure" both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is "healed" or "cured" has been "made well" or "made healthy."
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.
- A person who is "healthy" has no disease. It may be that he has been healed or that he has simply not been ill for a long time.
- Health can be a metaphor for anything that is good or trustworthy. "Healthy teaching" is teaching that people can depend on to be true and helpful and morally good.

(See also: [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 05:16
- Acts 08:06
- Luke 05:13
- Luke 06:19
- Luke 08:43
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 09:35
- Matthew 13:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2492, H2896, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H622, G1295, G1743, G2322, G2323, G2386, G2390, G2392, G3647, G4982, G5198, G5199

Forms Found in the English ULB:

cure, cured, heal, healed, healer, healers, healing, healings, heals, health, healthy, made ... fresh, made ... well, make ... fresh, recovered, unhealthy

heart

Related Ideas:

kidneys

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.
- The kidneys are also used as a synecdoche for the physical inner organs and as a metonym for a person's innermost thoughts and emotions.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires" or "inner self".
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: [hard](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H7307, H7356, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

Forms Found in the English ULB:

heart, hearts, kidneys

heaven

Related Ideas:

heavenly, in midair, overhead, sky

Definition:

The term that is translated as "heaven" usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean "sky," depending on the context.

- The term "heavens" refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can't directly see from the earth.
- The term "sky" refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be "up in the sky."
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word "heaven" could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When "heaven" is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the "kingdom of heaven" he is referring to the kingdom of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When "heaven" is used figuratively, it could be translated as "God."
- For "kingdom of heaven" in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word "heaven" since this is distinctive to Matthew's gospel.
- The terms "heavens" or "heavenly bodies" could also be translated as, "sun, moon, and stars" or "all the stars in the universe."
- The phrase, "stars of heaven" could be translated as "stars in the sky" or "stars in the galaxy" or "stars in the universe."

(See also: [kingdom of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

Forms Found in the English ULB:

heaven, heavenly, heavens, in midair, overhead, skies, sky

heir

Definition:

An "heir" is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses "heir" in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
- As God's children, Christians are said to be "joint heirs" with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as "co-heirs" or "fellow heirs" or "heirs together with."
- The term "heir" could be translated as "person receiving benefits" or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: [firstborn](#), [inherit](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:1-2
- Galatians 04:07
- Genesis 15:01
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 20:14
- Mark 12:07
- Matthew 21:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1121, H3423, G2816, G2818, G2820, G4789

Forms Found in the English ULB:

heir, heirs

high place

Related Ideas:

Definition:

The term "high places" refers to the altars and shrines that were used for worshiping idols. They were usually built on higher ground, such as on a hill or mountainside.

- Many of the kings of Israel sinned against God by building altars to false gods on these high places. This led the people to become deeply involved in worshiping idols.
- It often happened that when a God-fearing king started ruling in Israel or Judah, often he would remove the high places or altars in order to stop the worship of these idols.
- However, some of these good kings were careless and did not remove the high places, which resulted in the entire nation of Israel would continue to worship idols.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include "elevated places for idol worship" or "hilltop idol shrines" or "idol altar mounds."
- Make sure it is clear that this term refers to the idol altars, not just to the high place where those altars were located.

(See also: [altar](#), [god](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 09:12-13
- 2 Kings 16:04
- Amos 04:13
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- Ezekiel 06:1-3
- Habakkuk 03:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1116, H1181, H1354, H4791, H7311, H7413

Forms Found in the English ULB:

high place, high places

holy**Related Ideas:**

holiness, sacred, unholy

Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.
- Believers in Jesus are holy people, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.
- When people of any religion, true or false, consider something "sacred," they consider it holy according to their religion.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was often used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."
- "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
- The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.
- The phrase "sacred gifts" refers to things that someone has set apart for God and then given to God at the temple.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."
- To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."
- Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."
- In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [consecrate](#), [sanctify](#), [set apart](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38
- Acts 07:33
- Acts 11:08
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:22
- 1 Thessalonians 03:13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:15
- 1 Timothy 05:10
- 2 Corinthians 09:12-15
- Revelation 16:06
- Revelation 20:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G2150, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

Forms Found in the English ULB:

holier, holiest, holiness, holy, holy duties, honored as holy, makes ... holy, sacred, sacred gifts, sacred places, unholy

honey**Related Ideas:**

honeycomb

Definition:

"Honey" is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.

- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey."
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [Jonathan](#), [Philistines](#), [Samson](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 06:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 05:06
- Proverbs 05:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G3192

Forms Found in the English ULB:

honey, honeycomb

honor

Related Ideas:

dignified, esteem, held in honor, highly regarded, honorable, of high standing, places of honor, recognition

Definition:

The terms "honor" and to "honor" refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms "honor" and "glory" are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.
- To "esteem" someone is to consider him worthy of great honor.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "honor" could include "respect" or "esteem" or "high regard."
- The term to "honor" could be translated as to "show special respect to" or to "cause to be praised" or to "show high regard for" or to "highly value."

(See also: [dishonor](#), [glory](#), [glory](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 04:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 06:04
- Matthew 15:06

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5082, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1741, G1784, G2151, G2233, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

Forms Found in the English ULB:

dignified, esteem, held in honor, highly regarded, honor, honorable, honored, honoring, honors, of high standing, places of honor, recognition

horn

Related Ideas:

ram's horn

Definitions:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

- The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a "ram's horn" or "shofar," which was blown for special events such as religious festivals.
- The term "horn" was sometimes used to refer to a "flask" that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.
- This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet.
- The term "horn" is also used figuratively as a symbol of strength, power, authority, and royalty.
- God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called "horns," they were not actually animal horns.

(See also: [authority](#), [cow](#), [deer](#), [goat](#), [power royal](#), [sheep](#), [trumpet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 01:39
- 2 Samuel 22:03
- Jeremiah 17:01
- Psalms 022:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3104, H7160, H7161, H7162, H7782, G2768

Forms Found in the English ULB:

horn, horned, horns, ram's horn, rams' horns

horse

Related Ideas:

horseback, warhorse

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , [donkey](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:04
- 2 Kings 02:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 06:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

Forms Found in the English ULB:

horse, horseback, horses, horses', strong horses, warhorse, warhorses

house**Related Ideas:**

home, residence

Definition:

The term "house" is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often "house" refers to a person's descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, "God's house" is used as a metaphor to refer to God's people or, more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- A "residence" is any place in which people live without plans to move to another place.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells."
- "House of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [house of God](#), [household](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, H4585, H5116, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

Forms Found in the English ULB:

home, homes, house, house's, houses, residence

house of David**Facts:**

The expression "house of David" refers to the family or descendants of King David.

- This could also be translated as "descendants of David" or "family of David" or "King David's clan."
- Because Jesus was descended from David, he was part of the "house of David."
- Sometimes "house of David" or "household of David" refers to the people in David's family who were still living.
- Other times this term is more general and refers to all his descendants, including those who had already died.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [house](#), [Jesus](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 10:19
- 2 Samuel 03:06
- Luke 01:69-71
- Psalms 122:05
- Zechariah 12:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1732, G1138, G3624

Forms Found in the English ULB:

house of David

household**Related Ideas:**

household members

Definition:

The term "household" refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involve directing the servants and also taking care of the property.

- Sometimes "household" can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:10
- Galatians 06:10
- Genesis 07:01
- Genesis 34:19
- John 04:53
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 10:36
- Philippians 04:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H5657, G2322, G3609, G3614, G3615, G3616, G3623, G3624, G3626

Forms Found in the English ULB:

household, household members, households, members of household

humble

Related Ideas:

humbly, humility, lowliness of mind

Definition:

The term "humble" describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one's weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one's own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one's gifts and abilities.
- The phrase "be humble" could be translated as "don't be prideful."
- "Humble yourself before God" could be translated as "Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness."

(See also: [proud](#))

Bible References:

- James 01:21
- James 03:13
- James 04:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:04
- Matthew 23:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

Forms Found in the English ULB:

humble, humbled, humbles, humbling, humbly, humility, lowliness of mind

incense

Related Ideas:

censer, sweet aroma

Definition:

The term "incense" refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that is burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made by mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The "altar of incense" was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate "incense" could include "fragrant spices" or "good-smelling plants."
- A "censer" is a pan or small pot that holds burning incense.

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [burnt offering](#), [frankincense](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 03:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
- 2 Kings 14:04
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 01:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3828, H4196, H5208, H6988, H6999, H7002, H7004, H7381, G2368, G2369, G2370, G2379, G3031

Forms Found in the English ULB:

censers, incense, incenses, sweet aroma

inherit

Related Ideas:

heritage, inheritance, legacy

Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The "inheritance" is what is received.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God's people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to "inherit the land." This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will "inherit salvation" and "inherit eternal life." It is also expressed as, "inherit the kingdom of God." This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
- The Bible says that wise people will "inherit glory" and righteous people will "inherit good things."
- To "inherit the promises" means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
- This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who "inherit the wind" or "inherit folly." This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- When God's people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as "valued ones belonging to him."
- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions" or "person chosen to receive (God's) spiritual possessions or blessings."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "blessings from God" or "inherited blessings."

(See also: [heir](#), [Canaan](#), [Promised Land](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- 1 Peter 01:04
- 2 Samuel 21:03
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 05:21
- Genesis 15:07
- Hebrews 09:15
- Jeremiah 02:07
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 079:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819

Forms Found in the English ULB:

heritage, inherit, inheritance, inheritances, inherited, legacy

iniquity

Definition:

The term "iniquity" is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term "sin," but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word "iniquity" literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include "perversity" and "depravity," which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "iniquity" could be translated as "wickedness" or "perverse actions" or "harmful acts."
- Often, "iniquity" occurs in the same text as the word "sin" and "transgression" so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [transgress](#), [trespass](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 03:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5999, H7451, H7562

Forms Found in the English ULB:

commits iniquity, guilt of ... iniquity, iniquities, iniquity

innocent

Related Ideas:

guiltless, innocence

Definition:

The term "innocent" means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term "innocent" is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking "innocent people."

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term "innocent" can be translated as "not guilty" or "not responsible" or "not to blame" for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as "who have done nothing wrong" or "who are not involved in evil."
- The frequently occurring expression "innocent blood" could be translated as "people who did nothing wrong to deserve being killed."

- The expression "shed innocent blood" could be translated as "kill innocent people" or "kill people who did nothing wrong to deserve it."
- In the context of someone being killed, "innocent of the blood of" could be translated as "not guilty for the death of."
- When talking about people not hearing the good news about Jesus but not accepting it, "innocent of the blood of" could be translated as "not responsible for whether they remain spiritually dead or not" or "not responsible for whether they accept this message."
- When Judas said "I have betrayed innocent blood," he was saying "I have betrayed a man who did nothing wrong" or "I have caused the death of a man who was sinless."
- When Pilate said about Jesus "I am innocent of the blood of this innocent man," this could be translated as "I am not responsible for the killing of this man who has done nothing wrong to deserve it."

(See also: [guilt](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:04
- 1 Samuel 19:05
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:07
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 09:23
- Romans 16:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6662, H6663, H8535, G53, G121, G172, G185, G338, G1342, G2513

Forms Found in the English ULB:

declared innocent, guiltless, innocence, innocent

joy

Related Ideas:

enjoy, enjoyment, glad, gladness, greet, joyful, joyfulness, jubilant, merry-hearted, rejoice, source of gladness

Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.
- To "salute" is to greet a high-ranking government or military official.
- "Jubilant" is another word for "joyful."

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy."

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7
- James 01:02
- 3 John 01:1-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1288, H1523, H1524, H1525, H2287, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2896, H2898, H3190, H4885, H5727, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H7965, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G782, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

Forms Found in the English ULB:

be glad, be merry, enjoy, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, enjoys, glad, gladness, greet, greeted, greeting, greetings, greets, joy, joyful, joyful shouting, joyfully, joyfulness, jubilant, make ... glad, makes ... glad, merry-hearted, rejoice, rejoiced, rejoiced greatly, rejoices, rejoices greatly, rejoicing, shout for joy, shout joyfully, shout of joy, shouts of joy, source of gladness, was merry

judge**Related Ideas:**

act of judging, consider, decide, decision, give justice, give judgment, judgment, judgment seat

Definition:

The terms "judge" and "judgment" often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The "judgment of God" often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God's judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term "judge" can also mean "condemn." God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is "arbitrate between" or "judge between," as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.

- In some contexts, God's "judgments" are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- "Judgment" can refer to the ability to make decisions. A person with "sound judgment" is wise, able to make good decisions, while a person who lacks "judgment" does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.
- The "judgment seat" is a place where a judge sits while he listens to testimonies and gives his decision.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to "judge" could include to "decide" or to "condemn" or to "punish" or to "decree."
- The term "judgment" could be translated as "punishment" or "decision" or "opinion" or "verdict" or "decree" or "condemnation."
- In some contexts, the phrase "in the judgment" could also be translated as "on judgment day" or "during the time when God judges people."

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), [judgment day](#), [justice](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H2664, H2713, H2742, H2803, H2940, H3198, H4406, H4941, H6414, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H7081, H7378, H7379, H7663, H7760, H8196, H8199, H8201, G350, G968, G1097, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1380, G1492, G2233, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4997, G5272

Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts of judgment, consider, considered, considering, decide, decided, decided on, decision, give justice, giving judgment, have decided, insightful decisions, judge, judged, judges, judging, judgment, judgment seat, judgments, renders judgment, will judge

judge

Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called "judges" to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term "judge" could also be called "decision-maker" or "leader" or "deliverer" or "governor," depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](#), [judge](#), [law of Moses](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:08

- Acts 07:27
- Luke 11:19
- Luke 12:14
- Luke 18:1-2
- Matthew 05:25
- Ruth 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H6414, H6416, H6419, H8199, G350, G1252, G1348, G2919, G2922, G2923

Forms Found in the English ULB:

judge, judges, the judge, the judges, their judges, you judges

justice

Related Ideas:

honest, injustice, just, justification, justify, maintain someone's rights, vindicate, vindication

Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."
- To "vindicate" someone whom others have accused of wrongdoing is to show that he has actually done what is right.

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."
- Depending on the context, "unjust" could also be translated as "unfair" or "partial" or "unrighteous."

- The phrase "the unjust" could be translated as "the unjust ones" or "unjust people" or "people who treat others unfairly" or "unrighteous people" or "people who disobey God."
- The term "unjustly" could be translated as, "in an unfair manner" or "wrongly" or "unfairly."
- Ways to translate "injustice" could include, "wrong treatment" or "unfair treatment" or "acting unfairly."
- Other ways to translate "justify" could include "declare (someone) to be righteous" or "cause (someone) to be righteous."
- The term "justification" could be translated as "being declared righteous" or "becoming righteous" or "causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "resulting in justification" could be translated as "so that God justified many people" or "which resulted in God causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "for our justification" could be translated as "in order that we could be made righteous by God."

(See also: [forgive](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:03
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 03:8
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:03
- Luke 18:08
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:04
- Romans 04:1-3
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Galatians 03:11
- Galatians 05:3-4
- Titus 03:6-7
- Hebrews 06:10
- James 02:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3476, H3477, H4941, H5766, H5767, H6415, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8199, H8636, G91, G93, G94, G95, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1556, G1557, G1738, G2118, G2920

Forms Found in the English ULB:

desire for justice, dishonest, honest, injustice, injustices, just, justice, justification, justified, justifies, justify, justly, maintain ... rights, unjust, unjustly, vindicate, vindicated, vindication

kin

Related Ideas:

kindred, kinfolk, kinsman, relative

Definition:

The term "kin" refers to a person's blood relatives, considered as a group. The word "kinsman" refers specifically to a male relative.

- "Kin" can only refer to a person's close relatives, such as parents and siblings, or it can also include more distant relatives, such as an aunts, uncles, or cousins.
- In ancient Israel, if a man died, his nearest male relative was expected to marry his widow, manage his property, and help carry on his family name. This relative was called a "kinsman-redeemer."
- This term "kin" could also be translated as, "relative" or "family member."

Bible References:

- Romans 16:9-11
- Ruth 02:20
- Ruth 03:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H1350, H1353, H1730, H4129, H4130, H4138, H4940, H7138, H7607, G1085, G4773

Forms Found in the English ULB:

kin, kindred, kinfolk, kinsfolk, kinsman, kinsmen, relative, relatives

kind**Definition:**

The terms "kind" and "kinds" refer to groups or classifications of things that are connected by shared characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each "kind." For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same "kind," but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each "kind" as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same "kind." Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

Picture showing Kinds:**Translation Suggestions**

- Ways to translate this term could include "type" or "class" or "group" or "animal (plant) group" or "category."

Bible References:

- Genesis 01:21
- Genesis 01:24
- Mark 09:29
- Matthew 13:47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2178, H4327, G1085

Forms Found in the English ULB:

kind, kinds

king

Related Ideas:

kingly, kingship

Definition:

The term "king" refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term "king" was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as "King Herod" in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The "kingdom of God" refers to God's rule over his people.
- Jesus was called "king of the Jews," "king of Israel," and "king of kings."
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as "supreme chief" or "absolute leader" or "sovereign ruler."
- The phrase "king of kings" could be translated as "king who rules over all other kings" or "supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers."

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936, G937

Forms Found in the English ULB:

king, king's, kingly, kings, kingship, made ... king, set up ... king, set up kings

kingdom

Related Ideas:

power to rule

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
- In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
- One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
- The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

Forms Found in the English ULB:

kingdom, kingdoms, power to rule, kingship

kingdom of Israel**Related Words:**

House of Israel

Facts:

What had been the northern part of the nation of Israel became the kingdom of Israel when the twelve tribes of Israel were divided into two kingdoms after Solomon died.

- The kingdom of Israel in the north had ten tribes, and the kingdom of Judah in the south had two tribes.

- The capital city of the kingdom of Israel was Samaria. It was about 50 km from Jerusalem, the capital city of the kingdom of Judah.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.
- All the kings of the kingdom of Israel were evil. They influenced the people to serve idols and false gods.
- God sent the Assyrians to attack the kingdom of Israel. Many Israelites were captured and taken away to live in Assyria.
- The Assyrians brought foreigners to live among the remaining people of the kingdom of Israel. These foreigners intermarried with the Israelites, and their descendants became the Samaritan people.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Jerusalem](#), [kingdom](#), [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 35:18
- Jeremiah 05:11
- Jeremiah 09:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H3478, H4410, H4467, H4468

Forms Found in the English ULB:

kingdom of Israel, house of Israel

kiss

Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression to "kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:25-28
- Genesis 27:26-27
- Genesis 29:11
- Genesis 31:28
- Genesis 45:15
- Genesis 48:10
- Luke 22:48
- Mark 14:45
- Matthew 26:48

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5390, H5401, G2705, G5368, G5370

Forms Found in the English ULB:

kiss, kissed, kisses, kissing

know

Related Ideas:

knowledge, make known, unknowingly, unknown

Definition:

To "know" means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression "make known" is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."
- If a person does something "unknowingly," he does it without knowing that he is doing it.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.
- To "train for" an activity is to learn now to do it well. To train for war is to learn by practice how to be a good fighter.

(See also: [law of Moses](#), [reveal](#), [understand](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H502, H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H2713, H2372, H3045, H3046, H3925, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1834, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G5319, G2589, G2657, G4267, G4894, G5318

Forms Found in the English ULB:

knew, know, know ... beforehand, knowing, knowledge, known, knows, made ... known, made known, make ... known, makes known, unknowingly, unknown

labor

Related Ideas:

fellow laborers, forced labor, hard labor, hard-working, laborer, occupation, strive, struggle, toil

Definition:

The term "labor" refers to doing physical work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word "labor" is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate "labor" could include "work" or "hard work" or "difficult work" or to "work hard."
- "Toil" is hard, unpleasant work, and to "toil" is to do hard, unpleasant work.
- An "occupation" is the work or labor that a person does to obtain food, clothing, shelter, and the other things he needs to live.
- Sometimes "strive" and "struggle" mean to work very hard to do something.

(See also: [hard](#), [labor pains](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:09
- 1 Thessalonians 03:05
- Galatians 04:10-11
- James 05:04
- John 04:38
- Luke 10:02
- Matthew 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H8104, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2716, G2872, G2873, G3449, G4866, G4904

Forms Found in the English ULB:

fellow laborers, forced labor, hard labor, hard-working, labor, labored, laborer, laborer's, laborers, laboring, labors, occupation, product of ... labor, products of ... labor, strive, strives, striving together, struggle, toil, toiled, toiling, toils

labor pains

Related Ideas:

birth pains, in labor, suffering the pains of childbirth

Definition:

A woman who is "in labor" is experiencing the pains that lead up to the birth of her child. These are called "labor pains" or "birth pains."

- In his letter to the Galatians, the apostle Paul used this term figuratively to describe his own intense striving to help his fellow believers become more and more like Christ.
- The analogy of labor pains is also used in the Bible to describe how disasters in the last days will happen with increasing frequency and intensity.

(See also: [labor](#), [last day](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:19-20
- Galatians 04:19
- Isaiah 13:08
- Jeremiah 13:21
- Psalms 048:06
- Romans 08:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2342, H3018, H3205, H5999, H6001, H6887, G3449, G4944, G5604, G5605

Forms Found in the English ULB:

birth pains, in labor, labor pains, labors in pain together, pains of childbirth

lamb**Related Ideas:**

Lamb of God

Definition:

The term "lamb" refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" because he was sacrificed to pay for people's sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" who was sacrificed to pay for people's sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms "lamb" and "Lamb of God."
- "Lamb of God" could be translated as "God's (sacrificial) Lamb," or "Lamb sacrificed to God" or "(sacrificial) Lamb from God."
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as "a young sheep" with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See also: [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:03
- Ezra 08:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 01:29
- John 01:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:03
- Revelation 15:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H6251, H7716, G721, G2316

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lamb, Lamb of God, lamb, lambs

lament

Related Ideas:

dirge, lamentation

Definition:

The terms "lament" and "lamentation" refer to a strong expression of mourning, sorrow, or grief.

- Sometimes this includes deep regret for sin, or compassion for people who have experienced disaster.
- A lamentation could include moaning, weeping, or wailing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "lament" could be translated as to "deeply mourn" or to "wail in grief" or to "be sorrowful."
- A "lamentation" (or a "lament") could be translated as "loud wailing and weeping" or "deep sorrow" or "sorrowful sobbing" or "mournful moaning."
- A "dirge" is a song that people sing at a funeral because they are sad that someone they love has died.

Bible References:

- Amos 08:9-10
- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Jeremiah 22:18
- Job 27:15-17
- Lamentations 02:05
- Lamentations 02:08
- Micah 02:04
- Psalm 102:1-2
- Zechariah 11:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H56, H578, H592, H1058, H2201, H5091, H5092, H5594, H6969, H7015, G2354, G2870, G2875

Forms Found in the English ULB:

dirge, lament, lamentation, lamentations, lamented, lamenting, laments, sing dirges

lamp

Related Ideas:

torch

Definition:

The term "lamp" generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

- An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.
- A torch is a light that is meant to be carried around outside. It might be a long piece of wood that burns at the top. It might also be a pole with an oil lamp or a cloth soaked in oil at the top.

(See also: [lampstand](#), [life](#), [light](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:36
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 08:16-18
- Matthew 05:15
- Matthew 06:22
- Matthew 25:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G2985, G3088

Forms Found in the English ULB:

lamp, lamps, torch, torches

law**Related Ideas:**

lawbreaker, lawgiver, lawyer, principle

Definition:

A "law" is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A "principle" is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

- Often the term "law" refers to the "law of Moses." This is the commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- God is the lawgiver, the one who made the laws and commanded people to obey them.
- A "lawyer" is a person who studies the law and understands it well.
- Both "law" and "principle" can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person's behavior.
- A person who "is principled" is a person who does what is good.

(See also: [law of Moses](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:02
- Esther 03:8-9
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:05
- John 18:31
- Romans 07:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H5715, H7560, H7771, H8451, G1785, G3544, G3548, G3551, G3848, G4747

Forms Found in the English ULB:

law, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawgiver, laws, lawyer, principle, principled, principles

life

Related Ideas:

alive, come to life, conduct, exist, fresh, life-giving, lifetime, live, revive, survive, survivor

Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by "physical life" and "spiritual life."

1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam's body, and he became a living being.
- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."
- To "revive" is for someone who is dead or almost dead to live again, or to take something or someone who is dead or almost dead and make him live again.
- A person who "survives" has almost died for some reason but is still alive.
- The same Hebrew words can be translated "fresh" water or "living" water.
- Things that are "lifeless" either have never been alive or were once alive but are now dead.
- The way a person "conducts" himself or his life is the way he lives his life, most importantly the morally good or bad things he does.

2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called "eternal life" to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- Depending on the context, the term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives" could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally." The word "life-giving" can be translated as "something that causes to live" or "something that gives life."

(See also: [death](#), [eternity](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2416, H2417, H2418, H2421, H2425, H2465, H2673, H3351, H3824, H3885, H4241, H5315, H5397, H5564, H6106, H7611, H8141, H8300, G326, G386, G390, G895, G979, G980, G981, G982, G1127, G1236, G1514, G2198, G2222, G2225, G2227, G2450, G3118, G4176, G4684, G4748, G4763, G4800, G4806, G5171, G5225, G5590

Forms Found in the English ULB:

alive, come to life, conduct, conducted, existed, fresh, keep ... alive, life, life-giving, lifeless, lifetime, live, lived, lives, living, revive, revived, survive, survived, survivor, survivors

light

Related Ideas:

bright, brightness, enlighten, shine

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term "light" in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth.

- Jesus said, "I am the light of the world" to express that he brings God's true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to "walk in the light," which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that "God is light" and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was "the light of the world" and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- "Walking in the light" represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms "light" and "darkness" even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, "walk as children of light" could be translated as, "live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight."
- Make sure that the translation of "light" does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [righteous](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 John 02:08
- 2 Corinthians 04:06

- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 02:05
- John 01:05
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 06:23
- Nehemiah 09:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, G681, G796, G1391, G1645, G2985, G2986, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

Forms Found in the English ULB:

bright, brightness, enlighten, enlightened, light, lighting, lights, shining

like

Related Ideas:

according to, alike, as, as if, compare, in the same way, just as, liken, likeness, likewise, resemble, similar, similarly, unlike

Definition:

The terms "like" and "likeness" refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- To "compare" two things is to look at how they are the same or how they are different.
- The word "like" is also often used in a figurative expressions called a "simile" in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, "his clothes shined like the sun" and "the voice boomed like thunder."
- To "be like" or "sound like" or "look like" something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God's "likeness," that is, in his "image." It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are "like" or "similar to" qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have "the likeness of" something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.
- The word "likewise" means "in the same way," referring to something that the speaker has just said.
- The word "unlike" means "not like."

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression "the likeness of" could be translated as "what looked like" or "what appeared to be."
- The expression "in the likeness of his death" could be translated as "sharing in the experience of his death" or "as if experiencing his death with him."
- The expression "in the likeness of sinful flesh" could be translated as "being like a sinful human being" or to "be a human being." Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- "In his own likeness" could also be translated as to "be like him" or "having many of the same qualities that he has."
- The expression "the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things" could be translated as "idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things."

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [perish](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 01:05

- Mark 08:24
- Matthew 17:02
- Matthew 18:03
- Psalms 073:05
- Revelation 01:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1819, H1823, H3644, H4915, H7737, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4793, G4833, G5108, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

Forms Found in the English ULB:

according to, alike, as, as if, be ... like, become ... like, compare, in the same way, is ... like, just as, like, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, resemble, resembled, similar to, similarly, the same, the same way, unlike

lion

Related Ideas:

lioness

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.
- A "lioness" is a female lion.

(See also: [David](#), [leopard](#), [Samson](#), [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 07:29
- Proverbs 19:12
- Psalms 017:12
- Revelation 05:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H738, H739, H744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G3023

Forms Found in the English ULB:

lion, lion's, lioness, lionesses, lions, lions'

livestock

Definitions:

The term "livestock" refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

- Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
- In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
- Livestock are used to produce items such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
- This term could also be translated as "farm animals."

(See also: [cow](#), [donkey](#), [goat](#), [horse](#), [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 03:15-17
- Genesis 30:29
- Joshua 01:14-15
- Nehemiah 09:36-37
- Numbers 03:41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H929, H1165, H4399, H4735

Forms Found in the English ULB:

livestock

lots

Related Ideas:

allotted, allotted portion, cast lots, chosen by lot, divide up by lot

Definition:

A "lot" is a marked object that is chosen from among other similar objects as a way of deciding something. "Casting lots" referred to tossing marked objects onto the ground or other surface.

- Often the lots were small marked stones or pieces of broken pottery.
- Some cultures "draw" or "pull out" lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- The practice of casting lots was used by the Israelites to find out what God wanted them to do.
- As in the time of Zechariah and Elizabeth, it was also used to choose which priest would perform a specific duty in the temple at a specific time.
- The soldiers who crucified Jesus cast lots to decide who would get to keep Jesus' robe.
- The phrase "casting lots" can be translated as "tossing lots" or "drawing lots" or "rolling lots." Make sure the translation of "cast" does not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- Depending on the context, the term "lot" could also be translated as "marked stone" or "pottery piece" or "stick" or "piece of straw."
- If a decision is made "by lot" this could be translated as, "by drawing (or throwing) lots."
- To allot things to people can mean to divide those things and to toss lots to decide who gets each portion.
- To allot something to someone can mean to assign it to him or give it to him. (See also: [Elizabeth, priest](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#), [Zechariah \(NT\)](#))

Bible References:

- Jonah 01:07

- Luke 01:8-10
- Luke 23:34
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:35-37
- Psalms 022:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1486, G2819, G2975

Forms Found in the English ULB:

allotted, allotted portion, cast lots, chosen by lot, divide up ... by lot, lot, lots

love

Related Ideas:

brotherly love

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
2. Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
3. When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
4. In the ULB, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
5. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
6. This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
7. The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.
8. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.
9. In the figurative expression "Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated," the term "loved" refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as "chosen." Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term "hated" is used figuratively here to mean "rejected" or "not chosen."

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."

- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:07
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 Thessalonians 04:10
- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:06
- Jeremiah 02:02
- John 03:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- Philippians 01:09
- Song of Solomon 01:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H1730, H2245, H2532, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5383, G5388

Forms Found in the English ULB:

brotherly love, love, loved, loves, loving

lust

Related Ideas:

crave, desire, lustful, lusting, passion, sensual, sensuality

Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually for something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, "lust" usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one's own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, "lust" could be translated as "wrong desire" or "strong desire" or "wrongful sexual desire" or "strong immoral desire" or to "strongly desire to sin."
- The phrase to "lust after" could be translated as to "wrongly desire" or to "think immorally about" or to "immorally desire."
- To "crave" is to desire strongly.
- "Sensuality" is the desire to satisfy sensual desires, to experience sensual pleasures, particularly sexual pleasure.

(See also: [adultery](#), [god](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 Timothy 02:22
- Galatians 05:16
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9

- Matthew 05:28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H183, H185, H1730, H2181, H2183, H2530, H2532, H2656, H5178, H5315, H5375, H5689, H5691, H5869, H7843, G766, G1014, G1937, G1939, G3713, G3715, G3806

Forms Found in the English ULB:

crave, craves, desirable, desire, desired, desires, lust, lusted, lustful, lusting, lusts, passion, sensual, sensuality

lute

Definition:

A lute is a small, stringed, musical instrument that the Israelites used when they worshiped God.

- A lute is very similar to a modern-day acoustic guitar, having a wooden sound box and an extended neck on which strings are strung.
- In playing a lute, certain strings are held down with the fingers of one hand while these and other strings are plucked or strummed with the other hand.
- The number of strings varied, but the Old Testament specifically mentions instruments that had ten strings.

(See also: [harp](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:11-12
- 1 Samuel 10:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 05:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5035, H5443

Forms Found in the English ULB:

lute, lutes

man of God

Facts:

The expression "man of God" is a respectful way of referring to a prophet of Yahweh. It is also used to refer to an angel of Yahweh.

- When referring to a prophet, this could also be translated as "man who belongs to God" or "man whom God has chosen" or "man who serves God."
- When referring to an angel this could also be translated as "messenger of God" or "your angel" or "heavenly being from God who looks like a man."

(See also: [angel](#), [honor](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:12-14
- 1 Kings 12:22
- 1 Samuel 09:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H376, H430, G444, G2316

Forms Found in the English ULB:

man of God

member**Definition:**

The term "member" refers to one part of a complex body or group.

- The New Testament describes Christians as "members" of the body of Christ. Believers in Christ belong to a group that is made up of many members.
- Jesus Christ is the "head" of the body and individual believers function as the members of the body. The Holy Spirit gives each member of the body a special role to help the entire body to function well.
- Individuals who participate in groups such as the Jewish Council and the Pharisees are also called "members" of these groups.

(See also: [body](#), [Pharisee](#), [council](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:15
- 1 Corinthians 12:14-17
- Numbers 16:02
- Romans 12:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1121, H3338, H5315, G1010, G3196, G3609

Forms Found in the English ULB:

member, members

mercy**Related Ideas:**

kindness, merciful, spare

Definition:

The terms "mercy" and "merciful" refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term "mercy" can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as "merciful" when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- To "be merciful" or "spare" someone who has done wrong to another means to forgive that person.
- An evil person who "spares" those who have done nothing wrong does not do the same wrong to them that he has done to others.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "mercy" could be translated as "kindness" or "compassion" or "pity."
- The term "merciful" could be translated as "showing pity" or "being kind to" or "forgiving."
- To "show mercy to" or "have mercy on" could be translated as "treat kindly" or "be compassionate toward."

(See also: [compassion](#), [forgive](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 1 Timothy 01:13
- Daniel 09:17
- Exodus 34:06
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 02:13
- Luke 06:35-36
- Matthew 09:27
- Philippians 02:25-27
- Psalms 041:4-6
- Romans 12:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2550, H2551, H2603, H2604, H2617, H3722, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, H8467, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G4698, G5363, G5544

Forms Found in the English ULB:

kindness, mercies, merciful, mercy, spare, spared, spares, tender mercy

messenger

Related Ideas:

courier, herald

Definitions:

The term "messenger" refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate "angel" as "messenger."
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah's coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus' apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.
- A "herald" or a "courier" is a messenger who carries messages from rulers to their subjects.

(See also: [angel](#), [apostle](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H6735, H6737, G32, G652

Forms Found in the English ULB:

couriers, herald, messenger, messengers

mighty**Related Ideas:**

Mighty One, mightily, mighty host, mighty men, mighty work

Definition:

The terms "mighty" and "might" refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word "might" is another word for "strength." When talking about God, it can mean "power."
- The phrase "mighty men" often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David's band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called "mighty men."
- The phrase "the Mighty One" refers to God.
- The phrase "a mighty one" can refer to God or to a man.
- The phrase "mighty works" usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term "almighty," which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "mighty" could be translated as "powerful" or "amazing" or "very strong."
- The phrase "his might" could be translated as "his strength" or "his power."
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was "mighty in word and deed." This could be translated as "Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things" or "Moses spoke God's word powerfully and did many amazing things."
- Depending on the context, "mighty works" could be translated as "amazing things that God does" or "miracles" or "God doing things with power."
- The term "might" could also be translated as "power" or "great strength."
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in "It might rain."

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [power](#), [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H46, H47, H117, H202, H352, H386, H410, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

Forms Found in the English ULB:

Mighty One, might, mightier, mightily, mighty, mighty host, mighty men, mighty one, mighty ones, mighty work, mighty works

mind

Related Ideas:

expect, intention, likeminded, mindful, sober, think

Definition:

The term "mind" refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To "have the mind of Christ" means to think and act as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To "change his mind" means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.
- To "expect" something is to think that it will happen.
- To "think" can mean to use one's mind to form ideas.
- To "think" can also mean to have a belief or opinion about something.
- To "intend" or "have an intention" to do something is to decide or to plan to do that thing. That thing may be good or evil, and the person may or may not want to do it, but he plans to do it.
- A person who is "sober" is able to think clearly, especially in contrast to a person who has harmed his mind by drinking too much wine.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "mind" could also be translated as "thoughts" or "reasoning" or "thinking" or "understanding."
- The expression "keep in mind" could be translated as "remember" or "pay attention to this" or "be sure to know this."
- The expression "heart, soul, and mind" could also be translated as "what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about."
- The expression "call to mind" could be translated as "remember" or "think about."
- The expression "double-minded" could also be translated as "doubting" or "unable to decide" or "with conflicting thoughts."

(See also: [believe](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 10:27
- Mark 06:51-52
- Matthew 21:29
- Matthew 22:37
- James 04:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H1079, G1380, H1843, H3629, H3820, H3824, H3825, H4093, H4150, H5162, H6419, H6725, H6734, H7217, H7725, G364, G1271, G1374, G1839, G2233, G2657, G3328, G3525, G3539, G3540, G3563, G4102, G4993, G5280, G5426, G5427, G5590

Forms Found in the English ULB:

expect, expected, intention, likeminded, mind, minded, mindful, minds, sober, think, think carefully about, thinks, thought, thoughts

month

Related Ideas:

monthly

Definition:

The term "month" refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about 29 days. In this system there are 12 or 13 months in a year. Despite the year being 12 or 13 months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The "new moon," or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into 12 months, with the length of each month ranging from 28 to 31 days.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 20:34
- Acts 18:9-11
- Hebrews 11:23
- Numbers 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2320, H3391, H3393, G3376

Forms Found in the English ULB:

month, monthly, months

mourn**Related Ideas:**

funeral song, grief, grieve, howl, mourner, mournful, sorrow, sorrowful, tears, wail, weep, with tears

Definitions:

The terms "mourn" and "mourning" refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about "mourning" because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.
- A "howl" is the crying sound an animal makes. People who "howl" are hurt, sad, or angry.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11
- Genesis 23:02
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H56, H57, H60, H205, H421, H578, H584, H585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H2470, H3510, H3013, H3213, H3708, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6087, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23, G2354, G2355, G2799, G2805, G2875, G3076, G3077, G3602, G3996, G3997

Forms Found in the English ULB:

bitter, cause ... grief, funeral song, grief, grieve, grieved, grieving, howl, howls, mourn, mourned, mourner, mourners, mourners', mournful, mournfully, mourning, mourns, sorrow, sorrowful, sorrows, tears, wail, wailing, wailings, wails, weep, weeping, weeps bitterly, wept, with tears

name**Related Ideas:**

fame, nameless, notorious, reputation

Definition:

In the Bible, the word "name" was used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
- The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved."
- People who are "nameless" are unimportant, so few people know about them or care about them.
- A person who is "notorious" is one who has a reputation for evil or foolishness.

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
- Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
- The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
- The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
- The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
- The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2028, G2564, G3140, G3141, G3686, G3687, G5122

Forms Found in the English ULB:

fame, name, name's, named, nameless, names, notorious, reputation

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A "nation" usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a "nation" could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word "nation" was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were "nations" that would fight against each other. This could be translated as "the founders of two nations" or the "ancestors of two people groups."
- The word translated as "nation" was also sometimes used to refer to "Gentiles" or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word "nation" could also be translated as "people group" or "people" or "country."
- If a language has a term for "nation" that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term "nations" can often be translated as "people groups."
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as "Gentiles" or "nonJews."

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), [Canaan](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [people group](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:06
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:05
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:04
- Daniel 03:04
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:05
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 04:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H524, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

Forms Found in the English ULB:

nation, nations

neighbor

Related Ideas:

neighborhood, neighboring

Definition:

The term "neighbor" usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A "neighbor" is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term "neighbor" figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means "person who lives nearby."
- A "neighborhood" is a community of people in a town or city who live near each other.
- "Neighboring" countries and regions are countries and regions that are nearby.

(See also: [adversary](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Ephesians 04:25-27
- Galatians 05:14
- James 02:08
- John 09:8-9
- Luke 01:58
- Matthew 05:43
- Matthew 19:19
- Matthew 22:39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G1069, G2087, G4040, G4139

Forms Found in the English ULB:

neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring, neighbors

new moon

Definition:

The term "new moon" refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth at sunset. It also refers to the first day a new moon should be visible after the moon has been dark for a few days.

- In ancient times, new moons marked the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
- The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram's horn.
- The Bible also refers to this time as the "beginning of the month."

(See also: [month](#), [earth](#), [festival](#), [horn](#), [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 1 Samuel 20:05
- 2 Kings 04:23-24
- Ezekiel 45:16-17

- Isaiah 01:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2320, G3376, G3561

Forms Found in the English ULB:

new moon, new moons

oak

Related Ideas:

terebinth

Definition:

An oak, or oak tree, is a tall shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

- Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks.
- The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
- The trunks of certain oak trees could be measured up to 6 meters around.
- Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

Translation Suggestions:

- Many translations will find it important to use the term "oak tree" rather than just the word "oak."
- If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, "an oak" could be translated as "an oak, which is a large shade tree like...," then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.
- See:

(See also: [holy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:3-4
- Genesis 13:18
- Genesis 14:13-14
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Judges 06:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H424, H427, H436, H437, H438

Forms Found in the English ULB:

oak, oaks, terebinths

oath

Related Ideas:

swear, swear by

Definition:

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. A person who swears an oath commits himself to being faithful and truthful, and by doing so he is saying that God has the right to punish him if he breaks the oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term "swear" means to speak an oath.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together, as in "swear an oath."
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day meaning of the word "swear" is "use foul language." This is not its meaning in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelek](#), [covenant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:03
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 01:73
- Mark 06:26
- Matthew 05:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G331, G332, G3660, G3726, G3727, G3728, G3784

Forms Found in the English ULB:

oath, oath-taking, oaths, swear, swear by, swearing, swears, swears by, swore, swore an oath, sworn

obey**Related Ideas:**

follow, give ear, hear, hold securely, hold to, keep, listen, obedience, obedient

Definition:

The term "obey" means to do what is required or commanded. The term "obedient" describes someone who obeys. "Obedience" is the characteristic that an obedient person has.

- Usually the term "obey" is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, the people obey by not doing that.
- To "observe" a law or command is to obey it.
- Other words used to refer to obeying someone or something are: follow, give ear, hear, hold securely, hold to, keep, listen.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "obey" could include a word or phrase that means "do what is commanded" or "follow orders" or "do what God says to do."
- The term "obedient" could be translated as "doing what was commanded" or "following orders" or "doing what God commands."

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [disobey](#), [kingdom](#), [law](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 05:32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:25
- James 02:10
- Luke 06:47
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2388, H3349, H4928, H5341, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G2722, G2902, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5426, G5442

Forms Found in the English ULB:

following, give ... ear, hear, heard, hold ... securely, hold to, keep, keeps, kept, listen, listened, listened to, obedience, obedient, obediently, obey, obeyed, obeying, obeys

oil**Related Ideas:**

ointment

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.

- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:21
- Exodus 29:02
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Mark 06:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

Forms Found in the English ULB:

oil, oils, ointment, ointments

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: [lamp](#), [the sea](#), [Mount of Olives](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 06:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 08:11
- James 03:12
- Luke 16:06
- Psalms 052:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

Forms Found in the English ULB:

olive, olives

oppress

Related Ideas:

oppression, oppressive, oppressor, ruthless

Definition:

The terms "oppress" and "oppression" refer to treating people harshly. An "oppressor" is a person who oppresses people.

- The term "oppression" especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term "oppressed" describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.
- The term "ruthless" describes who show no pity or compassion to others. Oppressors are ruthless.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "oppress" could be translated as, "severely mistreat" or "cause to be heavily burdened" or "put under miserable bondage" or "rule harshly."
- Ways to translate "oppression" could include "heavy suppression and bondage" or "burdensome control."
- The phrase "the oppressed" could be translated as "oppressed people" or "people in terrible bondage" or "those who are treated harshly."
- The term "oppressor" could be translated as "person who oppresses" or "nation who controls and rules harshly" or "persecutor."

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [persecute](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:07
- Ecclesiastes 04:1
- Job 10:03
- Judges 02:18-19
- Nehemiah 05:14-15
- Psalms 119:134

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H2556, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H5065, H6031, H6115, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, H8496, G2561, G2616, G2669

Forms Found in the English ULB:

oppress, oppressed, oppresses, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors, ruthless

ordinance**Definition:**

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term "ordain."

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term "ordinance" could be translated as "public decree" or "regulation" or "law," depending on the context.

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [law of Moses](#), [ordain](#), [statute](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21

- Leviticus 08:31-33
- Malachi 03:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1881, H2706, H2708, H4687, H4931, H4941, H5715, G1345, G1378

Forms Found in the English ULB:

ordinance, ordinances

overtake**Definition:**

The terms "overtake" and "overtook" refer to gaining control over someone or something. It usually includes the idea of catching up to something after pursuing it.

- When military troops "overtake" an enemy, it means they defeat that enemy in battle.
- When a predator "overtakes" its prey, it means that it pursues and catches its prey.
- If a curse "overtakes" someone, it means that whatever was said in that curse happens to that person.
- If blessings "overtake" people, it means that those people experience those blessings.
- When used in a warning that darkness or punishment or terrors will "overtake" people because of their sin, it means that those people will experience these negative things if they don't repent.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "overtake" and "overcome" could be translated as "conquer" or "capture" or "defeat" or "catch up to" or "completely affect."
- The past action "overtook" can be translated as "caught up to" or "came alongside of" or "conquered" or "defeated" or "caused harm to."

(See also: [bless](#), [curse](#), [prey](#), [punish](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 25:4-5
- John 12:35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H857, H935, H1692, H4672, H5066, H5381, G2638, G2983

Forms Found in the English ULB:

overtake, overtaken, overtakes, overtook

peace**Related Ideas:**

peaceable, peaceful, peacemaker, quiet

Definition:

The term "peace" refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is "peaceful" feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- "Peace" can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have "peaceful relations."
- To "make peace" with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.

- A "peacemaker" is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be "at peace" with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having "peace with God."
- The greeting "grace and peace" was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term "peace" can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.
- A person who is "peaceable" acts in a way that enables him to live in peace with other people. He acts "peaceably."
- To "quiet" someone is to get them to be at peace. To quiet a quarrel is to get the people to stop quarreling and be at peace with each other.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, H8535, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

Forms Found in the English ULB:

peace, peaceable, peaceably, peaceful, peacefully, peacemakers, quiet, quiets

peace offering

Definitions:

A "peace offering" was one of several sacrificial offerings that God commanded the Israelites to make. It is sometimes called the "thanksgiving offering" or "fellowship offering."

- This offering involved sacrificing an animal that had no defects, sprinkling the animal's blood on the altar, and burning the animal's fat, as well as the rest of the animal separately.
- Added to this sacrifice was an offering of both unleavened and leavened bread, which was burned on top of the burnt offering.
- The priest and offerer of the sacrifice were permitted to share in eating the food that was offered.
- This offering symbolizes the fellowship of God with his people.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [fellowship](#), [fellowship offering](#), [grain offering](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [unleavened bread](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 13:8-10
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Joshua 08:30-32
- Leviticus 09:3-5
- Proverbs 07:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8002

Forms Found in the English ULB:

peace offering, peace offerings

perish**Related Ideas:**

imperishable, perishable

Definition:

The term "perish" means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster.

- The word "perish" can also be a metaphor for being punished in hell either presently or in the future.
- Something that is "imperishable" will never perish.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "die" or "be destroyed" or "be punished in hell" or "will be punished in hell."
- When perish is a metaphor, make sure that the translation of "perish" does not only mean "cease to exist."

(See also: [death](#), [eternity](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:23
- 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 049:18-20
- Zechariah 09:5-7
- Zechariah 13:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H622, H1197, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H7921, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G5356

Forms Found in the English ULB:

imperishable, perish, perishable, perished, perishes, perishing

perverse**Related Ideas:**

crooked, perversion, perversity, pervert, twisted

Definition:

The terms "perverse," "crooked," and "twisted" are used to describe a person or action that is morally bad. The term "perversely" means "in a perverse manner." To "pervert" something means to twist it or turn it away from what is right or good. "Perversity" is perverse thoughts, words, and actions.

- Someone or something that is perverse has deviated from what is good and right.
- In the Bible, the Israelites acted perversely when they disobeyed God. They often did this by worshiping false gods.
- Any action which is against God's standards or behavior is considered perverse.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "perverse" could include "morally twisted" or "immoral" or "turning away from God's straight path," depending on the context.
- "Perverse speech" could be translated as "speaking in an evil way" or "deceitful talk" or "immoral way of talking."
- "Perverse people" could be described as "immoral people" or "people who are morally deviant" or "people who continually disobey God."
- The phrase "acting perversely" could be translated as "behaving in an evil way" or "doing things against God's commands" or "living in a way that rejects God's teachings."
- The term "pervert" could also be translated as "cause to be corrupt" or "turn into something evil."

(See also: [corrupt](#), [deceive](#), [disobey](#), [evil](#), [turn](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:47
- 1 Samuel 20:30
- Job 33:27-28
- Luke 23:02
- Psalms 101:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1942, H2015, H2555, H3868, H4297, H5186, H5557, H5558, H5753, H5766, H5773, H5791, H6140, H6141, H8138, H8397, H8419, G1294, G1612, G3344, G4646

Forms Found in the English ULB:

crooked, crooked ways, perverse, perverse words, perversely, perversion, perversions, perversities, perversity, pervert, perverted, perverting, perverts, twisted

pillar

Related Ideas:

column

Definition:

The term "pillar" usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for "pillar" is "column."

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word "pillar" sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a "carved image" and could be translated as "statue."
- The term "pillar" is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the "pillar of fire" that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the "pillar of salt" that Lot's wife became after she looked back at the city.

Translation Suggestions:

- As a structure supporting a building, the term "pillar" or "column" could be translated as "upright stone support beam" or "supporting stone structure."
- Other uses of "pillar" could be translated as "statue" or "pile" or "mound" or "monument" or "tall mass," depending on the context.

(See also: [found](#), [god](#), [image](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:04
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:09
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 09:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H547, H2106, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G4769

Forms Found in the English ULB:

column, columns, pillar, pillars

pit**Related Ideas:**

pitfall, quarry

Definition:

A "pit" is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground. A "pitfall" is a trap made of a pit that is hidden with a cover. A "quarry" is a pit from which people take valuable stones.

- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase "the pit" refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to "the abyss."
- The term "pit" is also used figuratively in phrases such as, "pit of destruction" which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: [abyss](#), [hell](#), [prison](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 37:21-22
- Job 33:18
- Luke 06:39
- Proverbs 01:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H875, H953, H1356, H1475, H2352, H4087, H4113, H4379, H6354, H7585, H7745, H7816, H7825, H7845, H7882, G12, G999, G5421

Forms Found in the English ULB:

pit, pitfall, pits, quarry

plague**Definition:**

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.

- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as "widespread disasters" or "widespread disease," depending on the context.

(See also: [hail](#), [Israel](#), [Moses](#), [Pharaoh](#))

Picture of a Plague of skin:

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:13-14
- Exodus 09:14
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Luke 21:11
- Revelation 09:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1698, H4046, H4194, H4347, H5061, H5062, H5063, G3061, G4127

Forms Found in the English ULB:

plague, plagues

plead

Related Ideas:

appeal, ask earnestly, humble request, plea

Definitions:

The terms "plead" and "pleading" refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A "plea" is an urgent request.

- Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
- People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
- Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.
- The word translated "humble request" refers specifically to a humble request for favor or mercy.
- To "plead someone's cause" is to testify in court before a judge that the judge should rule in favor of the person whose cause it is.
- A "legal plea" or "cause" is what someone who is trying to get justice tells a judge in a court trial.
- An "earnest appeal" is a serious, humble request.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "plead" could also be translated as "beg" or "implore" or "urgently ask."
- The term "plea" could also be translated as "urgent request" or "strong urging."

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 08:3-5
- Judges 06:31
- Luke 04:39
- Proverbs 18:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1777, H2603, H3198, H4941, H6279, H6293, H6664, H6419, H7378, H7379, H7775, H8199, H8467, H8469, G1162, G1189, G1793, G2065, G3870, G3874

Forms Found in the English ULB:

appeal, asked ... earnestly, cause, earnest appeal, earnest appeals, earnestly appeal, earnestly appealed, humble request, humble requests, legal plea, moved by ... plea, plea, plea for favor, plead, plead ... cause, pleaded, pleading, pleadings, pleads, pleas

plow

Related Ideas:

farmer, plowman, plowshare, unplowed

Definition:

A "plow" is a farm tool that is used for breaking up soil to prepare a field for planting.

- Plows have sharp, pointed prongs or blades that dig into the soil. They usually have handles that the farmer uses to guide the plow.
- A "plowshare" is the main cutting blade on a plow.
- In Bible times, plows were usually pulled by a pair of oxen or other work animals.
- Most plows were made of hard wood, except for the sharp points which were made of a metal, such as bronze or iron.
- A "plowman" or a "plower" is a person who uses a plow.

Translation Suggestions:

- The terms "plowman" and "plower" can also be translated more generally as "farmer."

(See also: [bronze](#), [cow](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:10-12
- Deuteronomy 21:04
- Luke 09:62
- Luke 17:07
- Psalm 141:5-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H406, H855, H2758, H2790, H5215, H5647, H5656, H5674, H6213, H6398, G722, G723

Forms Found in the English ULB:

farmers, plow, plowed, plowers, plowing, plowman, plowmen, plows, plowshares, unplowed

pomegranate

Definitions:

A pomegranate is a kind of fruit that has a thick, tough skin filled with many seeds that are covered with edible red pulp.

- The outer rind is reddish in color and the pulp surrounding the seeds is shiny and red.
- Pomegranates are very commonly grown in countries with a hot, dry climate, such as Egypt and Israel.

- Yahweh promised the Israelites that Canaan was a land with abundant water and fertile soil so that food was plentiful there, including pomegranates.
- The construction of Solomon's temple included bronze decorations in the shape of pomegranates.

(See also: [bronze](#), [Canaan](#), [Egypt](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 25:16-17
- Deuteronomy 08:7-8
- Jeremiah 52:22-23
- Numbers 13:23-24
- Numbers 20:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7416

Forms Found in the English ULB:

pomegranate, pomegranates

possess

Related Ideas:

belongings, dispossess, possession, property

Definitions:

The terms "possess" and "possession" usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, "possess" is often used in the context of "possessing" or "taking possession of" an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to "possess" the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as "their possession." This could also be translated as "their rightful place to live."
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh's "special possession." This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.
- The term "dispossess" meant "take someone's property."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "possess" could also be translated as "own" or "have" or "have charge over."
- "Possessions" are also called "belongings" and "property."
- The phrase "take possession of" could be translated as "take control of" or "occupy" or "live on," depending on the context.
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites "my special possession" this could also be translated as "my special people" or "people who belong to me" or "my people whom I love and rule."
- The sentence, "they will become their possession" when referring to land, means "they will occupy the land" or "the land will belong to them."
- The phrase "as your possession" could also be translated as "as something that belongs to you" or "as a place where your people will live."
- The phrase "dispossess them" can be translated as "take their land" or "make them leave their land."

(See also: [Canaan](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:70
- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- Acts 02:45
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

Word Data:

- Strong's: H270, H272, H2505, H2631, H3018, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H5157, H5159, H5459, G979, G1139, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, H3520, G4041, G4047, G4632, G5224, G5225

Forms Found in the English ULB:

belongings, dispossess, possess, possessed, possesses, possessing, possession, possessions, property, took possession, valuable possessions

power**Related Ideas:**

ability, able, mastered, can, capable, could, impossible, incapable, powerful, won, unable

Definition:

The term "power" refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. "Powers" refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The "power of God" refers to God's ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "power" could also be translated as "ability" or "strength" or "energy" or "ability to do miracles" or "control."
- Possible ways to translate the term "powers" could include "powerful beings" or "controlling spirits" or "those who control others."
- An expression like "save us from the power of our enemies" could be translated as "save us from being oppressed by our enemies" or "rescue us from being controlled by our enemies." In this case, "power" has the meaning of using one's strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 01:25
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 03:21
- Psalm 080:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H410, H1368, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2632, H3027, H3201, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5807, H6109, H6184, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8592, H8633, G1410, G1411, G1415, G1743, G1754, G1832, G1849, G1850, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2480, G2904, G3168

Forms Found in the English ULB:

ability, able, am ... able, are ... able, are ... possible, be ... unable, be able, be mastered, can, cannot, capable, could, could not, impossible, incapable, is ... able, may ... be able, miraculous powers, possible, power, powerful, powerfully, powers, was ... able, were ... able, will ... be able, won

pray

Related Ideas:

prayer

Definition:

The terms "pray" and "prayer" refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called "communing" with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as "talking to God" or "communicating with God." The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [god](#), [forgive](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H577, H1156, H2470, H3908, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7879, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

Forms Found in the English ULB:

heard ... prayer, pray, prayed, prayer, prayers, praying, prays, urgently pray

precious**Related Ideas:**

costly, expensive, valuable

Definitions:

The term "precious" describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

- The term "precious stones" or "precious jewels" refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
- Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- Gold and silver are called "precious metals."
- Yahweh says that his people are "precious" in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
- Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God's sight (1 Peter 3:4).
- The terms "costly" and "expensive" describe something that costs a lot of money to buy.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "precious" could also be translated as "valuable" or "very dear" or "cherished" or "highly valued."

(See also: [gold](#), [silver](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:01
- Acts 20:22-24
- Daniel 11:38-39
- Lamentations 01:7
- Luke 07:2-5
- Psalms 036:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1431, H2530, H2532, H2667, H2896, H3357, H3365, H3366, H3368, H4022, H4030, H4261, H4262, H5238, H7939, H8443, G927, G1784, G2472, G2570, G4185, G4186, G5092, G5093

Forms Found in the English ULB:

costly, expensive, precious, precious things, precious treasures, valuable, valuables

priest**Related Ideas:**

priesthood, priestly office

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.

- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), [chief priests](#), [high priest](#), [mediator](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 01:44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:04
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:06

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

Forms Found in the English ULB:

priest, priest's, priesthood, priestly, priestly office, priests, priests', served as a priest

prince

Related Ideas:

princess

Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.

- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](#), [authority](#), [Christ](#), [demon](#), [lord](#), [power](#), [ruler](#), [Satan](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 01:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5461, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G3175

Forms Found in the English ULB:

prince, princes, princess, princesses

profit

Related Ideas:

profitable, unprofitable

Definition:

In general, the terms "profit" and "profitable" refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is "profitable" to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term "profit" often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is "profitable" if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is "profitable" for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible's teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God's will.

The term "unprofitable" means to not be useful.

- It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
- Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
- This could be translated as "useless" or "worthless" or "not useful" or "unworthy" or "not beneficial" or "giving no benefit."

To "take advantage of" someone is to make extra profit from him because he is weak and unable to demand greater return.

(See also: [worthy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "profit" could also be translated as "benefit" or "help" or "gain."
- The term "profitable" could be translated as "useful" or "beneficial" or "helpful."
- To "profit from" something could be translated as "benefit from" or "gain money from" or "receive help from."
- In the context of a business, "profit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "money gained" or "surplus of money" or "extra money."

Bible References:

- Job 15:03
- Proverbs 10:16
- Jeremiah 02:08
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- John 06:63
- Mark 08:36
- Matthew 16:26
- 2 Peter 02:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H11214, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7939, H7965, G147, G512, G890, G1281, G2108, G2585, G2770, G2771, G3408, G3685, G4122, G4297, G4851, G5622, G5623

Forms Found in the English ULB:

profit, profitable, profits, treated ... violently for profit, unprofitable

promise**Related Ideas:**

binding promise

Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:09
- James 01:12
- Numbers 30:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H530, H562, H632, H1696, H2778, H3709, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

Forms Found in the English ULB:

makes binding promises, promise, promised, promises

prophet

Related Ideas:

prophecy, prophesy, prophetic, seer

Definition:

A "prophet" is a man who speaks God's messages to people. A woman who does this is called a "prophetess."

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A "prophecy" is the message that the prophet speaks. To "prophesy" means to speak God's messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as "the prophets."
- For example the phrase, "the law and the prophets" is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the "Old Testament."
- An older term for a prophet was "seer" or "someone who sees."
- Sometimes the term "seer" refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "prophet" could be translated as "God's spokesman" or "man who speaks for God" or "man who speaks God's messages."
- A "seer" could be translated as, "person who sees visions" or "man who sees the future from God."
- The term "prophetess" could be translated as, "spokeswoman for God" or "woman who speaks for God" or "woman who speaks God's messages."
- Ways to translate "prophecy" could include, "message from God" or "prophet message."
- The term "prophesy" could be translated as "speak words from God" or "tell God's message."
- The figurative expression, "law and the prophets" could also be translated as, "the books of the law and of the prophets" or "everything written about God and his people, including God's laws and what his prophets preached."
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as "false prophet (seer)" or "prophet (seer) of a false god" or "prophet of Baal," for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [god](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law of Moses](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5046, H5197, H7200, H7203, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

Forms Found in the English ULB:

give ... prophecies, prophecies, prophecy, prophesied, prophesies, prophesy, prophesying, prophet, prophet's, prophetess, prophetic, prophets, seer, seer's, seers, seers'

prosper**Related Ideas:**

prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term "prosper" generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or countries are "prosperous," it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing "prosperity."

- The term "prosperous" often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term "prosperous" also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A "prosperous" city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God's teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "prosper" could also be translated as "succeed spiritually" or "be blessed by God" or "experience good things" or "live well."
- The term "prosperous" could also be translated as "successful" or "wealthy" or "spiritually fruitful."
- "Prosperity" could also be translated as "well-being" or "wealth" or "success" or "abundant blessings."
- "Welfare" is another word for "prosperity."

(See also: [bless](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:06
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 001:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H202, H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H1995, H2428, H2896, H2898, H2981, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3519, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965, H8454, G2137

Forms Found in the English ULB:

caused ... to prosper, prosper, prospered, prospering, prosperity, prosperous

proud**Related Ideas:**

pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms "proud" and "prideful" refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms "proud" and "pride" can also be used in a positive sense, such as being "proud of" what someone else has achieved and being "proud of" your children. The expression "take pride in your work" means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of "pride."
- The term "prideful" is always negative, with the meaning of being "arrogant" or "conceited" or "self-important."

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun "pride" could be translated as "arrogance" or "conceit" or "self-importance."
- In other contexts, "pride" could be translated as "joy" or "satisfaction" or "pleasure."
- To be "proud of" could also be translated as "happy with" or "satisfied with" or "joyful about (the accomplishments of)."
- The phrase "take pride in your work" could be translated as, "find satisfaction in doing your work well."
- The expression "take pride in Yahweh" could also be translated as "be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done" or "be happy about how amazing Yahweh is."

(See also: [arrogant](#), [humble](#), [joy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:12
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 01:51

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G1391, G1392, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3173, G5187, G5229, G5243, G5244, G5308, G5309, G5426

Forms Found in the English ULB:

pride, prideful, proud, proudly, source of pride

proverb

Definition:

A proverb is a short statement that expresses some wisdom or truth.

- Proverbs are powerful because they are easy to remember and repeat.
- Often a proverb will include practical examples from everyday life.
- Some proverbs are very clear and direct, while others are more difficult to understand.
- King Solomon was known for his wisdom and wrote over 1,000 proverbs.
- Jesus often used proverbs or parables when he taught people.
- Ways to translate "proverb" could include "wise saying" or "true word."

(See also: [Solomon](#), [true](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:32-34
- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- 2 Peter 02:22
- Luke 04:24
- Proverbs 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2420, H4911, H4912, G3850, G3942

Forms Found in the English ULB:

proverb, proverbs, speak ... proverb

provoke

Related Ideas:

provocation

Definitions:

The term "provoke" means to cause someone to experience a negative reaction or feeling.

- To provoke someone to anger means to do something that causes that person to be angry. This could also be translated as to "cause to become angry" or to "anger."
- When used in a phrase such as, "do not provoke him," this could be translated as "do not anger him" or "do not cause him to be angry" or "do not make him angry with you."

(See also: [anger](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3707, H3708, H4784, H4843, H5006, H7065, H7069, H7107, H7264, G2042, G3863, G3947, G3949, G4292

Forms Found in the English ULB:

provocation, provoke, provoke ... to anger, provoked, provoked ... to anger, provokes, provoking

prudent

Related Ideas:

prudence, prudently

Definitions:

The term "prudent" describes a person who thinks carefully about his actions and makes wise decisions. It also describes what a prudent person does.

- Often "prudence" refers to the ability to make wise decisions about practical, physical matters, such as in managing money or property.
- Although "prudence" and "wisdom" are similar in meaning, often "wisdom" is more general and focuses on spiritual or moral matters.
- Depending on the context, "prudent" could also be translated as "shrewd" or "careful" or "wise."

(See also: [shrewd](#), [spirit](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- Proverbs 08:4-5
- Proverbs 12:23-24
- Proverbs 27:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H5843, H6175, H6191, H6195, H7919, H7922

Forms Found in the English ULB:

behaved prudently, prudence, prudent, prudent behavior, prudently

punish

Related Ideas:

bring down judgment, deal with, inflict punishment, judgment, punishment, unpunished

Definition:

The term "punish" means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term "punishment" refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person's punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expression "leave someone unpunished" means to decide not to punish someone for their wrongdoing.
- The expression "go unpunished" means to sin and not be punished for it. God often allows people to go unpunished as he waits for them to repent.
- To "bring down judgment" on someone is to punish him after declaring him guilty of wrongful behavior.
- Sometimes "judgment" refers to punishment.
- Sometimes "deal with" means punish.

(See also: [justice](#), [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- 2 Thessalonians 01:09
- Acts 04:21
- Acts 07:59-60
- Genesis 04:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2403, H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5352, H5414, H5771, H6031, H6213, H6485, H6486, H7451, H7561, H7999, H8011, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G2849, G2851, G2917, G2920, G3811, G5097

Forms Found in the English ULB:

bring down judgment, go ... unpunished, inflicted punishment, inflicting punishment, judgment, leave ... unpunished, punish, punished, punishes, punishing, punishment, unpunished

rage

Related Ideas:

enrage

Definitions:

Rage is excessive anger what is out of control. When someone rages, it means that person is expressing anger in a destructive way.

- Rage happens when the emotion of anger causes a person to lose self control.
- When controlled by rage, people commit destructive acts and say destructive things.
- When the "nations rage," their to ungodly people disobey God and rebel against him.
- To be "filled with rage" means to have an overwhelming feeling of extreme anger.
- "Senseless rage" is rage that comes from no good reason or that prevents the angry person from thinking clearly.
- To "enrage" someone means to make them extremely angry.
- To "enrage" against someone is to be extremely angry with someone.
- When someone is "enraged" he is extremely angry."

"Rage" can also be used figuratively. * The term to "rage" can also mean to move powerfully, in descriptions such as a "raging" storm or ocean waves that "rage."

(See also: [anger](#), [self-control](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 04:25
- Daniel 03:13
- Luke 04:28
- Numbers 25:11
- Proverbs 19:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H1348, H1993, H2121, H2195, H2196, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2734, H2740, H3820, H5590, H5678, H7264, H7265, H7266, H7267, H7857, G454, G1693, G2372, G2830, G3710, G5433

Forms Found in the English ULB:

enrage, enraged, rage, raged, rages, raging, senseless rage

raise

Related Ideas:

arise, rise, risen

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word "raise" means to "lift up" or "make higher."

- The figurative phrase "raise up" means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to restore or rebuild.
- "Raise" has a specialized meaning in the phrase "raise from the dead." It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to exalt someone or something or make someone or something truly great.

rise, arise

To "rise" or "arise" means to "go up" or "get up." The terms "risen," "rose," and "arose" express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as "he arose and went" or "he rose up and went."
- If something "arises" it means it "happens" or "begins to happen."
- Jesus predicted that he would "rise from the dead." Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, "He has risen!"
- A person who suddenly becomes important is said to "arise."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "raise" or "raise up" could be translated as "lift up" or "make higher."
- To "raise up" could also be translated as to "cause to appear" or to "appoint" or to "bring into existence."
- To "raise up the strength of your enemies" could be translated as, "cause your enemies to be very strong."
- The phrase "raise someone from the dead" could be translated as "cause someone to return from death to life" or "cause someone to come back to life."
- Depending on the context, "raise up" could also be translated as "provide" or to "appoint" or to "cause to have" or "build up" or "rebuild" or "repair."
- The phrase "arose and went" could be translated as "got up and went" or "went."
- Depending on the context, the term "arose" could also be translated as "began" or "started up" or "got up" or "stood up."

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [exalt](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- 2 Samuel 07:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 03:01
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:01
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 07:22
- Matthew 20:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1804, H2210, H2224, H5375, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H7613, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1127, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891, G5312

Forms Found in the English ULB:

arise, arisen, arises, raise, raise up, raised, raises, raising, raising up, rise, rise up, risen, rises, rising, rose

ransom

Definition:

The term "ransom" refers to a sum of money or other payment that is demanded or paid for the release of a person who is held captive.

- As a verb, to "ransom" means to make a payment or to do something self-sacrificially in order to rescue someone who has been captured, enslaved or imprisoned. This meaning of "buy back" is similar to the meaning of "redeem."
- Jesus allowed himself to be killed as a ransom to free sinful people from their enslavement to sin. This act of God buying back his people through paying the penalty of their sin is also called "redemption" in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "ransom" could also be translated as to "pay to release" or to "pay a price to free" or to "buy back."
- The phrase to "pay a ransom" could be translated as to "pay the price (of freedom)" or to "pay the penalty (to free people)" or to "make the required payment."
- The noun "ransom" could be translated as "a buying back" or "a penalty paid" or "the price paid" (to free or buy back people or land).
- The terms a "ransom" and a "redemption" have the same meaning in English but are sometimes used slightly differently. Other languages may have only one term for this concept.
- Make sure this is translated differently from "atonement."

(See also: [atonement](#), [redeem](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 02:06
- Isaiah 43:03
- Job 06:23
- Leviticus 19:20
- Matthew 20:28
- Psalms 049:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H3724, H6299, H6304, G487, G3083

Forms Found in the English ULB:

ransom, ransomed

reap

Related Ideas:

reaper

Definition:

The term "reap" means to harvest crops such as grain. A "reaper" is someone who harvests the crop.

- Usually reapers harvested the crops by hand, pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.
- The idea of reaping a harvest is often used figuratively to refer to telling people the good news about Jesus and bringing them into God's family.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to the consequences that come from a person's actions, as in the saying "a man reaps what he plants."

- Other ways to translate to "reap" and "reaper" could include to "harvest" and "harvester" (or "person who harvests").

(See also: [good news](#), [harvest](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 06:9-10
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4672, H7114, H7938, G2325, G2327

Forms Found in the English ULB:

reap, reaped, reaper, reapers, reaping, reaps

rebel

Related Ideas:

rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term "rebel" means to refuse to submit to someone's authority. A "rebellious" person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called "a rebel."

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to "rebel" could also be translated as to "disobey" or to "revolt," depending on the context.
- "Rebellious" could also be translated as "continually disobedient" or "refusing to obey."
- The term "rebellion" means "refusal to obey" or "disobedience" or "law-breaking."
- The phrase "the rebellion" or "a rebellion" can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4754, H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7300, H7846, G436, G485, G498, G506, G3893, G4955

Forms Found in the English ULB:

rebel, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness, rebels, revolt

rebuke

Related Ideas:

correct, correction

Definition:

To rebuke is to give someone a stern verbal correction, often in order to help that person turn away from sin. Such a correction is a rebuke.

- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
- The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
- "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also [admonish](#), [disobey](#))

Bible References:

- Mark 01:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 08:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H3256, H4045, H4148, H7626, H8156, H8433, G1649, G1651, G1969, G2008, G3679

Forms Found in the English ULB:

correct, corrected, correction, corrections, corrects, give correction, rebuke, rebuked, rebukes

receive

Related Ideas:

abstain, receiver

Definition:

The term "receive" generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To "receive" can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in "he received punishment for what he did."
- There is also a special sense in which we can "receive" a person. For example, to "receive" guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To "receive the gift of the Holy Spirit" means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To "receive Jesus" means to accept God's offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person "receives his sight" means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.
- The word "abstain" means to refuse to take or receive or have something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "receive" could be translated as "accept" or "welcome" or "experience" or "be given."
- The expression "you will receive power" could be translated as "you will be given power" or "God will give you power" or "power will be given to you (by God)" or "God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you."
- The phrase "received his sight" could be translated as "was able to see" or "became able to see again."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:09
- 1 Thessalonians 01:06
- 1 Thessalonians 04:01
- Acts 08:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 09:05
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3557, H3925, H3947, H5144, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1184, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4047, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562

Forms Found in the English ULB:

abstain, receive, receive back, received, received ... in full, receiver, receives, receiving

reed**Definitions:**

The term "reed" refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called "bulrushes." They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Moses](#), [Nile River](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:15
- Luke 07:24
- Matthew 11:07
- Matthew 12:20
- Psalm 068:30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H98, H100, H260, G4464, H5488, H6169, H7070, G2563

Forms Found in the English ULB:

reed, reeds

reign

Definition:

The term to "reign" means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term "reign" is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as "absolute rule" or "rule as king."

(See also: [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 02:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, G936, G2231, G4821

Forms Found in the English ULB:

reign, reigned, reigning, reigns, set ... to reign

reject

Related Ideas:

deny, despise, refuse, rejection, scorn, set aside, stay away from, throw away

Definition:

To "reject" someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing. The term "reject" can also mean to "refuse to believe in" something. To reject God or his laws means to refuse to obey him.

- To "deny" what someone says is to say that it is not true.
- To "deny" someone is to say that one does not associate with that person.
- To "despise" or "scorn" people or things is to have no respect for them.
- An "object of scorn" is someone or something that people have no respect for.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "reject" could also be translated by "not accept" or "stop helping" or "refuse to obey" or "stop obeying."
- In some languages the idea of "reject" is expressed as "push away" or "set aside" or "stay away from."
- In the expression "stone that the builders rejected," the term "rejected" could be translated as "refused to use" or "did not accept" or "threw away" or "got rid of as worthless."
- In the context of people who rejected God's commandments, rejected could be translated as "refused to obey" his commands or "stubbornly chose to not accept" God's laws.

(See also: [command](#), [disobey](#), [obey](#), [stiff-necked](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:12-14
- Hosea 04:6-7
- Isaiah 41:09
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 07:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H936, H937, H947, H959, H2151, H2186, H2778, H2781, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G114, G483, G550, G579, G580, G581, G593, G683, G720, G1609, G1848, G3868

Forms Found in the English ULB:

denied, denies, deny, despise, despised, despises, refuse, refused, reject, rejected, rejecting, rejection, rejects, scorn, scorns, set ... aside, sets ... aside, stay away from, throw away, tossed aside

report

Related Ideas:

account, bring news, give an account, news, rumor

Definition:

The term to "report" means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A "report" is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- "Report" could also be translated as "tell" or "explain" or "tell the details of."
- The expression "Report this to no one" could be translated as, "Don't talk about this with anyone" or "Don't tell anyone about this."
- Ways to translate "a report" could include "an explanation" or "a story" or "a detailed account," depending on the context.
- A "rumor" is a report that no one knows for sure is true.

Bible References:

- Acts 05:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 05:15
- Luke 08:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H5608, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, H8435, G189, G191, G312, G518, G987, G1225, G1310, G1334, G1834, G2036, G2163, G3004, G3056, G3140, G3141, G3377

Forms Found in the English ULB:

account, accounts, bring ... report, brought ... news, brought ... report, gave ... a full account, give ... a full account, news, report, reported, reports, rumor, rumors, spread ... about

rest

Related Ideas:

at ease, pause, refresh, relief, restless

Definition:

The term to "rest" literally means to stop working. Usually it means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. A "rest" is what someone has when he stops working. To "rest secure" is to feel safe. To "rest" an object on something means to "place" or "put" it there. An object that is "resting" somewhere is simply in that place. A boat that "comes to rest" somewhere has "stopped" or "landed" there. The phrase "the rest of" refers to the remainder of something.

- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the "Sabbath" day.
- To be "at ease" is to feel safe or comfortable.
- To "pause" is to stop doing something for a while.
- To "refresh" someone is to give him rest and whatever else he needs so he can get his strength back.
- "Relief" is the rest a person has when a problem becomes less severe or ends.
- If someone is "restless," he feels anxious or bored and cannot rest.

Translation Suggestions:

- When Jesus said, "I will give you rest," this could also be translated as "I will cause you to stop carrying your burden" or "I will help you be at peace."
- God said, "they will not enter my rest," and this statement could be translated as "they will not experience my blessings of rest" or "they will not experience the peace that comes from trusting in me."
- The term "the rest" could be translated as "those that remain" or "all the others" or "everything that is left."

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 02:03
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3427, H3498, H3499, H3885, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5162, H5183, H5315, H5564, H6314, H6960, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7663, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7951, H7961, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2838, G4520

Forms Found in the English ULB:

at ease, be at rest, give ... rest, pause, refresh, refreshed, relief, rest, rest secure, rested, rested secure, resting, resting place, resting places, restless, rests

restore**Related Ideas:**

bring back, mend, recover, restoration, reverse

Definition:

The terms "restore" and "restoration" refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been "healed."
- When a broken relationship is restored, it has been "reconciled." God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.

- When property is restored, it has been "repaired" or "replaced" or "given back" to its owner.
- When people have been restored to their home country, they have been "brought back" or "returned" to their country.
- A person who "recovers" from sickness becomes healthy again.
- A person who "recovers" a possession either finds it when it has been lost or gets it back from someone who has stolen it.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "restore" could include "renew" or "repay" or "return" or "heal" or "bring back."
- Other expressions for this term could be "make new" or "make like new again."
- Depending on the context, "restoration" could be translated as "renewal" or "healing" or "reconciliation."

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:10
- Acts 3:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 05:22
- Leviticus 6:5-7
- Luke 19:8
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 80:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2421, H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675, G5483

Forms Found in the English ULB:

bring back, mending, recover, restoration, restore, restored, restorer, restores, restoring, reverse

return

Definition:

The term "return" means to go back or to give something back.

- To "return to" a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- To "return to" an activity means to start doing that activity again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they started to worship them again.
- When the Israelites returned to Yahweh, they repented and worshiped Yahweh again.
- To "return" land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: [turn](#))

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290, G4762

Forms Found in the English ULB:

return, return back, returned, returning, returns

reveal

Related Ideas:

revelation

Definition:

The term "reveal" means to cause something to be known. A "revelation" is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by "revelation from Jesus Christ," he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book "Revelation," God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "reveal" could include "make known" or "disclose" or "show clearly."
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate "revelation" could be "communication from God" or "things that God has revealed" or "teachings about God." It is best to keep the meaning of "reveal" in the translation.
- The phrase "where there is no revelation" could be translated as "when God is not revealing himself to people" or "when God is not speaking to people" or "among people whom God has not communicating."

(See also: [dream](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 03:05
- Galatians 01:12
- Lamentations 02:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 03:15
- Revelation 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1540, H1541, H1540, H5046, H7200, G601, G602, G1213, G1453, G3377, G5318, G5319, G5537

Forms Found in the English ULB:

reveal, revealed, revealing, reveals, revelation, revelations

reward

Related Ideas:

pay, penalty, prize, recompense, retribution, rewarder, wage

Definition:

The term "reward" refers to what a person receives or earns because of something he has done, either good or bad. To "reward" someone is to give someone something he deserves.

- A reward can be a good thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to bad things that may result from bad behavior, such as "the reward of the wicked." This is either punishment or other painful things that happen to people because of their sinful actions.
- "Payment" and "wages" refer to what a person earns for working. These ideas can also be used to refer to a reward for doing good or to punishment for doing bad.
- A "prize" is a reward that someone receives for winning a contest.
- A "penalty" is a punishment for breaking the law.
- "Recompense" can be either good or bad. Good recompense is for good deeds, and bad recompense is for bad deeds.
- "Retribution" is punishment for doing wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "reward" could be translated as "payment" or "something that is deserved" or "punishment."
- To "reward" someone could be translated by to "repay" or to "punish" or to "give what is deserved."

(See also: [punish](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:06
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 06:35
- Mark 09:40-41
- Matthew 05:11-12
- Matthew 06:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H314, H319, H814, H866, H868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H2506, H3519, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7936, H7938, H7939, H7966, H7999, H8254, G469, G514, G591, G2603, G3405, G3406, G3408, G5485

Forms Found in the English ULB:

pay, pay ... back, pays ... back, payment, penalty, prize, recompense, repay, repayment, retribution, reward, rewarded, rewarder, rewarding, rewards, wage, wages

righteous

Related Ideas:

right, rightly, righteousness, rightful, upright

Definition:

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.

- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term "unrighteous" means to be sinful and morally corrupt. "Unrighteousness" can refer to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes "the unrighteous" refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.
- "Unrighteousness" can be an abstract noun that refers to words or actions that are unrighteous.

The terms "upright" and "uprightness" refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is "upright" is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as "integrity" and "righteous" have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as "integrity and uprightness."

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."
- God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."
- The phrase "the righteous" could also be translated as "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."
- Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good"
- Sometimes "the righteous" was used figuratively and referred to "people who think they are good" or "people who seem to be righteous."
- The term "unrighteous" could simply be translated as "not righteous."
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include "wicked" or "immoral" or "people who rebel against God" or "sinful."
- The phrase "the unrighteous" could be translated as "unrighteous people."
- The term "unrighteousness" could be translated as "sin" or "evil thoughts and actions" or "wickedness."
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to "righteous, righteousness."
- Ways to translate "upright" could include "acting rightly" or "one who acts rightly" or "following God's laws" or "obedient to God" or "behaving in a way that is right."
- The term "uprightness" could be translated as "moral purity" or "good moral conduct" or "rightness."
- The phrase "the upright" could be translated as "people who are upright" or "upright people."

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), [integrity](#), [justice](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [obey](#), [pure](#), [sin](#), [lawful](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06

- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G824, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118

Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts rightly, do right, does what is right, in the right, made ... appear ... righteous, right treatment, righteous, righteously, righteousness, rightful, that are right, that is right, unrighteous, unrighteously, unrighteousness, upright, uprightly, uprightness, what is ... right, what was right

robe

Related Ideas:

cloak, coat, skirt, wings

Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- Robes can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.
- The edges of a robe are called its "wings." When one person covers another person with his "wings," he covers him with that part of his robe.
- A "cloak" is a long outer garment that hangs loosely from the shoulders. It covers the back and hangs loosely in the front.
- A "skirt" is a woman's garment that hangs loosely from the waist and covers the legs.

(See also: [royal](#), [tunic](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H145, H155, H899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7897, H8008, H8071, G1746, G2067, G2440, G4749, G4016, G5511

Forms Found in the English ULB:

cloak, cloaks, coat, fancy robes, robe, robed, robes, skirt, skirts, wings

rod**Related Ideas:**

measuring rod

Definition:

The term "rod" refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that was used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

- A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
- In Psalm 23, King David used the terms "rod" and "staff" as metaphors to refer to God's guidance and discipline for his people.
- A shepherd's rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
- Another metaphorical expression, "rod of iron," refers to God's punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
- In the Bible, a wooden rod was also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.
- In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.

(See also: [staff](#), [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:21
- 1 Samuel 14:43-44
- Acts 16:23
- Exodus 27:9-10
- Revelation 11:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2415, H4294, H4731, H7626, G2563, G4463, G4464

Forms Found in the English ULB:

measuring rod, rod, rods

royal**Related Ideas:**

kings', royalty

Definition:

The term "royal" describes people and things associated with a king or queen.

- Examples of things that could be called "royal" include a king's clothing, palace, throne, and crown.
- A king or queen usually lived in a royal palace.
- A king wore special clothing, sometimes called "royal robes." Often a king's robes were purple, this color could only be produced by a rare and expensive type of dye.
- In the New Testament, believers in Jesus were called a "royal priesthood." Other ways to translate this could include "priests who serve God the King" or "called to be priests for God the King."
- The term "royal" could also be translated as "kingly" or "belonging to a king."

(See also: [king](#), [palace](#), [priest](#), [purple](#), [queen](#), [robe](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:13
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Amos 07:13
- Genesis 49:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H643, H1935, H4410, H4428, H4430, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H7985, G933, G934, G937

Forms Found in the English ULB:

kings', royal, royal official, royalty

ruin

Related Ideas:

rubble, ruins

Definition:

To "ruin" something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term "ruin" or "ruins" refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

- The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God's wrath as a "day of ruin" when the world will be judged and punished.
- The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
- Depending on the context, to "ruin" could be translated as to "destroy" or to "spoil" or to "make useless" or to "break."
- The term "ruin" or "ruins" could be translated as "rubble" or "broken-down buildings" or "destroyed city" or "devastation" or "brokenness" or "destruction," depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 12:7-8
- 2 Kings 19:25-26
- Acts 15:16
- Isaiah 23:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1091, H1197, H1530, H1820, H1942, H2015, H2034, H2040, H2717, H2719, H2720, H2721, H2723, H2930, H3510, H3765, H3782, H3832, H4072, H4288, H4384, H4654, H4658, H4876, H4889, H5221, H5307, H5327, H5422, H5557, H5754, H5856, H6365, H6561, H7451, H7489, H7582, H7591, H7612, H7701, H7703, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, H8510, G2506, G2647, G2679, G2692, G3089, G3639, G4485

Forms Found in the English ULB:

allowed to become ruined, rubble, ruin, ruined, ruining, ruins

ruler

Related Ideas:

overrule, rule

Definition:

The term "ruler" is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who "rules," and his authority is his "rule."

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a "ruler," as in the phrase "appointed him ruler over Israel."
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a "ruler."
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a "governor."
- Depending on the context, "ruler" could be translated as "leader" or "person who has authority over."
- The action to "rule" means to "lead" to "have authority over." It means the same thing as "reign" when it refers to the ruling of a king.
- To "overrule" people or their plans is to use one's higher authority to prohibit people from doing what they have planned.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 03:17-18
- Acts 07:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 03:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1117, H995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5633, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G746, G752, G757, G758, G932, G936, G1018, G1203, G1299, G1778, G1785, G2232, G2233, G2525, G2888, G2961, G3545, G3841, G4165, G4291

Forms Found in the English ULB:

overruled, overrules, rule, ruled, ruler, rulers, rules, ruling, rulings

run**Related Ideas:**

flee, flow, move swiftly, runner

Definition:

Literally the term "run" means "move very quickly on foot," usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking. To "run after" or "pursue" someone or something is to move as quickly as possible to try to catch that person or thing. To run away from someone or something is to "flee."

This main meaning of "run" is also used in figurative expressions such as the following:

- To "run in such a way as to win the prize" refers to persevering in doing God's will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win.
- To "run in the path of your commands" means to gladly and quickly obey God's commands.
- To "run after other gods" means to persist in worshiping other gods.
- "I run to you to hide me" means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things.

The following figurative uses are about non-living things that are said to run.

- Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to "run." This could also be translated as, "flow."
- The border or boundary of a country or region is said to "run along" a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country's border "is next to" the river or other country or by saying that the country "borders" the river or other country."
- Rivers and streams can "run dry," which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as "have dried up" or "have become dry."
- The days of a feast can "run their course," which means they "have passed by" or "are finished" or "are over."

(See also: [god](#), [persevere](#), [refuge](#), [turn](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:18
- Galatians 02:02
- Galatians 05:07
- Philippians 02:16
- Proverbs 01:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H213, H386, H1065, H1272, H1556, H1980, H2100, H2416, H2648, H3001, H3212, H3332, H3381, H3920, H3988, H4422, H4754, H4794, H4944, H5074, H5127, H5140, H5472, H5756, H6437, H6440, H6544, H6805, H7272, H7291, H7310, H7325, H7519, H7751, H8264, H8308, H8444, G413, G1377, G1601, G1530, G1532, G1998, G2701, G3729, G4063, G4370, G4390, G4710, G4890, G4936, G5143, G5240, G5343

Forms Found in the English ULB:

caused ... to flee, fled, flee, fleeing, flees, flow, flows, moving swiftly, ran, run, runner, runners, running, runs

sacrifice

Related Ideas:

offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "sacrifice" and "offering" refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word "offering" generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term "sacrifice" refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as "burnt offering" and "peace offering," indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression "offer yourselves as a living sacrifice" means, "live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him."

Translation Suggestions

- The term "offering" could also be translated as "a gift to God" or "something given to God" or "something valuable that is presented to God."

- Depending on the context, the term "sacrifice" could also be translated as "something valuable given in worship" or "a special animal killed and presented to God."
- The action to "sacrifice" could be translated as to "give up something valuable" or to "kill an animal and give it to God."
- Another way to translate "present yourself as a living sacrifice" could be "as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar."

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [drink offering](#), [god](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#), [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:06
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 05:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H4635, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

Forms Found in the English ULB:

burn ... sacrifices, offer, offered, offering, offerings, sacrifice, sacrificed, sacrifices, sacrificing

save

Related Ideas:

make well, preserve, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term "save" refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To "be safe" means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been "saved," then God, through Jesus' death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term "salvation" refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, "salvation" usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "save" could include "deliver" or "keep from harm" or "take out of harm's way" or "keep from dying."
- In the expression "whoever would save his life," the term "save" could also be translated as "preserve" or "protect."

- The term "safe" could be translated as "protected from danger" or "in a place where nothing can harm."
- The term "salvation" could also be translated using words related to "save" or "rescue," as in "God's saving people (from being punished for their sins)" or "God's rescuing his people (from their enemies)."
- "God is my salvation" could be translated as "God is the one who saves me."
- "You will draw water from the wells of salvation" could be translated as "You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you."

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [punish](#), [sin](#), [Savior](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:03
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:21
- Romans 01:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 06:17
- Philippians 01:28
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4581, H4931, H5337, H5338, H5756, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G1295, G1508, G1515, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

Forms Found in the English ULB:

be made well, brought safely, brought safely through, place of safety, preserve, safe, safely, safety, salvation, save, saved, saves, saving

scribe

Related Ideas:

clerk, scholar

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was "expert in Jewish law."

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated "scribes" was also translated as "teachers of the Law."
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the "Pharisees," and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law of Moses](#), [Pharisee](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 04:05
- Luke 07:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 01:22
- Mark 02:16
- Matthew 05:19-20
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

Forms Found in the English ULB:

clerk, scholar, scribe, scribes

seek

Related Ideas:

go to find, look out for, search, try

Definition:

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. The past tense is "sought." It can also mean "try hard" or "make an effort" to do something.

- To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
- To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
- To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
- To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
- To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
- To "search out" something is to look for the truth about that thing.
- To "seek favor" means to "try to get favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."
- To "charge someone for something" is to hold that person responsible for the damage that person has done.

(See also: [justice](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H2713, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7760, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2045, G2052, G2212, G3987, G4648

Forms Found in the English ULB:

diligently seek, go to find, look out for, looked for, looking for, looks for, search, search carefully, search for, searched, searched for, searched out, searches ... out, searches for, searching, searching for, seek, seek ... out, seeking, seeks, sought, tried, try, trying

send**Definition:**

To "send" is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To "send out" someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is "sent out" has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like "send rain" or "send disaster" mean to "cause rain to come" or "cause a disaster to come." This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term "send" is also used in expressions such as "send word" or "send a message," which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To "send" someone "with" something can mean to "give" that thing "to" someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- To "send someone on his way" or "help someone on his way" is to give him what he needs for his journey.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase "the one who sent me" to refer to God the Father, who "sent" him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as "the one who commissioned me."

(See also: [appoint](#), [redeem](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 08:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 09:37-38
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H4916, H4917, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G782, G375, G630, G649, G652, G1026, G1544, G1599, G1821, G3333, G3343, G3936, G3992, G4311, G4341, G4369, G4842, G4882

Forms Found in the English ULB:

send, send ... away, send ... on ... way, send out, sending, sending out, sends, sends out, sent, sent ... away, sent out

servant**Related Ideas:**

assistant, attendant, hired worker, maidservant, office, serve, service

Definition:

The word "servant" refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. Some servants were slaves, and the surrounding text usually makes it clear whether or not a particular servant was a slave. In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master's household and many were

treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- Christians are also called "slaves to righteousness," which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave's commitment to obey his master.

The word "serve" means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to "worship."

- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.

The word "service" refers to the work that a servant does. It may also refer to worship.

The word "office" refers to the position or job that a servant has.

(See also: [commit](#), [enslave](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [covenant](#), [law](#))

Bible References

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H327, H519, H519, H4931, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5656, H5657, H5659, H5673, H6402, H6635, H7916, H8120, H8198, H8278, H8334, H8335, G1199, G1247, G1248, G1249, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2038, G2322, G2324, G2615, G2999, G3000, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3814, G3816, G4342, G5256, G5257

Forms Found in the English ULB:

female servant, female servants, hired servant, hired servants, hired worker, maidservants, male servant, male servants, office, offices, one who serves, servant, servant girl, servant girls, servant's, servants, servants', serve, served, serves, service, services, serving

set apart**Related Ideas:**

distinct, make a distinction, treat differently

Definition:

The term "set apart" means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to "set apart" people or things means to make them "set apart." This also means to "treat" them "differently." When something is "distinct," it is different from other things.

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is "set apart" for service to God is "dedicated to" fulfilling God's will.
- One meaning of the term "holy" is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To "sanctify" someone means to set apart that person for God's service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to "set apart" could include to "specially select" or to "separate from among you" or to "take aside to do a special task."
- To "be set apart" could be translated as "be separated (from)" or "be specially appointed (for)."

(See also: [holy](#), [sanctify](#), [appoint](#))

Bible References:

- Ephesians 03:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 03:11-13
- Philippians 01:1-2
- Romans 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2764, H4390, H5144, H5674, H6395, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G2564

Forms Found in the English ULB:

be distinct, making a distinction, set ... apart, sets ... apart, treat ... differently, treating ... differently

shame**Related Ideas:**

ashamed, shameful, shameless, unashamed

Definition:

The term "shame" refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is "shameful" is "improper" or "dishonorable."
- The term "ashamed" describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase "put to shame" means to cause someone to feel ashamed. It might be expose their sin or by defeating them.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent by exposing that person's sin and causing him to be humiliated.
- A person that is "unashamed" does not feel shame.
- A person is "shameless" if he does something shameful but does not feel ashamed.
- A "shameless act" is something a person should feel ashamed about doing, but he does not feel ashamed.

Sometimes the word "shame" is used figuratively to refer to a person's nakedness or private parts.

(See also: [god](#), [humble](#), [humiliate](#), [Isaiah](#), [repent](#), [sin](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H5949, H2616, H2659, H2781, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H7022, H7036, H8103, G149, G152, G153, G422, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3681, G3856, G5195

Forms Found in the English ULB:

ashamed, make ... ashamed, put ... to shame, shame, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, shames, unashamed

sheep

Related Ideas:

ewe, ram, sheepfold, sheepshearer, sheepskin

Definition:

A "sheep" is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a "ram." A female sheep is called a "ewe." The plural of "sheep" is also "sheep."

- A baby sheep is called a "lamb."
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.
- A "sheepfold" is a place where sheep are kept safe. It has a fence or wall around it to keep the sheep from wandering out and to keep dangerous animals from getting in.
- A "sheepshearer" is a person who cuts the wool of sheep.

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 08:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 02:14
- Luke 15:05
- Mark 06:34
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

Forms Found in the English ULB:

ewe, ewes, ram, ram's, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins

shepherd

Definition:

- A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb to "shepherd" means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water.
- Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.
- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people's spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the "shepherd" of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them.
- David was a shepherd who looked after sheep. God made David king over Israel to take care of the people of Israel in some ways like a shepherd takes care of sheep.
- In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the "good shepherd." The apostle Peter also referred to Jesus as "the Chief Shepherd" over the Church.
- Also, in the New Testament, the term "shepherd" was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as "pastor" is the same word that is translated as "shepherd." The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action "shepherd" could be translated as "take care of sheep" or "watch over sheep."
- The person "shepherd" could be translated as "person who takes care of sheep" or "sheep tender" or "sheep caregiver."
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include "spiritual shepherd" or "spiritual leader" or "one who is like a shepherd" or "one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep" or "one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep" or "one who takes care of God's sheep."
- In some contexts, "shepherd" could be translated as "leader" or "guide" or "caregiver."
- The spiritual expression to "shepherd" could be translated as to "take care of" or to "spiritually nourish" or to "guide and teach" or to "lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)."
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for "shepherd" in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believe](#), [Canaan](#), [church](#), [Moses](#), [pastor](#), [sheep](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:24
- Luke 02:09
- Mark 06:34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 25:32
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G750, G4165, G4166

Forms Found in the English ULB:

chief shepherd, herdsman, herdsman, keeper, shepherd, shepherd's, shepherded, shepherding, shepherds

shield

Related Ideas:

shielded

Definition:

A shield was an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. To "shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval, were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal, and were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: Metaphor)
- Paul talked about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that having faith in Jesus and living out that faith in obedience to God will protect believers from the spiritual attacks of Satan.

(See also: [faith](#), [obey](#), [Satan](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:26
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- 2 Samuel 22:36
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- Psalms 018:35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2653, H4043, H5437, H5526, H6793, H7982, G2375

Forms Found in the English ULB:

shield, shielded, shields

siege

Related Ideas:

besiege, besiegers

Definition:

A "siege" occurs when an attacking army surrounds a city and keeps it from receiving any supplies of food and water. To "besiege" a city or to put it "under siege" means to attack it by means of a siege.

- When the Babylonians came to attack Israel, they used the tactic of a siege against Jerusalem to weaken the people inside the city.
- Often during a siege, ramps of dirt are gradually constructed to enable the attacking army to cross over the city walls and invade the city.
- To "besiege" a city can also be expressed as to "lay siege" to it or to "perform a siege" on it.
- The term "besieged" has the same meaning as the expression "under siege." Both these expressions describe a city that an enemy army is surrounding and besieging.

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 20:1
- 1 Kings 20:1-3
- 1 Samuel 11:1-2
- Jeremiah 33:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1785, H4674, H4685, H4692, H5341, H5437, H5564, H6693, H6696, H6887

Forms Found in the English ULB:

besiege, besieged, besiegers, besieging, siege, siege ramp, siege ramps, siege wall, siege works

sign**Related Ideas:**

demonstration, evidence, mark, marker, omen, proof, remind, reminder, signal

Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- "Reminders" are signs that "remind" people by helping them remember something, often something that was promised:
- The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
- God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
- An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
- Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
- The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.
- The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.
- A "signal flag" is a flag that a king would raise as a sign so that people could see it and come to him or go into battle.
- An "omen" is an event that people think tells that something else will happen in the future.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, "sign" could also be translated as "signal" or "symbol" or "mark" or "evidence" or "proof" or "gesture."
- To "make signs with the hands" could also be translated as "motion with the hands" or "gesture with the hands" or "make gestures."
- In some languages, there may be one word for a "sign" that proves something and a different word for a "sign" that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [covenant](#), [circumcise](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:18-19
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14
- Genesis 09:12
- John 02:18
- Luke 02:12
- Mark 08:12
- Psalms 089:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H926, H2368, H2865, H3824, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5162, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, H7725, H8074, H8540, G364, G1271, G1382, G1730, G1732, G1770, G1839, G2298, G4102, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5059, H5172, G5280, G5480, G5590

Forms Found in the English ULB:

demonstration, evidence, mark, marker, omen, omens, proof, remind, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, reminds, sign, signal, signal flag, signs

silver**Related Ideas:**

money

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:06

- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

Forms Found in the English ULB:

money, silver

sin

Related Ideas:

sinful, sinner

Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
- To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
- Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebellious against God."
- Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
- The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
- Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
- In expressions like "slaves to sin" or "ruled by sin," the term "sin" could be translated as "disobedience" or "evil desires and actions."
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
- The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), [tax](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07

- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23
- Romans 08:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H6588, H7683, H7686, G93, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

Forms Found in the English ULB:

sin, sinful, sinned, sinner, sinners, sinning, sins

slaughter

Definition:

The term "slaughter" refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called "slaughter."

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- "Weapons of slaughter" could be translated as "weapons for killing."
- The expression "the slaughter was very great" could be translated as "a large number were killed" or "the number of deaths was very great" or "a terribly high number of people died."
- Other ways to translate "slaughter" could include "kill" or "slay" or "killing."

(See also: [angel](#), [cow](#), [disobey](#), [Ezekiel](#), [servant](#), [slain](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 07:01
- Isaiah 34:02
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G2871, G4967, G4969

Forms Found in the English ULB:

slaughter, slaughtered, slaughtering, slaughters

son**Definition:**

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- "Son" was often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term "son" can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger than the speaker.
- Sometimes "sons of God" was used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God called Israel his "firstborn son." This refers to God's choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God's message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase "son of" often has the figurative meaning "person having the characteristics of." Examples of this include "sons of the light," "sons of disobedience," "a son of peace," and "sons of thunder."
- The phrase "son of" is also used to tell who a person's father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using "son of" to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, "Azariah son of Zadok" and "Azariah son of Nathan" in 1 Kings 4, and "Azariah son of Amaziah" in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate "son" by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term "Son of God," the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term "descendant" could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the "descendant of David" or in genealogies where sometimes "son" referred to a male descendant who was not an actual son.
- Sometimes "sons" can be translated as "children," when both males and females are being referred to. For example, "sons of God" could be translated as "children of God" since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression "son of" could also be translated as "someone who has the characteristics of" or "someone who is like" or "someone who has" or "someone who acts like."

(See also: [Azariah](#), [descendant](#), [father](#), [firstborn](#), [Son of God](#), [sons of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1247, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

Forms Found in the English ULB:

son, son's, sons

soul

Related Ideas:

person

Definition:

The soul is the inner, invisible part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person. It is the part of a person that continues living after the body dies.

- The terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means "I am tired."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
- In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
- Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:08
- Acts 02:27-28
- Acts 02:41
- Genesis 49:06
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 01:21
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Jonah 02:7-8
- Luke 01:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 019:07
- Revelation 20:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5315, G5590

Forms Found in the English ULB:

person, persons, soul, souls

spear

Related Ideas:

javelin, spearmen

Definition:

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

- Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
- A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
- Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
- Similar weapons are the "javelin" or "lance." A javelin is a light spear that is thrown.
- Make sure that the translation of "spear" is different from the translation of "sword," which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: [prey](#), [Rome](#), [sword](#), [warrior](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 13:19-21
- 2 Samuel 21:19
- Nehemiah 04:12-14
- Psalm 035:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1265, H2595, H3591, H4294, H6767, H7013, H7420, G3057

Forms Found in the English ULB:

javelin, spear, spearmen, spears

spirit**Related Ideas:**

ghost, spiritual

Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
- Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."

- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The figurative expression "spiritual milk" could also be translated as "basic teachings from God" or "God's teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does)."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives"

(See also: [angel](#), [demon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [soul](#), [divination](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G4861, G5326, G5427

Forms Found in the English ULB:

ghost, spirit, spirits, spiritual, spiritually

staff

Related Ideas:

club, walking stick

Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.
- A club is a thick, heavy stick used as a weapon to beat people.

(See also: [Pharaoh](#), [power](#), [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 04:1-3
- Exodus 07:09
- Luke 09:03
- Mark 06:7-9
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 27:29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4132, H4294, H4731, H4938, H6418, H7626, G2563, G3586, G4464

Forms Found in the English ULB:

clubs, staff, staffs, walking stick, walking sticks

statute**Definition:**

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term "statute" is similar in meaning to "ordinance" and "command" and "law" and "decree." All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh's statutes.
- The term "statute" could also be translated as "specific command" or "special decree."

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [law of Moses](#), [ordinance](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 06:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H2708, H7010, G1345

Forms Found in the English ULB:

statute, statutes

stone**Definition:**

A stone is a small rock. To "stone" someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A "stoning" is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: [adultery](#), [commit](#), [crime](#), [death](#), [Lystra](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:57-58
- Acts 07:59-60
- Acts 14:05
- Acts 14:19-20
- John 08:4-6

- Luke 13:34
- Luke 20:06
- Matthew 23:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H68, H69, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H4676, H4678, H5619, H6443, H6697, H6872, H7275, H7671, G2642, G2991, G3034, G3035, G3036, G3037, G4348, G5586

Forms Found in the English ULB:

stone, stoned, stones, stoning

strength

Related Ideas:

strengthen, strong, stronger, strongest

Definitions:

The term "strength" refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To "strengthen" someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- "Strength" can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has "strength of will" if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his "strength" because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being "strengthened," people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term "strengthen" can be translated as "cause to be strong" or "make more powerful."
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase "strengthen your brothers" could also be translated as "encourage your brothers" or "help your brothers to persevere."
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms in longer expressions and how they can be translated.
- "puts strength on me like a belt" means "causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist."
- "in quietness and trust will be your strength" means "acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong."
- "will renew their strength" means "will become stronger again."
- "by my strength and by my wisdom I acted" means "I have done all this because I am so strong and wise."
- "strengthen the wall" means "reinforce the wall" or "rebuild the wall."
- "I will strengthen you" means "I will cause you to be strong"
- "in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength" means "Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us."
- "the rock of your strength" means "the faithful one who makes you strong"
- "with the saving strength of his right hand" means "he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand."
- "of little strength" means "not very strong" or "weak."
- "with all my strength" means "using my best efforts" or "strongly and completely."

(See also: [faithful](#), [persevere](#), [right hand](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21

- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1368, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2389, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4392, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5794, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6099, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8623, H8624, H8631, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1415, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

Forms Found in the English ULB:

become strong, made ... strong, made ... stronger, make ... strong, makes ... strong, strength, strengthen, strengthened, strengthening, strengthens, strong, stronger, strongest

strong drink

Definition:

The term "strong drink" refers to drinks that have been fermented and have alcohol in them.

- Alcoholic drinks are made from either grain or fruit and have undergone fermentation.
- Kinds of "strong drink" include grape wine, palm wine, beer, and apple cider. Distilled alcoholic drinks had not been invented yet. In the Bible, grape wine was the most frequently mentioned strong drink.
- Priests and anyone who took a special vow such as the "Nazirite vow" were not permitted to drink fermented drinks.
- This term could also be translated as "fermented drink" or "alcoholic drink."

(See also: [grape](#), [Nazirite](#), [vow](#), [wine](#))

Bible References:

- Isaiah 05:11-12
- Leviticus 10:09
- Luke 01:14-15
- Numbers 06:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5435, H7941, H8248, G4608

Forms Found in the English ULB:

strong drink, strong drinks

stronghold

Related Ideas:

battlement, city wall, fortification, fortified, fortress

Definition:

The terms "stronghold" and "fortress" both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term "fortified" describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses were manmade structures with defensive walls. They could also have been places with natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.

- People fortified strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that made it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- "Stronghold" or "fortress" could be translated as "securely strong place" or "strongly protected place."
- The term "fortified city" could be translated as "securely protected city" or "strongly built city."
- These ideas were also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him.
- Another figurative meaning for the term "stronghold" referred to something that someone wrongly trusted in for security, such as a false god or other thing that was worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as "false strongholds."
- This term should be translated differently from "refuge," which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.
- A "city wall" was tall, strong wall around a city that was meant to keep enemies out of the city.
- A "battlement" is a low wall along the top of a city wall that soldiers could hide behind and shoot through at their enemies below.

(See also: [god](#), [god](#), [refuge](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:04
- 2 Kings 08:10-12
- 2 Samuel 05:8-10
- Acts 21:35
- Habakkuk 01:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H759, H1001, H1002, H1003, H1219, H1225, H2388, H4013, H4026, H4581, H4526, H4679, H4685, H4686, H4692, H4694, H4869, H5794, H5797, H5800, H6438, H7682, G3794, G3925

Forms Found in the English ULB:

battlements, city wall, fortifications, fortified, fortress, fortresses, stronghold, strongholds

stumble

Related Ideas:

reel

Definition:

The term "stumble" means "almost fall" when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

- Figuratively, to "stumble" can mean to "sin" or to "falter" in believing.
- This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.
- "Stumble" can also be used figuratively to mean "sin" or "stop believing."
- The word "reel" means to lose one's balance and have trouble walking.

Translation Suggestions

- In contexts where the term "stumble" means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means "almost fall" or "trip over."
- When stumble is used figuratively it could also be translated as "become weak" or "stumble by sinning" or "stumble by not believing."
- The phrase "made to stumble" could be translated as "caused to become weak" or "caused to falter."

(See also: [believe](#), [persecute](#), [sin](#), [stumbling block](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 02:08
- Hosea 04:05
- Isaiah 31:3
- Matthew 11:4-6
- Matthew 18:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1762, H3782, H4383, H5062, H5063, H5307, H6328, H6761, H8058, G679, G4348, G4350, G4417, G4624, G4625

Forms Found in the English ULB:

causes ... to stumble, reeling, stumble, stumbled, stumbles, stumbling

sword

Related Ideas:

dagger, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.
- A "dagger" is a short sword used to stab people who are close by.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain.
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 12:02
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 02:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 01:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

Forms Found in the English ULB:

dagger, sword, swords, swordsmen

tax**Related Ideas:**

tax collector, taxation, taxpayers, toll

Definition:

The terms "tax" and "taxes" refer to money or goods that people pay to a government that is in authority over them. A "tax collector" was a government worker whose job was to receive money that people were required to pay the government in taxes.

- The amount of money that is paid as a tax is usually based on the value of an item or on how much a person's property is worth.
- In the time of Jesus and the apostles, the Roman government required taxes from everyone living in the Roman empire, including the Jews.
- If taxes are not paid, the government can take legal action against a person to get the money that is owed.
- Joseph and Mary traveled to Bethlehem to be counted in the census held to tax everyone living in the Roman empire.
- The term "tax" could also be translated as, "required payment" or "government money" or "temple money," depending on the context.
- To "pay taxes" could also be translated as to "pay money to the government" or "receive money for the government" or "make the required payment." To "collect taxes" could be translated as to "receive money for the government."
- A "tax collector" is someone who works for the government and receives the money that people are required to pay it.
- The people who collected taxes for the Roman government would often demand more money from the people than the government required. The tax collectors would keep the extra amount for themselves.
- Because tax collectors cheated people in this way, the Jews considered them to be among the worst of sinners.
- The Jews also considered Jewish tax collectors to be traitors to their own people because they worked for the Roman government which was oppressing the Jewish people.
- The phrase, "tax collectors and sinners" was a common expression in the New Testament, showing how much the Jews despised tax collectors.
- A "toll" is a tax for using a road or a tax on things that people buy or sell.

(See also: [Jew](#), [Rome](#), [sin](#))

Bible References

- Luke 20:21-22
- Mark 02:13-14
- Matthew 09:7-9
- Numbers 31:28-29
- Romans 13:6-7
- Luke 03:12-13
- Luke 05:27-28
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Matthew 09:10-11
- Matthew 11:18-19
- Matthew 17:26-27
- Matthew 18:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1093, H1983, H2670, H4060, H4371, H4522, H4864, H5065, H5674, H6186, G1323, G2778, G5057, G5058, G5411

Forms Found in the English ULB:

tax, tax collector, tax collectors, taxation, taxed, taxes, taxing, taxpayers, toll, tolls

teach

Related Ideas:

educated, teaching, untaught

Definition:

To "teach" someone is to tell him something he doesn't already know. It can also mean to "provide information" in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person's "teaching" is or his "teachings" are what he has taught.

- A "teacher" is someone who teaches. The past action of "teach" is "taught."
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus' disciples called him "Teacher" as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The phrase "what you have been taught" could also be translated as, "what these people have taught you" or "what God has taught you," depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate "teach" could include "tell" or "explain" or "instruct."
- Often this term can be translated as "teaching people about God."
- A person who is "educated" has been taught formally.
- A person who is "untaught" has not been taught.
- A "teaching" is the information that someone teaches.

(See also: [instruct](#), [teacher](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:03
- Acts 02:40-42
- John 07:14
- Luke 04:31
- Matthew 04:23
- Psalms 032:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H502, H995, H2094, H2449, H2596, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, H8451, G1317, G1319, G1321, G1322, G2085, G2605, G2727, G2312, G2567, G3811

Forms Found in the English ULB:

educated, taught, teach, teaches, teaching, teachings, untaught

temple

Related Ideas:

shrine

Definitions:

A temple is a special building in which people worship their god or gods. The most important temple in the Bible was where the Israelites worshiped the true God with prayers and sacrifices. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term "temple" referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term "temple of the Holy Spirit" is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.
- A "shrine" is a small place where people worship or an object of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were "in the temple," it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as "in the temple courtyards" or "in the temple complex."
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate "temple" as "temple building," to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate "temple" could include, "God's holy house" or "sacred worship place."
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as "the house of Yahweh" or "the house of God."

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [court](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 03:02
- Acts 03:08
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 079:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1002, H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3624, G3485

Forms Found in the English ULB:

shrine, shrines, temple, temples

tempt**Related Ideas:**

temptation, tempter

Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong."
- To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: [disobey](#), [Satan](#), [sin](#), [test](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
- Hebrews 04:15
- James 01:13
- Luke 04:02
- Luke 11:04
- Matthew 26:41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4531, H5254, G551, G3985, G3986, G3987

Forms Found in the English ULB:

tempt, temptation, tempted, tempter, tempting

tent**Related Ideas:**

camp, encamp, tentmaker

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constructed from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies."
- To "camp" is to sleep in tents or other temporary shelters.
- To "encamp" is for an army to set up camp near a place they will attack.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Canaan](#), [curtain](#), [Paul](#), [Sinai](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent of meeting](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:10
- Daniel 11:45
- Exodus 16:18
- Genesis 12:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H167, H168, H2918, H3407, H4908, H6898, G3925, G4633, G4636

Forms Found in the English ULB:

camp, camped, camping, camps, encamp, encamped, encampments, encamps, tent, tentmakers, tents

tent of meeting

Definitions:

The term "tent of meeting" refers to a tent which was a temporary place where God met with Moses before the tabernacle was built.

- The tent of meeting was set up outside the camp of the Israelites.
- When Moses went into the tent of meeting to meet with God, a pillar of cloud would stand at the entrance to the tent as a sign of God's presence there.
- After the Israelites built the tabernacle, the temporary tent was no longer needed and the term "tent of meeting" was sometimes used to refer to the tabernacle.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Moses](#), [pillar](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:28-29
- Joshua 19:51
- Leviticus 01:02
- Numbers 04:31-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H168, H4150

Forms Found in the English ULB:

tent of meeting

tenth

Related Ideas:

tithe

Definition:

The terms "tenth" and "tithe" refer to "ten percent" or "one-out-of-ten portion" of one's money, crops, livestock, or other possessions, which is given to God.

- In the Old Testament, God instructed the Israelites to set aside a tenth of their belongings to give as an offering of thanksgiving to him.
- This offering was used to support the Levite tribe of Israel who served the Israelites as priests and caretakers of the tabernacle and later, the temple.
- In the New Testament, God does not require giving a tithe, but instead he instructs believers to generously and cheerfully help people in need and support the work of Christian ministry.
- This could also be translated as "one-tenth" or "one out of ten."

(See also: [believe](#), [Israel](#), [Levi](#), [livestock](#), [Melchizedek](#), [minister](#), [sacrifice](#) [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 14:19-20

- Genesis 28:20-22
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- Isaiah 06:13
- Luke 11:42
- Luke 18:11-12
- Matthew 23:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4643, H6237, H6241, G586, G1181, G1183

Forms Found in the English ULB:

tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes

terror

Related Ideas:

panic, terrible, terrify, terrorize

Definition:

The term "terror" refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To "terrify" someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A "terror" is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as "terrifying." This term could be translated as, "fear-causing" or "terror-producing."
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The "terror of Yahweh" could be translated as "the terrifying presence of Yahweh" or "the dreaded judgment of Yahweh" or "when Yahweh causes great fear."
- Ways to translate "terror" could also include "extreme fear" or "deep dread."
- To "terrorize" people means to do things that cause them to be extremely afraid.
- The word "panic" refers to a sudden strong fear that may cause people to do things without thinking clearly about the situation.

(See also: [adversary](#), [fear](#), [judge](#), [plague](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 02:25
- Exodus 14:10
- Luke 21:09
- Mark 06:48-50

Word Data:

- Strong's: H366, H367, H926, H928, H1091, H1161, H1204, H1205, H1763, H2111, H2113, H2189, H2729, H2731, H2847, H2851, H2865, H3372, H3707, H4032, H4172, H4288, H4637, H6184, H6206, H6343, H6973, H7374, G1629, G1630, G1719, G4422, G4426, G5400, G5401

Forms Found in the English ULB:

panic, terrible, terrified, terrify, terrifying, terrifying events, terrifying thing, terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors

test**Related Ideas:**

put to the test

Definition:

The term "test" refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person's strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people's sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To "put to the test" can mean, "challenge something or someone to prove its value."
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "test" could also be translated as, to "challenge" or to "cause to experience difficulties" or to "prove."
- Ways to translate "a test" could be, "a challenge" or "a difficult experience."
- To "put to the test" could be translated as to "test" or to "set up a challenge" or to "force to prove oneself."
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, "trying to force God to prove his love."
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term "test" can mean "tempt."

(See also: [tempt](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:01
- 1 Thessalonians 05:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:01
- Isaiah 07:13
- James 01:12
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Malachi 03:10
- Philippians 01:10
- Psalm 026:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1305, H2713, H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G350, G1252, G1263, G1381, G1382, G1598, G1957, G2983, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G3985, G3986, G4451, G4828

Forms Found in the English ULB:

put ... to the test, test, tested, testing, tests

the sea

Facts:

In the Bible, the "Great Sea" or "western sea" refers to what is now called the "Mediterranean Sea," which was the largest body of water known to the people of Bible times.

- The Mediterranean Sea is bordered by : Israel (east), Europe (north and west), and Africa (south).
- This sea was very important in ancient times for trade and travel since it bordered so many countries. Cities and people groups located on the coast of this sea were very prosperous because of how easy it was to access goods from other countries by boat.
- Since the Great Sea was located to the west of Israel, it was sometimes referred to as the "western sea."

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#), [prosper](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 47:15-17
- Ezekiel 47:18-20
- Joshua 15:3-4
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H314, H1419, H3220

Forms Found in the English ULB:

the sea, the Great Sea, the western sea, Mediterranean Sea

thresh

Related Ideas:

beat out

Definition:

The terms "thresh" and "threshing" refer to the first part of the process of separating wheat grain from the rest of the wheat plant.

- Threshing the wheat plant loosens the grain from the straw and the chaff. Afterwards the grain is "winnowed" to completely separate the grain from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a "threshing floor" was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A "threshing cart" or "threshing wheel" was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A "threshing sledge" or "threshing board" was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.
- To "beat out" is to separate the grain from the straw either by spreading the stalks on the ground and hitting them with a stick or board or by holding the base of a bundle of stalks and hitting the heads on a hard surface.

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#), [winnow](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:07
- 2 Samuel 24:16

- Daniel 02:35
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Ruth 03:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, H2742, G248

Forms Found in the English ULB:

beat ... out, beaten ... out, floors for threshing, thresh, threshed, threshes, threshing, threshing floor, threshing sledges

threshold

Related Ideas:

doorway

Definition:

The term "threshold" refers to the bottom part of a doorway or the part of a building that is just inside the door.

- Sometimes a threshold is a strip of wood or stone that must be stepped over in order to enter a room or building.
- Both a gate and the opening to a tent can also have a threshold.
- This term should be translated with a term in the project language that refers to the place at the very entrance to a home that a person steps across.
- If there is no term for this, "threshold" could also be translated as "doorway" or "opening" or "entranceway," depending on the context.

(See also: [gate](#), [tent](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:17-19
- Ezekiel 09:03
- Isaiah 06:04
- Proverbs 17:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4670, H5592

Forms Found in the English ULB:

doorways, threshold, thresholds

time

Definitions:

In the Bible the term "time" was often used to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to "age" or "epoch" or "season."

- In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a "time" of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase "time, times, and half a time" the term "time" means "year." This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.

- "Time" can mean "occasion" in a phrase like "third time." The phrase "many times" can mean "on many occasions."
- To be "on time" means to do something when expected or needed, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term "time" could be translated as, "season" or "time period" or "moment" or "event" or "occurrence."

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 01:07
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 08:29
- Psalms 068:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H116, H227, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H4592, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8160, H8462, H8543, G744, G530, G1074, G1208, G1441, G1597, G1626, G2034, G2119, G2121, G2250, G2540, G3461, G3568, G3764, G3819, G3999, G4181, G4183, G4218, G4287, G4340, G4455, G5151, G5305, G5550, G5551, G5610

Forms Found in the English ULB:

time, times

tomb

Related Ideas:

burial place, grave, gravediggers

Definition:

The terms "tomb" and "grave" refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A "burial place" is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews buried bodies in natural caves, in caves that they dug in the side of a hill, or in holes that they dug in the ground.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If in the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include "cave" or "hole in the side of a hill."
- A gravedigger is a person who digs a grave to put a dead body in it.
- The phrase "the grave" is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [death](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 23:06
- Genesis 50:05
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 05:1-2
- Matthew 27:53

- Romans 03:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G3418, G3419, G5028

Forms Found in the English ULB:

burial place, grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs

torment

Related Ideas:

tormentors, torture, torturer

Definitions:

The term "torment" refers to terrible suffering. To "torment" or "torture" someone means to cause that person to suffer, often in a cruel way.

- Sometimes the term "torment" refers to strong physical pain and suffering. For example, the book of Revelation describes physical torment that worshipers of the "beast" will suffer in the end times.
- Sometimes the term "torment" refers to strong spiritual and emotional pain, as experienced by Job.
- The apostle John wrote in the book of Revelation that people who do not believe in Jesus as their Savior will experience eternal torment in the lake of fire.
- The term "torment" could be translated as "terrible suffering" or "cause someone to suffer greatly" or "agony." Some translators may add "physical" or "spiritual" to make the meaning clear.
- A "tormentor" or a "torturer" is someone who torments or tortures other people.

(See also: [beast](#), [eternity](#), [Job](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#), [suffer](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:08
- Jeremiah 30:20-22
- Lamentations 01:11-12
- Luke 08:28-29
- Revelation 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3013, H6735, G928, G929, G930, G931, G3600

Forms Found in the English ULB:

torment, tormented, tormenting, tormentors, torture, torturers

tremble

Related Ideas:

shake

Definition:

To "tremble" means to shake or quiver out of fear or extreme distress.

- This term is also used figuratively to mean "be very afraid."
- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to "tremble." It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.

- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as "be afraid" or "fear God" or "shake," depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [lord](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 07:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 05:22
- Luke 08:47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5425, H5568, H6206, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, G1790, G4579, G5141, G5156, G5425

Forms Found in the English ULB:

shake, shakes, shook, tremble, trembled, trembles, trembling

trespass

Definition:

To "trespass" means to break a law or to violate the rights of another person. A "trespass" is the action of "trespassing."

- A trespass can be a violation of moral or civil law or a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms "sin," and "transgress," especially as it relates to disobeying God.
- All sins are trespasses against God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to "trespass against" could be translated as to "sin against" or to "break the rule."
- Some languages may have an expression like "cross the line" that could be used to translate "trespass."
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as "transgress" and "sin."

(See also: [disobey](#), [iniquity](#), [sin](#), [transgress](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 25:28
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- Colossians 02:13
- Ephesians 02:01
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Romans 05:17
- Romans 05:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H819, H4604, H6588, G264, G3900

Forms Found in the English ULB:

trespass, trespassed, trespasses

tribe**Related Ideas:**

tribal

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 02:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H4294, H4940, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

Forms Found in the English ULB:

tribal, tribe, tribes

trouble**Related Ideas:**

troublesome

Definition:

A "trouble" is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To "trouble" someone means to "bother" that person or to cause him distress. Something that is "troubling" causes people to feel distressed. Someone who is troublesome causes problems. To be "troubled" means to feel upset or anxious or distressed about something.

A "tumult" is a group of people making much noise because they are troubled or unhappy.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of "trouble" also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "trouble" or "troubles" could also be translated as "danger" or "painful things that happen" or "persecution" or "difficult experiences" or "distress."

- The term "troubled" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "undergoing distress" or "feeling terrible distress" or "worried" or "anxious" or "distressed" or "terrified" or "disturbed."
- "Don't trouble her" could also be translated as "don't bother her" or "don't criticize her."
- The phrase "day of trouble" or "times of trouble" could also be translated as "when you experience distress" or "when difficult things happen to you" or "when God causes distressing things to happen."
- Ways to translate "make trouble" or "bring trouble" could include "cause distressing things to happen" or "cause difficulties" or "make them experience very difficult things."

(See also: [afflict](#), [persecute](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:06
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1672, H2196, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6087, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G318, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G2906, G3636, G3926, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

Forms Found in the English ULB:

trouble, troubled, troubles, troublesome, troubling

true

Related Ideas:

certain, certainly, certainty, indeed, real, sure, surely, truly, truth, truthful, truthfulness, truths

Definition:

The term "truth" refers to one or more concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said. Such concepts are said to be "true."

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- The word "truly" is used to emphasize what the speaker is saying. "Truly" is sometimes translated as "surely" or "certainly."
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- God's word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.
- The word "certainty" refers to a truth about which one can be certain that it is true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
- Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
- The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
- The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."

- To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), [understand](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:08
- 3 John 01:08
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:06
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:18
- James 03:14
- James 05:19
- Jeremiah 04:02
- John 01:9
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H530, H543, H551, H571, H3330, H5229, H6664, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G281, G803, G804, G1103, G3483, G4103, G4137, G5198, G5199

Forms Found in the English ULB:

certainly, certainty, for certain, indeed, real, sure, surely, true, truly, truth, truthful, truthfulness, truths

turn

Related Ideas:

apostasy, apostate

Definition:

To "turn" means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term "turn" can also mean "turn around" to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To "turn back" or "turn away" means to "go back" or "go away" or "cause to go away."
- To "turn away from" something can mean either to stop doing it or to not start doing it.
- To "turn away from" someone means either to refuse to have anything to do with him or to reject him.
- To "turn toward" someone means to look directly at that person.
- To "turn and leave" or "turn his back to leave" means to "go away."
- To "turn back to" means to "start doing something again."
- To "turn away from" means to "stop doing something."
- To "avoid" something is to stay away from it.
- "Apostasy" is the act of turning away from God.
- An "act of apostasy" is an action that someone does to show that he no longer wants to obey God or because he no longer obeys God.
- The term "apostate" describes people who have turned away from God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "turn" can be translated as "change direction" or "go" or "move."
- In some contexts, "turn" could be translated as "cause" (someone) to do something. To "turn (someone) away from" could be translated as "cause (someone) to go away" or "cause (someone) to stop."
- The phrase "turn away from God" could be translated as "stop worshiping God."
- The phrase "turn back to God" could be translated as "start worshiping God again."
- When enemies "turn back," it means they "retreat." To "turn back the enemy" means to "cause the enemy to retreat."
- Used figuratively, when Israel "turned to" false gods, they "started to worship" them. When they "turned away" from idols, they "stopped worshiping" them.
- When God "turned away from" his rebellious people, he "stopped protecting" or "stopped helping" them.
- The phrase "turn the hearts of the fathers to their children" could be translated as "cause fathers to care for their children again."
- The expression "turn my honor into shame" could be translated as "cause my honor to become shame" or "dishonor me so that I am shamed" or "shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me."
- "I will turn your cities into ruin" could be translated as "I will cause your cities to be destroyed" or "I will cause enemies to destroy your cities."
- The phrase "turn into" could be translated as "become." When Moses' rod "turned into" a snake, it "became" a snake." It could also be translated as "changed into."

(See also: [god](#), [leper](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:02
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 11:21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 01:17
- Malachi 04:06
- Revelation 11:06

Word Data:

- Strong's: H541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3363, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G344, G387, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1994, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3346, G4762, G5157, G5290

Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts of apostasy, apostasy, apostate, turn, turn ... away, turned, turned ... away, turned ... away ... in disgust, turned ... back, turning, turning ... away, turns, turns ... away, turns ... away from

unleavened bread

Definition:

The term "unleavened bread" refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, "unleavened bread" represents the removal of sin from a person's life in order to live in a way that honors God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include "bread with no yeast" or "flat bread that did not rise."
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term "yeast, leaven."
- In some contexts, the term "unleavened bread" refers to the "Feast of Unleavened Bread" and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), [feast](#), [Passover](#), [servant](#), [sin](#), [yeast](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:03
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 06:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 06:21
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Luke 22:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4682, G106

Forms Found in the English ULB:

unleavened bread

vain**Related Ideas:**

for no reason, for nothing, futile, futility, meaningless, of no value, useless, vanity

Definition:

The term "vain" describes things that are useless or have no purpose. Vain things are worthless.

- The term "vanity" refers to worthlessness. It can also refer to pride or arrogance.
- In the Old Testament, idols are described as vain things that cannot deliver or save. They are worthless and have no use or purpose.
- If something was done "in vain," it means that there was no good result from it. The effort or action did not accomplish anything. It was futile.
- To "believe in vain" means to believe in something that is not true and that gives false hope.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "vain" could be translated as "empty" or "useless" or "futile" or "worthless" or "meaningless" or "of no value."
- The phrase "in vain" could be translated as "without result" or "with no result" or "for no reason" or "with no purpose."
- The term "vanity" could be translated as "pride" or "nothing worthwhile" or "hopelessness."

(See also: [god](#), [worthy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22

- 2 Peter 02:18
- Isaiah 45:19
- Jeremiah 02:29-31
- Matthew 15:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1891, H1892, H2600, H7307, H7385, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G255, G512, G692, G889, G945, G1500, G2756, G2757, G2758, G2761, G3151, G3152, G3153, G3155

Forms Found in the English ULB:

for no reason, for nothing, futile, futility, meaningless, of no value, useless, uselessly, vain, vain plans, vanity, without meaning

vine

Related Ideas:

grapevine

Definition:

The term "vine" refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word "vine" in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word "vine" almost always means "grapevine."
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the "vine" and called his people the "branches." In this context, the word "vine" could also be translated as "grapevine stem" or "grape plant stem."

(See also: [grape](#), [vineyard](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:09
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:01
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:03
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009

Forms Found in the English ULB:

grapevine, vine, vines

vineyard

Related Ideas:

vine grower

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit.
- Vineyard could be also translated as "grapevine garden" or "grape plantation."
- A vine grower is a person who works in a vineyard.

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [vine](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:20-21
- Luke 13:06
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:02
- Matthew 21:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G290

Forms Found in the English ULB:

vine growers, vineyard, vineyards

vision

Definitions:

The term "vision" refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase "saw a vision" could be translated as "saw something unusual from God" or "God showed him something special."
- Some languages may not have separate words for "vision" and "dream." So a sentence such as "Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind" could be translated as something like "Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things."

(See also: [dream](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 09:10-12
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 10:11
- Acts 12:9-10
- Luke 01:22
- Luke 24:23
- Matthew 17:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G3701, G3705, G3706

Forms Found in the English ULB:

vision, visions

voice**Related Ideas:**

rumbling, sound

Definition:

The term "voice" refers to sound that a person makes when speaking or singing. The term "voice" is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn't have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert...."
- To "hear someone's voice" could also be translated as "hear someone speaking."
- Sometimes the word "voice" is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the "voice" of the heavens proclaims God's mighty works. This could also be translated as "their splendor shows clearly how great God is."

(See also: [call](#), [preach](#), [splendor](#))

Bible References:

- John 05:36-38
- Luke 01:42
- Luke 09:35
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

Forms Found in the English ULB:

rumblings, sound, sounds, voice, voices

vow**Definition:**

A vow is a promise that a person makes to God. The person promises to do a certain thing in order to specially honor God or to show devotion to him.

- After a person makes a vow, he is obligated to fulfill that vow.
- The Bible teaches that a person may be judged by God if he doesn't keep his vow.
- Sometimes a person may ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow.
- But God is not required to fulfill a request that a person asks for in his vow.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "vow" could be translated as "solemn promise" or "promise made to God."
- A vow is a special kind of oath that is made to God.

(See also: [promise](#), [oath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 07:27-28
- Acts 21:23
- Genesis 28:21
- Genesis 31:12-13
- Jonah 01:14-16
- Jonah 02:9-10
- Proverbs 07:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5087, H5088, G2171

Forms Found in the English ULB:

vow, vowed, vows

walk

Definition:

The term "walk" is often used in a figurative sense to mean "live."

- "Enoch walked with God" means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To "walk by the Spirit" means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To "walk in" God's commands or God's ways means to "live in obedience to" his commands, that is, to "obey his commands" or "do his will."
- When God says he will "walk among" his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To "walk contrary to" means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To "walk after" means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate "walk" literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of "walk" could also be translated by "live" or "act" or "behave."
- The phrase "walk by the Spirit" could be translated by, "live in obedience to the Holy Spirit" or "behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit" or "do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you."
- To "walk in God's commands" could be translated by "live by God's commands" or "obey God's commands."
- The phrase "walked with God" could be translated as, "lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [honor](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:04
- Colossians 02:07
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 17:01
- Isaiah 02:05
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 04:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4748

Forms Found in the English ULB:

walk, walk around, walked, walking, walking around, walks

watch

Related Ideas:

keep watch, watch out, watchful, watchman

Definition:

The term "watch" means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings.

- To "keep watch" or "keep close watch" can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- To "watch out" means to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To "be watchful" means to be alert and aware of what is happening.
- A "watchman" was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

These ideas can also be used figuratively.

- To "watch" or "keep watch" means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to "be ready."
- The command to "watch your life and doctrine closely" means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways of translating "watch" could include "pay close attention to" or "be diligent" or "be very careful" or "be on guard."
- Other words for "watchman" are "sentry" or "guard."

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H821, H2370, H4931, H5027, H5234, H5341, H6486, H6485, H6822, H6836, H7181, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1983, G2334, G2657, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5426, G5438, G5442

Forms Found in the English ULB:

keep ... watch, kept ... watch, watch, watch out, watched, watchful, watching, watchman, watchmen

water

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, "water" also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term "waters" refers to bodies of water or many sources of water.
- The term "waters" can also be a general reference to a large amount of water.
- To "water" livestock and other animals means to provide water for them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- The phrase "draw water" means "pull water up from a well with a bucket."

Translation Suggestions:

- "Streams of living water will flow from them" could be translated as "the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water." Instead of "blessings" the term "gifts" or "fruits" or "godly character" could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase "living water" could be translated as "water that gives life" or "lifegiving water." In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term "waters" or "many waters" could be translated as "great suffering (that surrounds you like water)" or "overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)" or "large amounts of water."

(See also: [life](#), [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 08:36-38
- Exodus 14:21
- John 04:10
- John 04:14
- John 04:15
- Matthew 14:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2222, H3384, H4325, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

Forms Found in the English ULB:

water, watered, watering, waters

well

Related Ideas:

cistern

Definition:

The terms "well" and "cistern" refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

- A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
- A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
- Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A "broken cistern" happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
- Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people's homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.

- Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
- Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
- Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
- Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.
- These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "well" could include "deep water hole" or "deep hole for spring water" or "deep hole for drawing water."
- The term "cistern" could be translated as "stone water pit" or "deep and narrow pit for water" or "underground tank for holding water."

(See also: [Jeremiah](#), [prison](#), [strife](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:17
- 2 Samuel 17:17-18
- Genesis 16:14
- Luke 14:4-6
- Numbers 20:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H875, H953, H1360, H4002, H4599, H4726, H4841, G4077, G5421

Forms Found in the English ULB:

cistern, cisterns, well, wells

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions "grain" or "seeds," it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called "straw" and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: [barley](#), [chaff](#), [grain](#), [seed](#), [thresh](#), [winnow](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Matthew 13:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H2406, G4621

Forms Found in the English ULB:

wheat

wine

Related Ideas:

new wine, wineskin

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "wine" refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in "wineskins," which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term "new wine" referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term "wine" also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.

Translation Suggestions:

- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as "fermented grape juice" or "fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes" or "fermented fruit juice."
- Ways to translate "wineskin" could include "bag for wine" or "animal skin wine bag" or "animal skin container for wine."

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [winepress](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:23
- Genesis 09:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

Forms Found in the English ULB:

new wine, wine, wines, wineskin, wineskins

wise**Related Ideas:**

wisdom, wisely, wiser, wisest

Definition:

The term "wise" describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. "Wisdom" is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.
- "Sound wisdom" is wisdom that enables people who have it to succeed in doing good.
- In the Bible, the phrase "worldly wisdom" refers to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "wise" could include "obedient to God" or "sensible and obedient" or "God-fearing."
- "Wisdom" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "wise living" or "sensible and obedient living" or "good judgment."
- It is best to translate "wise" and "wisdom" in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#), [fruit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 06:03
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Exodus 31:06
- Genesis 03:06
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 07:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H1847, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3925 H6195, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429

Forms Found in the English ULB:

sound wisdom, wisdom, wise, wisely, wiser, wisest

womb**Related Ideas:**

pregnant

Definition:

The term "womb" refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct.
- A more modern term for womb is "uterus."
- Some languages use a word like "belly" to refer to a woman's womb or uterus.

- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.
- A woman is pregnant" if she has a baby growing her her womb."

Picture showing location of a Womb:

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:23
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 38:27-28
- Genesis 49:25
- Luke 02:21
- Luke 11:27
- Luke 23:29
- Matthew 19:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H990, H2030, H4578, H7356, H7358, G1064, G2836, G3388

Forms Found in the English ULB:

pregnant, womb, wombs

word

Definition:

A "word" refers to something that someone has said. In the Bible, it almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.

- An example of this is when the angel told Zechariah, "You did not believe my words," which means, "You did not believe what I said."
- Sometimes "word" refers to speech in general, such as "powerful in word and deed" which means "powerful in speech and behavior."
- Often in the Bible "the word" refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in "the word of God" or "the word of truth."
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called "the Word." For these last two meanings, see [word of God](#)

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating "word" or "words" include "teaching" or "message" or "news" or "a saying" or "what was said."

(See also: [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:02
- Acts 08:04
- Colossians 04:03
- James 01:18
- Jeremiah 27:04
- John 01:03
- John 01:14
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 02:08
- Matthew 07:27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H2656, H2706, H4405, H4406, H7878, H8052, G518, G1024, G1310, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G5023, G5537, G5542

Forms Found in the English ULB:

word, words, message, messages

work

Related Ideas:

act, deed, fellow worker

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "work," "deed," and "act" are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- God's "works" and the "work of his hands" are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms "deeds" and "acts" are also used to refer to God's miracles in expressions such as "mighty acts" or "marvelous deeds."
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called "good fruit."
- The term "work" can also refer to "service" or "ministry."
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- The term "fellow worker" means someone who does a ministry along with someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "works" or "deeds" could be "actions" or "things that are done."
- When referring to God's "works" or "deeds" and the "work of his hands," these expressions could also be translated as "miracles" or "mighty acts" or "amazing things he does."
- The expression "the work of God" could be translated as "the things that God is doing" or "the miracles God does" or "the amazing things that God does" or "everything God has accomplished."
- The expression "your work in the Lord" could also be translated as "what you do for the Lord."
- The expression "examine your own work" could also be translated as "make sure what you are doing is God's will" or "make sure that what you are doing pleases God."
- The expression "the work of the Holy Spirit" could be translated as "the empowering of the Holy Spirit" or "the ministry of the Holy Spirit" or "the things that the Holy Spirit does."

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:07
- Romans 03:28
- Titus 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1576, H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4639, H4659, H5673, H5949, H5998, H6213, H6466, H6468, G1754, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2716, G3173

Forms Found in the English ULB:

act, action, actions, activities, acts, deed, deeds, fellow worker, fellow workers, work, works

world**Related Ideas:**

universe, worldly

Definition:

The term "world" usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term "worldly" describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term "world" refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, "world" actually means "people in the world."
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used "world" to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be "worldly."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "world" could also be translated as "universe" or "people of this world" or "corrupt things in the world" or "evil attitudes of people in the world."
- The phrase "all the world" often means "many people" and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, "all the world came to Egypt" could be translated as "many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt" or "people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there."
- Another way to translate "all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census" would be "many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went..."
- Depending on the context, the term "worldly" could be translated as, "evil" or "sinful" or "selfish" or "ungodly" or "corrupt" or "influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world."
- The phrase "saying these things in the world" can be translated as "saying these things to the people of the world."
- In other contexts, "in the world" could also be translated as "living among the people of the world" or "living among ungodly people."

(See also: [corrupt](#), [heaven](#), [Rome](#), [godly](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15
- 1 John 04:05
- 1 John 05:05
- John 01:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H2717, H5769, H8398, G165, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

Forms Found in the English ULB:

universe, world, world's, worldly

worship

Related Ideas:

worshiper

Definition:

To "worship" means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Often people bow down when they worship someone.
- Some people worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "worship" could be translated as "bow down to" or "honor and serve" or "honor and obey."
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as "humbly praise" or "give honor and praise."

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [praise](#), [honor](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5457, H5647, H7812, G1391, G2151, G2152, G2323, G2356, G2999, G3000, G3008, H3372, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

Forms Found in the English ULB:

worship, worshiped, worshiper's, worshipers, worshiping, worships

wrath

Related Ideas:

furious, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 03:07
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 01:18
- Romans 05:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H639, H2194, H2195, H2197, H2534, H2740, H3707, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7267, G2205, G2372, G3709

Forms Found in the English ULB:

furious, fury, wrath

wrong

Related Ideas:

defraud, hurt, mistreat, wrongdoer, wrongdoing

Definition:

To "wrong" someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- Wrongdoing is the act of doing what is wrong. It can also refer to a behavior that is wrong.
- The term "defraud" means to illegally take money from someone by lying to them. Another word for this is "cheat."
- The terms "hurt" is more general and means to "cause someone harm in some way." It often has the meaning of "physically injure."
- The term "mistreat" means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as "do wrong to" or "treat unjustly" or "cause harm to" or treat in a harmful way" or "injure."

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:05
- Luke 06:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 071:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H816, H2248, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4347, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H5932, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, H8604, G91, G92, G93, G264, G824, G983, G984, G1536, G1651, G1727, G1908, G2556, G2559, G2607, G3076, G3077, G3762, G4122, G4550, G5195, G5196

Forms Found in the English ULB:

defraud, hurt, hurting, hurts, mistreat, mistreated, wrong, wrongdoer, wrongdoing, wronged, wrongfully, wronging, wrongs

year

Definition:

When used literally, the term "year" in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term "year" is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, "the year of Yahweh" or "in the year of drought" or "the favorable year of the Lord." In these contexts, "year" could be translated as "time" or "season" or "time period."

(See also: [month](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 08:01
- Exodus 12:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7620, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

Forms Found in the English ULB:

year, years

yoke

Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term "yoke" is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term "yokefellow" to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as "fellow worker" or "fellow servant" or "coworker."
- The term "yoke" is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, "oppressive burden" or "heavy load" or "bond," depending on the context.

(See also: [bind](#), [burden](#), [oppress](#), [persecute](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:10
- Galatians 05:01
- Genesis 27:40
- Isaiah 09:04
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Matthew 11:30

- Philippians 04:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3627, H4132, H5674, H5923, H6776, G2086, G2218

Forms Found in the English ULB:

yoke, yoked, yoked ... together, yokes
